

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : A61K 39/21, C12N 15/49, 5/10, C07K 14/16, C12N 15/86	A2	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/27958</b>	(43) International Publication Date: 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)
--	----	--	---

(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP98/07721

(22) International Filing Date: 30 November 1998 (30.11.98)

(30) Priority Data:

RM97A000743 1 December 1997 (01.12.97) IT

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): ISTITUTO  
SUPERIORE DI SANITA' [IT/IT]; Viale Regina Elena,  
299, I-00161 Rome (IT).

(72) Inventor; and

(75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only): ENSOLI, Barbara [IT/IT];  
Via Pollino, 2, I-00141 Rome (IT).

(74) Agent: GERVASI, Gemma; Notarbartolo & Gervasi S.p.A.,  
Corso di Porta Vittoria, 9, I-20122 Milan (IT).

(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR,  
BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD,  
GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR,  
KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN,  
MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK,  
SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW,  
ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW),  
Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),  
European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR,  
GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF,  
BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN,  
TD, TG).

Published

Without international search report and to be republished  
upon receipt of that report.

(54) Title: HIV-1 TAT, OR DERIVATIVES THEREOF FOR PROPHYLACTIC AND THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION

(57) Abstract

The present invention refers to Tat as the active principale for a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat is in biologically active form either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.

Best Available Copy

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## HIV-1 TAT, OR DERIVATIVES THEREOF FOR PROPHYLACTIC AND THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION

Field of the invention

The present invention refers to a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine anti-HIV, anti-AIDS and against tumors and syndromes associated with HIV infection, that utilizes as immunogens wild-type or mutated proteins, peptides or DNA of HIV Tat, alone or associated with proteins, peptides or DNA of other viral products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or cytokines potentiating the antiviral immune response.

The invention refers also to the immunization with Tat or its derivatives by using autologous dendritic cells, mucosal immunization, or ex-vivo immunization of peripheral blood cells expanded by co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies and to the delivery of the above mentioned immunogens using erythrocytes or nanoparticles.

Background of the invention

AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) is caused by HIV (Human Immunodeficiency Virus) and is characterized by immunodeficiency, tumors, such as Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) and B-cell lymphomas, opportunistic infections and central nervous system disorders. Since AIDS is spread world-wide and has a high mortality, one of the most important Public Health goal is to develop a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV or AIDS. Most of the past and current strategies have used the viral envelope or its sub-units as immunogens, but with unsatisfactory results due to the high variability of the viral envelope (ref. 162, 112 - throughout this specification, various references are referred to in parenthesis to more fully describe the state of the art to which the present invention pertains. Full bibliographic information for each citation is found at the end of the specification, immediately preceding the claims). Therefore, as an alternative to sterilizing immunity, it is a common opinion that it could be sufficient to block progression of infection and disease onset. Moreover, immuno-protective responses can be obtained utilizing DNA regions of HIV as immunogens (ref. 91, 17). Owing to the published experimental data, the inventor believes that it is necessary to produce a vaccine that utilizes viral products other than env. In

particular, the viral proteins to be used as immunogens must be more conserved among HIV isolates, capable of inducing an effective immune response, both humoral and cellular, and must have a vital function for the virus. Such products must be experimented in the model of non human primates (because their immune system is more similar to that of humans as compared to phylogenetically more distant animals) and in which AIDS can develop after virus infection.

The HIV-1 Tat protein has all the characteristics to be a good immunogen for vaccine purposes: it is conserved, immunogenic and essential in the early phases of the viral infection. Moreover, Tat has a key role not only in viral replication, transmission and progression of the infection, but also in the onset and progression of AIDS-associated tumors, for instance KS, which is the most frequent AIDS-associated tumor, and of other syndromes and symptoms developing after HIV infection.

Tat is a protein of 86-102 amino acids, depending on the viral strain, coded by two exons. Tat is produced soon after the infection, localizes in the nucleus and transactivates the expression of all viral genes by interacting with the "Tat-responsive element" (TAR) present in the LTR (Ref. 25). Tat has also a role in HIV virulence (Ref. 63, 113, 60, 84). The product of the first exon (amino acids 1-72) is conserved among different viral isolates (Ref. 112) and is sufficient for the transactivation of the HIV-1 products (Ref. 25). It contains 4 domains. The acidic domain (amino acids 1-21) is important for the Tat interaction with cellular proteins; the cysteine rich region (amino acids 22-37) represents the transactivation domain. This region is the most conserved among the primary isolates (Ref. 108) of cysteine 22 with a glycine abolishes the capacity of Tat to transactivate the HIV-LTR (Ref. 166) the core domain (amino acids 38-48) is also conserved and it is important for function. Substitution of lysine 41 with a threonine inactivates the transactivating activity of Tat on the HIV LTR (Ref. 70); the basic domain (amino acids 49-57), rich in arginine and lysine, is necessary for the nuclear localization of Tat and binds specifically its RNA target (TAR) (Ref. 25). Moreover, the basic region is responsible for the binding of extracellular Tat to heparin and to heparansulphate proteoglycans (HSPG) (Ref. 26). Mutations in the



basic region abolish such interactions. The carboxy-terminal portion of Tat is not necessary for the LTR transactivation, but contains an arginine-glycine-aspartic acid sequence (RGD), usually present in the extracellular matrix proteins (ECM), that is responsible for the binding of Tat to the integrin receptors  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  e  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ .

5 These interactions mediate the Tat effects on AIDS-associated tumors and on the immune, vascular and nervous system (Ref. 11, 42, 170, 25). During the acute infection of T-cells with HIV-1, or after transfection of the tat gene in COS-1 cells, the Tat protein is released in the absence of cellular death in the extracellular environment (Ref. 40, 41, 25). Tat release from infected cells occurs also in vivo  
10 since extracellular Tat is present in the serum of infected subjects (Ref. 164) and in AIDS-KS lesions (Ref. 42). After release, part of the protein remains in a soluble form, and part binds to the HSPG of the ECM. Tat bound to the HSPG can be recovered in a soluble form by the addition of heparin. The binding with heparin is due to the Tat basic region; it prevents the effects of extracellular Tat and protects  
15 the protein from oxidation. This feature has been used by us to purify Tat with a high biological activity (Ref. 26). Extracellular Tat can be internalized by cells, can migrate into the nucleus and transactivate viral gene expression (Ref. 49, 98, 100, 41). The internalization of Tat occurs by endocytosis mediated by the binding of RGD region of Tat to  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Ref.10, 42, Ensoli et al., unpublished data)  
20 and/or by the basic region which binds to HSPG.

Tat can activate viral replication and virus transmission also through indirect mechanisms involving the modulation of the expression of cellular genes which play a key role in the control of cell survival, and on the expression of inflammatory cytokines (IC) with an effect on viral replication (Ref. 25).

25 Beyond its importance in viral replication, Tat plays an important role in AIDS pathogenesis. Tat is able to modulate the survival and proliferation of infected and non-infected cells by causing activation or repression of cytokines, such as IL-2 (Ref. 123, 163, 31), or of genes with a key role in the cell cycle (Ref. 145, 169, 164, 173). The anti- or pro-apoptotic effects of Tat depend on a number of factors  
30 such as the cell type, the fact that Tat is expressed by the cell or added to the cell and on its concentration (Ref. 40, 41, 171).

Tat is the factor responsible for the enhanced frequency and aggressiveness of KS in HIV-1 infected subjects (Ref. 43, 33). KS is a tumor of vascular origin and it is the most frequent neoplasia in HIV-infected individuals. Tat induces KS cells and endothelial cells activated by IC to migrate, to express type IV collagenase, to  
5 invade the ECM and to proliferate, such mechanisms being necessary for angiogenesis and tumor invasion (Ref. 40, 41, 42, 2, 46). Such effects of Tat are induced by IC, since they stimulate the expression of the Tat receptors,  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Ref. 10). Tat mimics the effect of ECM proteins, such as fibronectin and vitronectin and both the RGD region and the basic region are necessary for the  
10 effects of the extracellular Tat on KS cells, on angiogenesis and on progression of KS. The capability of extracellular Tat of binding in vivo its receptors in the AIDS-KS lesions (Ref. 40) support the idea that Tat is involved in the onset and the maintenance of AIDS-associated KS. Moreover mice transgenic for the tat gene develop KS or other phenotypes depending on the level of expression of the  
15 transgene (Ref. 160, 34).

It has been suggested that Tat plays a role in the hyperproliferative phenomena and in the pathogenesis of the B lymphomas, frequently observed in seropositive subjects and in tat-transgenic mice (Ref. 157), through mechanisms involving the enhancement of bcl-2 and cytokines expression (Ref. 122). Other evidence  
20 confirms a probable role of Tat in oncogenesis (Ref. 72).

Tat can also activate the expression of viral promoters, such as those of herpesviruses and of other viruses which reactivate in AIDS individuals, promoting the onset and progression of opportunistic infections (Ref. 25).

Tat seems also able to exert neurotoxic effects both direct (through the basic and the RGD regions) and indirect through induction of IC having a toxic effect on the  
25 neurons of the central nervous system or on the hematoencephalic barrier (Ref. 25). Regarding the immune response to Tat, a number of studies suggest that anti-Tat antibodies play a protective role in the control of the evolution of the disease in vivo (Ref. 130, 135, 136, 149, 127). Moreover, in vitro, anti-Tat antibodies not only  
30 suppress the internalization, the transcellular activation of Tat and viral infection (Ref. 41, 127), but they also inhibit the proliferation and Tat-induced migration of

KS cells and the formation of KS-like lesions in mice (Ref. 40, 41, 42). Finally, our preliminary results demonstrate that anti-Tat antibodies are absent in AIDS-KS subjects, suggesting that such subjects cannot block the activity of extracellular Tat.

- 5 The development of an anti-Tat cell-mediated response in the initial phase of infection is important for the control of the infection itself (Ref. 161, 133, 59) and there exists an inverse correlation between the presence of specific anti-Tat CTL and disease progression (Ref. 156). Such results were obtained in studies on macaques inoculated with SIVmac (Ref. 91, 158). Moreover, recent data in mice
- 10 of different species in which Tat was inoculated either as a plasmid or as protein showed that it is possible to induce both a humoral and cellular response to the protein (Ref. 61). However, it has been observed variability among several mouse species and such results have not been reproduced with the same immunogens in non-human primates (Ref. 124). The lack of reproducibility in non
- 15 human primate model of the results from vaccine experiments performed in mice is frequent and possibly due to the different immune system of these two species which can raise different immune responses with the same immunogen, as demonstrated for the HIV Env protein. Thus, candidate vaccines for humans must be tested in non-human primates and not only in inferior species.
- 20 The inventor believes that other viral proteins, or parts thereof, could be associated with Tat to enhance a specific immune response against HIV and could be of benefit also in the vaccination against the onset of tumors and of other pathologies and symptoms associated with HIV infection. Such products are the Nef, Rev and Gag proteins of HIV.
- 25 Nef is another viral regulatory protein important for the development of disease (Ref.3, 48, 58). Nef is produced early after infection and it is released in the extracellular environment (Ensoli, unpublished data). In the SIVmac/maaque system the presence of Nef correlates with high viral replication and with progression to AIDS (Ref. 71). Nef is more variable than Tat (Ref. 112). Nef is an
- 30 immunogenic protein (Ref. 53, 32, 35, 151) and it is capable of inducing CTL (Ref. 16, 36). In particular, it has been identified an immunodominant region of Nef

(region 73-144) which is recognized by CTLs in most HIV-infected patients.

Rev is a viral regulatory protein produced early during infection (Ref. 51, 119) and released in the extracellular environment (Ensoli et al., unpublished data). Rev is essential for HIV replication and for disease progression, and is coded by two  
5 exons, partially overlapping Tat-coding regions. Rev is a nuclear protein (Ref. 44) necessary for the expression of the viral messenger RNAs coding for the late proteins (Ref. 97). Rev is a highly conserved protein among the various viral isolates of HIV-1 (Ref. 111) and it is immunogenic. In fact, it induces the production of specific antibodies directed against the two functional domains of the  
10 protein (Ref. 120) during the natural infection in man (Ref. 131) and after inoculation in mice (Ref. 61). Lower levels of anti-Rev antibodies in the sera of infected individuals seem to correlate with the progression to AIDS (Ref. 131). Rev can induce CTL both in man and in monkey (Ref. 156, 158) and it has been reported that a specific anti-Rev CTL response, early during the infection, is  
15 inversely correlated with disease progression (Ref. 156, 158).

Another viral target is the gag gene, which is expressed late during infection and codes for a group of highly immunogenic structural proteins of the capsid (Ref. 18, 147). The anti-Gag antibody titers are high and stable during the asymptomatic phase of infection, and reach very low levels when the infection progresses to full-  
20 blown AIDS, in combination with the drop of CD4+ lymphocytes and the presence of the virus in the peripheral blood (Ref. 174, 73). Gag proteins induce CTL activity early during infection, both in man and in primates (Ref. 103, 168), and their presence is significantly related with the control of the initial viremia and with disease progression (Ref. 175, 6,134, 167, 92). Finally, p17 and p24 proteins  
25 contain immunodominant epitopes which are maintained in different HIV-1 and HIV-2 isolates and are recognized by CTL (Ref. 89, 19, 114, 155, 115).

The inventor believes that cytokines or parts thereof, such as IL-12 and IL-15, or other immuno modulant cytokines such as IFN $\alpha$  or IFN $\beta$  or other proteins enhancing the immunogenic effect of Tat, can be utilized as adjuvants in the  
30 formulation of the anti-Tat vaccine. IL-12 is a strong immunoregulatory cytokine produced by antigen-presenting cells (APC) such as B and dendritic cells (Ref.

154). IL-12 is produced early after HIV infection and has a pro-inflammatory action inducing NK cells and T-lymphocytes to produce IFN $\gamma$  which activates phagocytes and promotes the induction of Th1 lymphocytes. IL-12 plays a fundamental role in the resistance to a number of infections caused by bacteria, fungi, viruses and shows a high anti-tumor activity. Several evidences suggest that viruses which induce immunosuppression, such as HIV and measles virus, act also through mechanisms which suppress IL-12 production (Ref. 57, 50, 144).

IL-15 is a pleiotropic cytokine expressed by non-lymphoid tissues, by activated monocytes/macrophages and by dendritic cells (DC) (Ref. 125, 66). IL-15 plays an important role in regulating the NK activity, in the proliferation of T lymphocytes and in the CTL activity (Ref. 67, 24). IL-15 induces the expression of CTLs against HIV antigens, in the absence of IL-2 and functional CD4 $^{+}$  T-lymphocytes (Ref. 68, 1). Moreover, similarly to IL-2, IL-15 induces the expansion of lymphocytes with cytotoxic activity ("lymphokine-activated killer", LAK) and stimulates production of IFN $\gamma$  in PBMCs of seropositive patients (Ref. 93). IL-15 activates monocytes to produce chemokines, playing a role in the onset of inflammatory processes (Ref. 8).

Recent studies have shown that the co-stimulation of CD4 $^{+}$  lymphocytes with paramagnetic beads, coated with anti-CD3 e anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies determines a logarithmic and polyclonal expansion of lymphocytes from HIV-infected subjects (Ref. 82) without activating virus replication and transmission. Such antiviral activity is a consequence of both the negative modulation of the expression of CCR5, the co-receptor of HIV-1 monocyctotropic strains (Ref. 23) and, to a lesser extent, of the high levels of chemokines induced by the co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies (Ref. 132). The inventor believes that the possibility to expand autologous lymphocytes from HIV infected subjects in the absence of viral replication/transmission, permits to obtain an effective ex vivo immunization, described in the examples, which can be highly helpful in developing an anti-Tat vaccine.

Within the different systems aimed at the generation of effective antiviral and anti-tumor vaccines, the inventor believes that the utilization of dendritic cells could be

key in the induction of an immune response to Tat. This is due to the fact that these cells are the most efficient in presenting the antigen and the sole able to stimulate naive lymphocytes, in the absence of adjuvants (Ref. 150). The use of dendritic cells replaces the function of several adjuvants consisting in the induction  
5 of a non specific immune response (natural immunity) which, in turns, generates a strong primary specific response in the presence of the antigen.

Since the transmission of HIV infection primarily occurs at the mucosal level (genital and rectal in the adult, oral in the new-born), the inventor

believes that the induction of protective immunity at the mucosal level is a primary  
10 goal. Many studies have recently shown the possibility to induce mucosal immunization, local and systemic. Particularly, the nasal and oral routes have shown to be the most efficient in inducing an effective mucosal immune response, even at distant sites, such as the genital mucosa (Ref. 138, 118). In particular, the inventor believes that the use of *S. Gordonii* and *Lactobacillus* bacteria, modified  
15 to express the above mentioned viral antigens, might be a valid strategy to induce or potentiate a specific immune response at the mucosa level in monkeys and in man. These bacteria are, in fact, able to colonize the mouse oral and vaginal mucosa, and to induce a specific, local and systemic, antibody response against heterologous antigens expressed on the surface of recombinant bacteria (Ref.  
20 116, 104, 106, 121, 117, 139, 105, 107). Finally, these bacteria act as live vectors and can induce a prolonged stimulation of the immune system. Moreover, the inventor believes that non-replicating and non-pathogenic recombinant viral vectors, such as herpes simplex type-1 viruses (HSV-1) (Ref. 99), can be used to express viral proteins for systemic (intradermic) and mucosal (oral, vaginal and  
25 nasal routes) immunization. In fact, these vectors can accommodate large exogenous sequences (Ref. 52, 64), such as several HIV genes (regulatory, accessory and structural). Moreover, herpes vectors can also be administered via the oral, nasal or vaginal route (Ref. 176, 75).

The inventor believes that Tat (either as protein or DNA), alone or in combination  
30 with the other immunogens described above, can be inoculated also by using new delivery systems, such as erythrocytes or nanoparticles. In particular, the inventor

believes that it is possible to deliver antigens bound to the membrane of autologous erythrocytes (Ref. 95, 96). Since these erythrocytes are removed from the blood by macrophages, professional antigen presenting cells, only after 120 days, this feature can be used for vaccine purposes. Finally, another delivery strategy is the use of nanoparticles that can carry proteins and DNA (Ref. 27, 172). Nanospheres are polymeric colloidal particles of diverse chemical composition, variable from 10-1000 nm. Different substances (oligonucleotides, drugs, proteins, peptides, DNA) can be loaded on their surface or absorbed in the particle and delivered into the cytoplasm or the nucleus of the cells from where they are slowly released. This allows the utilization of very small amounts of the substance to be delivered.

Based on the results described above, the inventor believes that the immunization with Tat, alone or in combination with other viral products or immuno modulant cytokines, or parts thereof, in the presence or not of adjuvants, could block viral replication in subjects exposed after vaccination and in the infected subjects, maintaining the infection in an abortive phase, which can be more easily controlled by the immune system. Therefore, the inventor believes that a Tat-based vaccine should be able to induce an immune response, both humoral and cellular, sufficient to block or reduce the replication or the transmission of the virus and therefore capable of controlling virus replication and of blocking productive infection, progression to disease and the onset of tumors and other AIDS-associated syndromes and symptoms. It is, therefore, possible to use the anti-Tat vaccine for both preventive and therapeutic purposes. In fact, a humoral response against Tat could neutralize the effects of extracellular Tat reducing and limiting the infection, whereas the cell-induced response against Tat as well as against other viral proteins enclosed in the vaccine formulation, could destroy the virus infected cells leading to the control the infection. This allows the necessary period of time to the immune system for developing a complete response towards all viral components of the infecting virus in the absence of irreversible damages due to viral replication.

It has been described the use of Tat as an immunogen (WO 95/31999). However,

it is disclosed the use of a biologically inactive protein; moreover, in the same patent application no evidence is shown of the biological activity of the "native" Tat protein.

In addition, there is a strong technical prejudice against the use of a biologically active Tat protein, in that it is believed to enhance viral replication in infected subjects and/or to give immunosuppression in seronegative or seropositive individuals (A.Tonelli: Aids, un vaccino per sperare. "La Repubblica", pag. 10, 24 Oct. 1998)

As evident from the above, despite the efforts made, an efficacious anti-HIV vaccine based on Tat has not been developed yet.

#### Summary of the invention

It is an object of the present invention a Tat protein or peptides of Tat or the Tat DNA for use as a vaccine, being intended that Tat must be in its biologically active form.

Another object of the invention is a protein or a peptide vaccine to be used in humans, prophylactic or therapeutic against AIDS, AIDS-associated tumors and HIV-associated syndromes and symptoms and comprised of recombinant wild-type Tat protein or its mutants (Seq. 1-5), expressed and purified as described, or wild-type or mutated Tat peptides (Seq. 1-7), administered alone or conjugated with T-helper tetanus toxoid epitope or other T-helper epitopes.

Another object of the invention is a vaccine as described above, in combination with recombinant HIV Nef, Rev and/or Gag proteins or peptides of Nef, Rev and Gag administered as Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag fusion proteins or as parts of these proteins.

Another object of the invention is a vaccine as described above, in combination with recombinant proteins of immuno modulant cytokines like IL-12, IL-15 or others molecules or part of these, capable of increasing the antiviral immune response, or a vaccine constituted by Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15 or Tat/other fusion proteins, or part of these, capable of increasing the antiviral immune response.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine, to be administered in humans, prophylactic or therapeutic, against AIDS, AIDS-associated tumors and HIV-



related syndromes and symptoms, constituted by vectors coding for wild-type Tat or its mutants (Seq. 1-5), or part of these, inserted in the expression plasmid; vector pCV0 or other vectors.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine, as described in 4, in  
5 combination with HIV rev, nef or gag genes, or part of these, inserted in the pCV0 vector, or a DNA vaccine administered as a vector co-expressing tat/rev, tat/nef, tat/gag genes or part of these.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine as described above, in combination with the DNA coding for IL-12 and IL-15 or other genes coding for  
10 immuno modulant cytokines or part of these, inserted in pCV0 or other vectors, or a DNA vaccine administered as a vector co-expressing Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15 or Tat/other molecules, or part of these, capable of increasing the anti-viral immune response.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, as a protein, peptide and/or  
15 DNA, alone or combined as described above for immunization with autologous dendritic cells by *ex vivo* treatment.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as a protein, peptide and/or DNA, alone or combined as described above, for mucosal immunization (nasal, oral, vaginal or rectal).

20 Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as a protein, peptide and/or DNA, alone or combined as described above, for ex vivo immunization of peripheral blood cells from infected subjects expanded through co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies conjugated to paramagnetic beads and re-infused in the host.

25 Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, as a protein, peptide and/or DNA as described above, combined with inhibitors of viral replication.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as already described, in combination with adjuvants which increase the immune response.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, alone or in combination as  
30 already described, administered by specific delivery systems, such as nanoparticles, herpes vectors, red blood cells, bacteria or any other delivery

system by which the above described vaccine, in all its combinations, can be administered.

Further objects will be evident from the detailed description of the invention.

**Brief description of the figures**

5 **FIG. 1A.** Inhibition of uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat protein by pre-incubation of cytokine-activated endothelial cells with anti-integrin antibodies.

**FIG. 1A. Panel A,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with BSA.

**FIG. 1A. Panel B,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with Tat.

10 **FIG. 1A. Panel C,** cells pre-incubated with monoclonal antibodies CDw49e and CD29, incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1A. Panel D,** cells pre-incubated with monoclonal antibodies CD51 and CD61, incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1A. Panel E,** cells pre-incubated with anti-human factor VIII antibodies (control antibodies), incubated with Tat.

15 **FIG. 1B.** Capability of purified Tat-cys22 (Tat22) protein to compete the transactivating activity of wild type Tat protein monitored by cat assays.

**FIG. 2A.** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). Results obtained in two monkeys inoculated sub-cute with 10 or 100 µg of recombinant Tat protein re-

20 suspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI.

**FIG. 2B.** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). Results for the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 3.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkeys inoculated with

25 100 (M1) and 10 (M2) µg recombinant Tat protein, described in Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B.

**FIG. 4A.** Mapping of the Tat epitopes recognized by the anti-Tat IgG from monkeys injected with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2) µg of recombinant Tat protein, described in fig. 2A and Fig. 2B. The average results of plasma diluted 1:50 for

30 each peptide tested in duplicate are shown.

**FIG. 4B.** Mapping according to Fig. 4A. The antibody titers in plasma are shown, expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 5.** Analysis of the specific anti-Tat humoral IgM response in monkeys inoculated with Tat protein determined by ELISA.

**FIG. 6.** Analysis of specific anti-Tat IgG production in monkeys inoculated with Tat protein, tested by ELISA.

**FIG. 7.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from the monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat (10 µg) in the presence of RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) described in Figure 6.

**FIG. 8A.** Epitopes of Tat recognized by anti-Tat IgG from monkeys inoculated as described in figure 6. The results refer to samples diluted 1:50 and are the average from duplicate wells.

**FIG. 8B.** Epitopes of Tat according to Fig. 8A. The results refer to the titration of plasma shown in Fig. 8A and are expressed as the highest reciprocal dilution of plasma at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 9.** Analysis of Tat specific CTL.

**FIG. 10.** Analysis of the response of delayed hypersensitivity to Tat by skin test.

**FIG. 11A.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in monkeys vaccinated with Tat DNA. There are shown the results obtained from two monkeys vaccinated with 200 (M1) and 500 (M2) µg of pCV-Tat plasmid.

**FIG. 11B.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in monkeys vaccinated with Tat DNA. Results for the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 12.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkey M2 inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of pCV-Tat.

**FIG. 13.** Analysis of anti-Tat IgG production in three monkeys (M9 to M11) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV-Tat and in one control monkey (M12), inoculated with 1 mg of control vector pCV-0.

**FIG. 14.** Kinetics of the proliferative response of PBMC from *Macaca fascicularis* to the co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies on paramagnetic beads (anti-CD3/28 beads).

FIG. 15A. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 193.

FIG. 15B. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK D91.

5 FIG. 15C. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 9301.

FIG. 15D. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 9401.

10 FIG. 16A. Functional characterization of dendritic cells (DC) obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. <sup>3</sup>H-Thymidine incorporation at day 4 of allogeneic mixed leukocyte culture (AMLR).

FIG. 16B. Functional characterization of dendritic cells obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. APCs, such as DC and Mø, obtained as reported in figure 16A, were challenged with T lymphocytes from another monkey.

15 Detailed description of the invention

The present invention refers to Tat as the active principle for a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat, or wild-type Tat, is in its active form or, more correctly, in its biologically active form (as explained herein below) either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.

25 In the present description "wild-type Tat" and "Tat in its active form" have to be considered synonymous of "biologically active Tat".

30 According to the present invention, as "biologically active Tat" it is intended the

protein that, at picomolar to nanomolar concentrations (from 10 ng/ml or less to 1 µg/ml, preferably 0.1 ng/ml to 100 ng/ml) is capable of:

(i) entering and localizing in the nuclei of activated endothelial cells or dendritic cells, as measured in Example 1A;

5 (ii) activating the proliferation, migration and invasion of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) cells and cytokine-activated endothelial cells protein (Ref. 40, 2);

(iii) activating virus replication when added to infected cells as measured a) by the rescue of Tat-defective proviruses in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous protein (Ref. 41); b) by the transactivation of HIV-1 gene expression in cells

10 transfected with a HIV-1 promoter-reporter plasmid protein (Ref. 41);

(iv) inducing in mice the development of KS-like lesions in the presence of angiogenic factors or inflammatory cytokines (Ref. 42).

The inventor considers to be fundamental for biologically active Tat that one of the points (i) or (ii) be verified, preferably both should be verified, more preferably  
15 point (i) or point (ii) or both in combination with point (iii)a) and/or (iii)b) should be verified. The best results will be obtained when all (i) to (iv) points are verified. A Tat protein or fragments of Tat with these characteristics are capable of inducing in vivo a cytotoxic and antiviral immune response. In fact, a biologically active Tat with the characteristics mentioned above is capable of binding specific cell surface  
20 receptors and is taken up via these receptors. Tat uptake is essential for inducing a cytotoxic response.

Previous or ongoing studies, related to the development of a vaccine based on Tat, have not utilized a biologically active Tat protein with the characteristics mentioned above.

25 A method to obtain and to handle a biologically active Tat according to the present invention is described in Example 1.

It is also described an immunization method utilizing autologous dendritic cells treated ex vivo with recombinant Tat protein, or peptides thereof, alone or with a mixture of recombinant proteins or peptides (Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag) or with the Tat  
30 protein and one or more immuno modulant cytokines, or parts thereof, or transduced with eukariotic vectors containing the tat gene alone or in combination

with viral genes coding for Nef, Gag or Rev, or tat and the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof.

Strategies to induce an immune response at the mucosal level are also described.

Tat or its peptides, alone or in combination with viral proteins and/or cytokines is  
5 inoculated at the mucosal level to enhance and induce the local immune response. The HIV-1 Tat protein or sub-units thereof will also be utilized for the ex vivo immunization of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes isolated from the peripheral blood of infected subjects. The Tat antigen specific cells will be then expanded in vitro through co-stimulation with monoclonal antibodies directed against CD3 and  
10 CD28 and re-infused. Finally, it is also described the use of Tat mutants, identified in the examples, to be utilized as immunogens, as an alternative to Tat wild type. The Tat mutants are i) in the cysteine region (cys22) and ii) in the core region (lys41), iii) the mutant deleted in the RGD sequence; iv) the double mutant deleted at lysine 41 and the RGD. Alternatively to the use of Tat mutants or Tat peptides  
15 (wild type or mutated as the protein) in case of therapeutic vaccination, inhibitors of viral replication will be utilized along with the immunogen.

In this regard, for "inibitors of viral replication" it is intended all molecules known at the present, or those which will be discovered later on (nucleoside and non-nucleoside inhibitors of reverse transcriptase, protease inhibitors, antisense RNA  
20 and, in general, all molecules able to block HIV gene expression) able to reduce or block the HIV replication. As previously said, different methods of immunization are described, which utilize Tat ptotein, peptides and Tat DNA in association with other viral genes or proteins, or part thereof, or immuno modulant cytokines or genes coding for immuno modulant cytokines, or part thereof. For "part thereof" it  
25 is intended segments of genes or of proteins, above described, whose efficacy of inducing the same immunogenic effects of the entire gene or protein is demonstrated. Moreover, since the efficacy of adjuvants in vaccine strategies is known, the present invention refers to the use of known adjuvants and of those which will be discovered later on, administered together with Tat (protein or DNA)  
30 and with combinations of Tat and other genes or viral or cellular proteins. Similarly, it is hypothesized the efficacy of different delivery systems of Tat (protein

or DNA) and combinations of Tat and other genes or viral or cellular proteins in inducing both a systemic and local immune response to Tat (mucosal immunization).

Results obtained from the inventor (not published), indicate that only the Tat protein, in its biologically active form, is able to bind specific cellular receptors and enter the cell. This characteristic is at the base of the immune response of accessory cells and of the immune cells more in general and, according to the inventor, it is of a fundamental importance in inducing a much stronger immune response than the inactivated protein is able to elicit. In conclusion, unlike the use of inactivated Tat as immunogen, proposed by some scientists, the inventor intends to utilize HIV-1 Tat, or its mutants, in its biologically active form, in order to induce a very strong immune response against HIV, able to prevent infection or the development of the disease and to permit efficient therapeutic strategies in HIV-1-infected individuals. According to the inventor, the vaccine can be delivered through systemic (intramuscular, i.d., subcute, etc.) or local (mucosal) routes. The last route is preferred when bacteria (see below) are utilized as delivery systems. The vaccine can be produced as follows. Tat can be prepared according to Example 1, it can be lyophilized and stored. At the moment of use, it can be resuspended in a biologically acceptable fluid, such as serum, plasma, or their fractions.

Transformed cells, comprising a Tat-expressing vector, or Tat mutant-expressing vector, or parts thereof, as previously described, and cells which are cultured to express Tat protein, which will be isolated for the use, are all included in the scope of the present patent.

It is intended that all Tat variants (including all types and subtypes of HIV strains), with analogous or greater activity than that above described, are included in this invention.

The present invention will be now described by means of its illustrative and not restrictive specific examples, in which reference will be made to the enclosed figures.

Detailed description of the figures

**FIG. 1A.** Inhibition of uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat protein by pre-incubation of cytokine-activated endothelial cells with anti-integrin antibodies. Cytokine-activated human umbilical vein (HUVE) cells, treated as described in the legend to Table 2A, were pre-incubated in serum free medium containing buffer or antibodies and then incubated for 15 minutes at 37°C with 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat or rhodaminated BSA.

**Panel A,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with BSA.

**Panel B,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with Tat.

**Panel C,** cells pre-incubated with the monoclonal antibodies CDw49e (anti- $\alpha 5$ ) and CD29 (anti- $\beta 1$ ), incubated with Tat.

**Panel D,** cells pre-incubated with the monoclonal antibodies CD51 (anti- $\alpha v$ ) and CD61 (anti- $\beta 3$ ), incubated with Tat.

**Panel E,** cells pre-incubated with anti-human factor VIII antibodies (control antibodies), incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1B.** Shown is the capability of purified Tat-cys22 (Tat22) protein to compete the transactivating activity of wild type Tat protein monitored by cat assays. H3T1 cells, containing the HIV-1 LTR-CAT reporter gene (Ref. 148), were incubated with wild type Tat protein (100 ng), alone or in the presence of a molar excess of Tat-cys22 protein (1  $\mu$ g). The HIV-1 LTR transactivating activity of Tat and the capability of the Tat-cys22 protein of competing with wild type Tat have been determined at 48 h after transfection by determining the cat activity in cytoplasmic extracts (corresponding to 200  $\mu$ g of protein), as described (Ref. 41). The percentages (%) in acetylation of  $^{14}$ C-chloramphenicol are indicated.

**FIG. 2 .** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). (A) shows the results obtained in two monkeys inoculated subcutaneous with 10 or 100  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI; (B) shows the results for the control monkey (M3). Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Anti-Tat antibodies were evaluated also at week 41 in monkey M2, inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat protein, and for monkey M3.



The presence of the anti-Tat antibodies in the plasma of the vaccinated animals was evaluated by ELISA prepared and characterized as follows. The Tat protein was adsorbed in PVC- 96-well plates (100 ng/well in 200  $\mu$ l carbonate buffer 0.05 M pH 9.6) for 12 h at 4°C. After 3 washings with PBS 1x without Ca<sup>++</sup> and Mg<sup>++</sup> (PBS-A) containing Tween 20 (0.05%), plasma diluted 1:50 in 200  $\mu$ l carbonate buffer were added (in duplicate) and plates incubated at 37°C for 90'. Wells were then washed with PBS-A 1x/Tween 0.05%, followed by the addition of 100  $\mu$ l of the secondary antibody (diluted 1:1000 in PBS-A 1x/Tween 0.1%/BSA 1%) conjugated with horseradish peroxidase, for 90' at room temperature. After 5 washings of the wells, 100  $\mu$ l of substrate (ABTS 1 mM, Amersham) were added for 30-45' at room temperature. Reading was performed at the spectrophotometer (405 nm). Each ELISA included an anti-Tat rabbit polyclonal serum (positive control) diluted 1:200 to 1:6400, and the preimmune plasma (negative control) diluted 1:50. The cut-off value was calculated as the mean of the optical densities (O.D.) of negative monkey plasma +3 standard deviations (S.D.), obtained in all the experiments with the preimmune plasma. The results shown are the average of duplicate wells. >2,7 indicates that optical density values were out of scale.

**FIG. 3.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkeys inoculated with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2)  $\mu$ g recombinant Tat protein, described in Fig. 2.

Elisa were carried out as described in figure 2 and plasma assayed (in duplicate) at scalar dilutions from 1:50 to 1:25.600.

The values in the ordinate represent the inverse of the highest plasma dilution at which the test was still positive. The cut-off value was calculated for each dilution and corresponded to the average O.D. of preimmune plasma from all monkeys in all experiments, + 3 S.D.

**FIG. 4.** Mapping of the Tat epitopes recognized by the anti-Tat IgG from monkeys injected with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2)  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein, described in fig. 2. For epitope mapping Elisa were carried out using 8 synthetic peptides corresponding to Tat amino acids (aa) 1-20, 21-40, 36-50, 46-60, 52-72, 56-70, 65-80, 73-86. One hundred microlitres of each peptide (10  $\mu$ g/ml in PBS-A/0.1% BSA) were absorbed onto a PVC 96-well plate for 12 hours at 4°C. Plates were

then washed and incubated with 100  $\mu$ l of PBS-A/3% BSA for 2 hours at 37°C. After incubation, plates were washed with PBS-A/0.05% Tween 20 and then 50  $\mu$ l of plasma, diluted in PBS-A and 3% BSA, were added to each well. Elisa were then continued as described in figure 2. Plasma were obtained at week 37 after the primary immunization. Cut-off values, calculated for each peptide and for each plasma dilution, correspond to the average O.D. of the preimmune plasma in all experiments + 3 S.D. (A) shows the average results of plasma diluted 1:50 for each peptide tested in duplicate; (B) shows the antibody titers of plasma shown in (A), expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution, at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 5.** Analysis of the specific anti-Tat IgM response in monkeys inoculated with Tat and determined by ELISA. Three monkeys (M1-3) were inoculated subcute with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l RIBI; 3 monkeys (M4-6) were inoculated subcute with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l Alum; 2 control monkeys were inoculated subcute with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11 and 15 weeks. The presence of antibodies was investigated at 2, 6, 11 and 15 weeks. The ELISA method is described in fig. 2. In this case the plasma of the animals were tested (in duplicate) at 1:100 dilution and an IgM goat anti-monkey serum (diluted at 1:1000) conjugated with horseradish peroxidase was used as the secondary antibody.

The cut-off value was calculated as the average (+2 S.D.) of the O.D. values of the preimmune plasma. Results are the average of the O.D. values (at 405 nm) of two wells subtracted of the cut-off value ( $\Delta$ O.D. 405).

**FIG. 6.** Analysis of specific anti-Tat IgG production in monkeys inoculated with Tat, tested by ELISA. Three monkeys (M1-3) were inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l RIBI; 3 monkeys (M4-6) were inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l Alum; two control monkeys

were inoculated with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At week 36, monkeys M1 to M6 were inoculated with 16  $\mu$ g of Tat protein resuspended in 200  $\mu$ l of ISCOMs and 300  $\mu$ l of PBS. Antibodies were evaluated also at week 40 and 44. The ELISA method and the cut-off value determination are described in fig. 2. The results shown refer to samples diluted 1:50. >2,7 indicates that the O.D. value was out of scale.

**FIG. 7.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from the monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat (10  $\mu$ g) in the presence of RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) described in Figure 6. The results are shown for each plasma as the inverse of the highest serum dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 8.** Epitopes of Tat recognized by anti-Tat IgG from monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat protein (10  $\mu$ g) in the presence of RIBI (M1 to M3) or Alum (M4 to M6), described in figure 6. Plasma were obtained at week 21 after the primary immunization. The Elisa method and the cut-off determination are described in figure 4. Results in (A) refer to samples diluted 1:50 and are the average from duplicate wells. Results in (B) refer to the titration of plasma shown in (A) and are expressed as the highest reciprocal dilution of plasma at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 9.** Analysis of Tat specific CTL. The assay was carried out as described in Table 5. Shown is an example at the 36<sup>th</sup> week for monkey M1, injected subcutaneous with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat and RIBI as described in figure 6. Squares (control) correspond to the cells incubated with unpulsed BLCL target cells; rhombs correspond to the cells incubated with the BLCL target cells pulsed with Tat (1  $\mu$ g/250.000 cells).

**FIG. 10.** Analysis of the response of delayed hypersensitivity to Tat by skin test. Tat protein (5, 1 and 0.2  $\mu$ g), re-suspended in 150  $\mu$ l PBS containing 0.1% BSA or the buffer in which Tat was resuspended were inoculated intradermally (i.d.) in a shaved area on the animal back. The area was photographed at time 0 and after 24, 48 and 72 hours. The control monkeys were inoculated only with buffer. Shown is an example of monkey M2 (week 15), inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat and

RIBI, described in Fig 6. The positive reaction to Tat was evident at 48 hours after the skin test.

**FIG. 11.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in one monkey (M1) inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of the pCV-Tat plasmid resuspended in 150 µl of PBS-A, in two sites close to the axillary lymph-nodes; one monkey (M2) was injected with 500 µg of pCV-Tat, resuspended in 250 µl of PBS-A, intramuscular in two sites of the back; the control monkey (M3) was not inoculated with Tat DNA but received, as a control of specificity, repeated skin tests with Tat. Monkeys were injected with pCV-Tat at time 0 and after 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Finally, after 42 weeks, monkeys were boosted with recombinant Tat protein (16 µg) resuspended in 200 µl of ISCOMs and 300 µl of PBS. Antibodies were evaluated at weeks 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32, 37, 42, 48 and 58. Anti-Tat antibody response in plasma (diluted 1:50) was analyzed by Elisa as described in figure 2. Results are the average ODs of duplicate wells. (A) shows the results obtained from the two monkeys vaccinated with 200 (M1) and 500 (M2) µg of pCV-Tat plasmid. (B) shows the results of the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 12.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkey M2 inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of pCV-Tat. The Elisa is described in figure 2. Results in ordinate are expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 13.** Analysis of anti-Tat IgG production in three monkeys (M9 to M11) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV-Tat and in one control monkey (M12), inoculated with 1 mg of control vector pCV-0. DNA was resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A and injected intramuscularly in two sites of the back. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At the 36<sup>th</sup> week monkeys M9 to M11 received a boost with 16 µg of recombinant Tat protein resuspended in 200 µl of ISCOMs and 300 µl of PBS. The presence of anti-Tat antibodies was evaluated at weeks 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36, 40 and 44. Elisa and cut-off determination are described in figure 2.

**FIG. 14.** Kinetics of the proliferative response of PBMC from *Macaca fascicularis* to the co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies on

paramagnetic beads (anti-CD3/28 beads). The PBMC were depleted of the CD8-positive sub-population by immuno-magnetic methods. Afterwards, half of anti-CD8-depleted lymphocytes was stimulated with PHA and IL-2 (40U/ml) starting from day 3; the remaining part was left to adhere on the anti-CD3/28-coated beads antibodies, thus obtaining a CD8-depleted and CD3/28 positive lymphocyte population. IL-2 (40U/ml) was added to this cell fraction starting from day 10 of culture. The cells were counted and their viability was determined each 2-3 days. The beads:cells ratio was maintained constant. The number of cells at different time-points is reported.

10 **FIG. 15.** Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. The CD8-depleted and CD8-depleted CD3+/CD28+ lymphocytes, obtained from 4 monkeys (Figures 15A to 15B) by the methods described in Figure 14, were stimulated as described in example 7. The two fractions were infected *in vitro* at the day 0 with 0.1 M.O.I. of SIVmac251/63M. 15 The stimulation was performed with PHA and IL-2, added since day 3, and with the anti-CD3/28 beads without the addition of exogenous IL-2. Viral production was evaluated by determining the p27 levels (ng/ml) in the cell supernatants at days 6 and 12 after infection as described in example 7. (In light grey PHA\*IL-2, in dark grey Anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC CD8-/CD3+/CD28\*).

20 **FIG. 16.** Functional characterization of dendritic cells (DC) obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. (A) <sup>3</sup>H-Thymidine incorporation at day 4 of allogeneic mixed leukocyte culture (AMLR) to compare the antigen-presenting-function (APC, determined as the induction of proliferation of allogeneic T cells) of DC and macrophages (Mø) obtained from PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis* after separation 25 on Percoll gradient and adherence on plastic. Non-adherent cells were removed and adherent cells were induced to mature into DC by adding GMCSF (200 ng/ml) and IL-4 (200 units/ml) every 3 days. Half of the culture medium (RPMI, 10% FCS) was removed and substituted with fresh medium every 3 days. After 6-7 days a morphological change of cytokine-induced cells was observed, which acquired a 30 typical DC phenotype (loss of adherence, clustering, fingers), also verified by determining typical membrane markers (data not shown). Monocytes were not

cytokine-induced and were cultured in the same medium, that was replaced every 3 days. The cells maintained the monocyte-macrophage characteristics, such as the adherence. At day 7 both cell populations were challenged with T-lymphocytes from a human blood donor, purified by Ficoll and Percoll gradient and by adherence and then frozen. Cell proliferation assays were carried out in a 48-well plate. Five hundred thousand T lymphocytes were stimulated with 5000 DC or Mø (T:APC ratio = 100:1). The culture was maintained for 4 days and fixed aliquots of the cell suspension were transferred in 96-well plates, in triplicate. 1  $\mu$ Ci of  $^3$ H-Thymidine was then added for 16 hours, and the counts per minute (cpm) of the incorporated precursor were determined with a  $\beta$ -counter.

(B) APCs, such as DC and Mø, obtained as reported in figure 16A, were challenged with T lymphocytes from another monkey, obtained as reported above for the human donor. The greater ability to present the antigen is a typical characteristic of the DC as compared to Mø. APCs were added at scalar concentrations to T lymphocytes in order to evaluate the proliferative responses obtained at different T:APCs (DC or Mø) ratios.

The following examples should be considered illustrative and not limitative of the scope of the invention.

**Example 1. Expression, purification and characterization of the wild type Tat protein (IIIB isolate), mutated Tat proteins and wild type Tat peptides.**

Many difficulties have been encountered in the past to purify and maintain the biological activity of the Tat protein owing to the easiness to oxidate, aggregate and lose activity. This is due to the high amounts of cysteine residues which can form intra- and inter-molecular bonds, thus modifying the conformation of the native protein (Ref. 159, 41). The cDNA or the *tat* gene (Seq. 1, example 2), which has been cloned in the pL-syn vector, provided by Dr. J. F. DeLamarter and B. Allet (Glaxo Institute for Molecular Biology S.A., Ginevra, Svizzera), has been used for the expression of the protein in *E.Coli*.

In order to achieve an efficient immunization with Tat for vaccine purposes, the inventor considers fundamental to obtain a biologically active Tat protein as described in the section "Detailed description of the invention". Therefore, the

methods of production and purification of Tat, described in this example and in the next examples 1B, 2 and 3, describe necessary procedures and controls to obtain a biologically active Tat protein, which is an effective immunogen to protect from HIV infection, AIDS or from the development of HIV-related diseases.

5 A first method which we used to obtain an active protein, was based on successive steps of high pressure liquid chromatography and liquid and ion-exchange chromatography (Ref: 15, 41). The protein obtained by these methods is more than 95 % pure and it is active (Ref. 41, 42).

However a good reproducibility was not obtained from batch to batch, owing to the  
10 protein oxidation, which is the main problem in the commercial Tat preparations. Owing to our observations that the basic region of Tat protein has a strong affinity for heparin and that heparin prevents its oxidation, we used the heparin affinity chromatography and defined a new Tat purification protocol, as described by Chang et al., (Ref. 26). Cells (10 gr. in weight) of *E.coli* expressing Tat were  
15 sonicated in 40 ml of lysis buffer (disodium phosphate 20mM, pH 7.8; glycerol at 2.5%; PMSF 0.2 mM; DTT 5 mM; mannitol 50 mM; ascorbic acid 10 mM; NaCl 500 mM) by using an Ultrasonic Liquid Processor (Model XL2020, Heat System Inc) with three discharges, each one of 20 sec. The lysate was centrifuged at 12,000 g for 30 min. and the supernatant was incubated for one hour at room  
20 temperature with 2 ml of heparin sepharose resin, pre-washed with the lysis buffer. The resin was loaded on a glass column and washed with the lysis buffer until the protein was undetectable in the washing medium. The bound material was eluted with lysis buffer containing 2M NaCl and the eluate was collected in fractions of 1 ml. The homogeneity of the eluted protein was analyzed by gel  
25 electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE). The purified protein was stored lyophilized at -70°C and resuspended in a degassed buffer before use.

The biological activity of purified Tat protein, according to the above protocol, was evaluated by a "rescue" assay of viral infection in HLM-1 cells, derived from HeLa-CD4+ cells, containing proviruses defective in the tat gene, obtained and  
30 described by Sadaie et al.. (Ref. 140). The "rescue" assay of viral infection, described by Ensoli et al.. (Ref. 41), consisted in complementing the lack of Tat

expression in HLM-1 cells ( $2 \times 10^5$ ) with the addition of exogenous Tat protein (2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) and by evaluating viral replication by the determination of the p24 antigen released in the culture medium 48 hours after the addition of the exogenous Tat protein by commercial kits. The results of the "rescue" experiments, described by  
5 Chang et al. (Ref. 26), demonstrate that the Tat protein, purified with this method, is active and that this purification method is better, easier and less expensive for both the purity and the biological activity of Tat when compared to the previously described methods (Ref. 40, 41, 42).

Different preparations of recombinant Tat, purified as described above, were  
10 inoculated in the presence of Freund's adjuvant in mice and rabbits, according to standard protocols (Ref. 4). The results of the antibody response induced by the immunization are shown in Table 1.



TABLE-1.

*Analysis of the anti-Tat specific antibody response in sera from mice and rabbits immunized with the recombinant Tat protein.*

anti-Tat Antibody	OD-ELISA/Tat			Western
	1:500	1:1000	1:2000	Blot
Rabbit	0.651	0.400	0.175	+
Mouse	0.502	0.240	0.150	+

The recombinant Tat protein produced in *E. coli* was utilized to immunize mice and rabbits according to standard immunization protocols (Ref. 4). The sera of the immunized animals were analyzed by ELISA for the presence of anti-Tat antibodies by using three serum dilutions (1:500 to 1:2000). The results are the mean of the readings at 405 nm of two rabbits and three mice. Moreover, the sera were tested by Western blot with the recombinant Tat protein (100 ng).

The results of Table 1 demonstrate that the recombinant Tat, prepared by us, was able to induce an antibody response in both animal species, as tested with ELISA and Western blot which utilizes the recombinant Tat protein. Such antibodies were able to inhibit the internalization and the biological activities of Tat (Ref. 40, 41, 42). The pL-syn vector and the purification protocol of Tat protein are used to express and purify the mutants of Tat described in Example 2. The biological activity of the mutated and purified Tat proteins is measured by "rescue" assays of viral infection in HLM-1 cells, assays of proliferation of KS cells and *in vivo* in mice, as described above for the wild-type Tat protein. Moreover, the mutated Tat proteins are tested in the presence of wild-type Tat (at serial concentrations) to verify the negative transdominant effect on viral replication. The pL-syn vector and the purification protocol are used to express and purify fusion proteins of this type: Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/IL-12 or Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/IL-15 or parts of the same or Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/other molecules (or parts thereof) able to enhance the immune response to Tat alone or associated with other viral products. Fusion recombinant molecules are made by utilizing the sequences and the primers described in examples 2 and 3. As an alternative, synthetic peptides, corresponding to regions of Tat or of other viral products or of

cytokines to be used in combination with Tat are utilized as immunogens. The peptide sequences of Tat are:

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

5 Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

10 The Tat mutant peptides will contain the same amino acid substitutions of the mutated Tat proteins, described in the Example 2. The peptides will be utilized in combination with the peptide representing the universal T-helper epitope of the tetanus toxoid or with other peptides representing T-helper epitopes (Ref. 77).

**Example 1A. Uptake of picomolar concentrations (10 to 100 ng/ml) of biologically active Tat by activated endothelial cells is mediated by integrin receptors.**

15

When normal endothelial cells are activated in vitro with inflammatory cytokines, they become responsive to the effects of extracellular Tat and this is due to the induction of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  integrins (Ref. 9, 10). Similarly, inflammatory

20 cytokines (IC) or bFGF increase integrin expression on endothelial cells in vivo and this leads to a synergistic KS-promoting effect when a biologically-active Tat is inoculated in mice simultaneously or after bFGF (Ref. 42). In addition, IC-activated endothelial cells acquire APC function.

In this example it is shown that endothelial cells activated with IC take up

25 rhodaminated biologically-active Tat protein more efficiently and that this is mediated by the integrin receptors.

Because of the difficulty in observing the internalization of very low concentrations of cold Tat, the protein was labeled with rhodamin (Ref. 98). The rhodaminated Tat still showed activation of KS cell proliferation in the same concentration range.

30 as unlabelled Tat, indicating that the labeling procedure did not compromise its biological function. Tat uptake experiments were performed as follows: human

umbilical vein (HUVE) cells were grown and treated for 5 days with IC as described (Ref. 9, 46). The cells were then trypsinized, plated on 8 well slides (Nunc Inc., Naperville, IL) at  $0.5 \times 10^5$  cells per well and incubated for 18 hours in medium containing 15% fetal bovine serum (FBS), in the presence of IC. Serum free (SF, RPMI, 1% BSA, 0.1% antibiotics, fungizon) media were added and slides were pre-incubated for 2 h at  $-4^\circ \text{C}$ . Fresh medium, containing serial dilution of rhodaminated Tat, was added to the cells and the cells were incubated at  $37^\circ \text{C}$  for the time indicated. Negative controls were rhodaminated BSA in the same buffer as Tat. Cells were fixed in ice-cold acetone-methanol (1:1) and uptake and localization of Tat visualized and photographed using fluorescence microscopy. Results were evaluated by comparing the fluorescence of samples with the negative control and scored from 0 to ++++ on the amount of uptake without prior knowledge of sample code.

To investigate the pathways by which Tat is taken up by activated endothelial cells, experiments were carried out using activated HUVE cells with a wide range of concentrations of exogenous Tat, such as those previously used to induce HUVE or KS cell growth (10-50 ng/ml), or HIV-1 transactivation by adding the protein to cells carrying the HIV-1 promoter or the provirus (0.5 to 1 ug/ml).

In these experiments, for consistency with uptake inhibition experiments (see below), cells were pre-incubated at  $4^\circ \text{C}$  for 2 hours with medium lacking fetal calf serum. This pre-incubation does not affect the subsequent uptake of rhodaminated Tat.

With rhodaminated Tat, the uptake and translocation of the protein to the nucleus or nucleoli of activated HUVE cells began to be evident within 15 minute incubation with as low as 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat. The density of uptaken Tat in the cells was increased in a dose-dependent and time-dependent manner. Rhodaminated BSA or buffer showed no signals and were used routinely as negative controls.

To determine whether uptake of Tat by activated HUVE cells was mediated by the same integrins found expressed on KS cells, inhibition experiments were performed by pre-incubating IC-activated endothelial cells with cold Tat

(competitor), the physiological ligands for these receptors such as fibronectin (FN) or vitronectin (VN), or by pre-incubating the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding regions of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptors. The experimental procedure is briefly reported. After plating on 8 well slides, HUVE  
5 cells were incubated with medium containing 15% FBS for 18 h and then incubated with SF medium containing unlabelled Tat (cold competitor) (Table 1A), FN, VN (Table 1B), or monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding sequence of the FN or VN receptors ( $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ , respectively), or monoclonal  
10 antibodies directed against human factor VIII (control antibodies) (Fig. 1A) for 2 h at 4° C. The cells were then incubated with rhodaminated Tat for the periods of time indicated. The control consisted of cells treated with SF medium alone for 2h at 4° C and incubated with rhodaminated BSA. The cells were fixed, visualized, photographed and results scored as indicated above.

TABLE 1A.

*Inhibition of uptake of 100 ng/ml and 1 µg/ml rhodaminated Tat by cytokine-activated HUVE by pre-incubation of the cells with 1 µg/ml of unlabelled Tat.<sup>a</sup>*

Pre-incubation	Rhodaminated Tat	Uptake of Tat
Serum Free Medium	100 ng/ml	+++
1 µg/ml Unlabelled Tat	100 ng/ml	+/-
Serum Free Medium	1 µg/ml	++++
1 µg/ml Unlabelled Tat	1 µg/ml	+/-

<sup>a</sup> HUVE cells were cultured as previously described (Ref. 40). IC were obtained from human T-lymphotrophic virus-type-II (HTLV-II) transformed CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells or phytohemagglutinin-stimulated T cells and the supernatants used (1:8) to activate HUVE cells (passage 8-14) for 5 days as previously described (Ref. 9, 46). This supernatant contains interleukin-1 $\alpha$  (IL-1 $\alpha$ ) and - $\beta$  (IL-1 $\beta$ ), tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$  (TNF- $\alpha$ ) and - $\beta$  (TNF- $\beta$ ), and interferon- $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), (Ref. 9).

Tat protein was rhodaminated at lysine residues essentially as described (Ref. 98). Briefly, 50 µg recombinant Tat (2 mg/ml), was brought to pH 9.0 by the addition of 2.5 µl of 1M Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. Two point five µl of 1 mg/ml TRITC in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) was added and the reaction allowed to proceed for 8 hr at 4°C. Unreacted TRITC was quenched by the addition of 2.5 µl of 0.5M NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, the pH was lowered to 7.0, using 1M HCl, and the rhodaminated Tat was dialyzed against two changes of 50mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.0, 1 mM dithiothreitol (DTT) to remove the quenched TRITC. BSA or PBS, rhodaminated in the same way, were used as negative controls. Rhodaminated Tat was tested for AIDS-KS cells growth activity as described to insure that biological activity was maintained (Ref. 40).

HUVE cells were pre-incubated for 2 hours with serum free medium or 1 µg/ml unlabelled Tat in serum free medium, incubated with 100 ng/ml or 1 µg/ml rhodaminated Tat for 60 minutes and Tat uptake visualized by fluorescence microscopy. Negative controls (+/- uptake) were preincubation with serum free medium, followed by incubation with rhodaminated BSA.

TABLE 1B.

*Inhibition of the uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat by cytokine-activated HUVE by pre-incubation of the cells with an excess of FN or VN<sup>a</sup>.*

Pre-incubation	Uptake of Rhodaminated Tat
Serum Free Medium	++++
100ng/ml FN	+/-
100ng/ml VN	+/-

<sup>a</sup> HUVE cells were pre-incubated for 2 hours with serum free medium or FN or VN in serum free medium, incubated with 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat for 60 minutes and Tat uptake visualized by fluorescence microscopy. Negative controls (+/- uptake) were pre-incubation with serum-free medium, followed by incubation with rhodaminated BSA.

Uptake of Tat was inhibited by cold Tat (Table 1A), by FN or VN (Table 1B) or by prior treatment of the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding regions of both the FN receptor,  $\alpha_5\beta_1$ , and the VN receptor,  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Fig. 1A). The intensity of fluorescence in cells was reduced to levels seen with the negative control and no inhibition was observed by prior incubation of the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against human factor VIII, used as negative control, indicating that inhibition was specific (Fig. 1A).

Uptake and nuclear localization of 100 ng/ml Tat was inhibited by pre-incubation of the cells with the monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding region of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  receptor and the  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptor. However, in both instances inhibition was not complete. These results indicate that uptake of picomolar concentrations of Tat is mediated by the same integrins involved in cell adhesion to Tat (Ref. 10). However, at higher concentration of extracellular Tat (such as  $\geq$  100 ng/ml), a non-integrin mediated pathway is responsible for the uptake of some of the protein.

In contrast with these results, the uptake of iodinated Tat with lymphocyte and epithelial cell lines was shown to be linear and in function of the concentration of Tat in the medium and was not or poorly competed by an excess of cold Tat, indicative of the lack of receptor involvement (Ref. 98). However, the concentration range of Tat in the medium in that study was approximately 1-100  $\mu$ g/ml (Ref. 98), much higher than those needed to observe uptake of Tat by cells responsive to its biological activity, such as activated primary endothelial cells. In addition, iodination of Tat may hamper its structure and its uptake by the cells and no results of biological activity of iodinated Tat were shown by those authors.

These results, that are unpublished, demonstrate that the uptake of Tat occurs by at least two pathways depending upon the concentration of the protein. At low (10-100 ng/ml) Tat concentrations, uptake of Tat is mediated by the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptors through the interaction with the RGD sequence of the protein, whereas at higher concentration of extracellular Tat an integrin-independent pathway is more important. The integrin-mediated uptake of picomolar concentrations of Tat by IC-activated endothelial cells indicates a fully active protein capable of entering

antigen presenting cells, such as activated endothelial cells and dendritic cells, that initiate the immune response.

**Example 2. Construction and characterization of mutated tat genes.**

We produced 19 mutants in different Tat regions by means of site specific  
5 mutagenesis or by deletion. The sequence of each mutated DNA was controlled  
by sequencing. The cDNAs of the tat mutated genes were cloned in the PstI site  
of the pCV0 vector, described in the Example 3. Each mutant was co-transfected,  
as described by Ensoli et al. (Ref. 41) in COS-1 cells or in the Jurkat T-cell line  
with the HIV-1 LTR-CAT plasmid, in which the CAT reporter gene is driven by the  
10 HIV-1 LTR. The results of these experiments, not published, are reported in Table  
2.



TABLE 2

*Effect of Tat mutants on the HIV-1 LTR-CAT transactivation and blocking effect (negative transdominant) on the Tat wild-type activity*

MUTANTS	Transactivating activity <sup>a</sup>		Transdominant activity <sup>b</sup>
	Mean (fold)	(min-max values)	(% inhibition) Mean
CYS 22	0.09	(0.021-0.22)	21
THR 23	0.36	(0.16-1)	
THR 23A	0.30	(0.16-0.78)	
ASN 24	0.34	(0.34-0.82)	
ASN 24A	0.42	(0.45-0.95)	46
TYR 26	0.14	(0.08-0.19)	
LYS 28/29	0.52	(0.19-1.04)	
CYS 30	0.30	(0.045-0.65)	
CYS 31	0.60	(0.27-1.09)	98
PHE 32	0.31	(0.077-0.097)	
LYS 33	0.04	(0.0027-0.068)	
GLU 35	0.31	(0.19-0.43)	
PHE 38	0.05	(0.043-.057)	97
LYS 41	0.04	(0.025-0.061)	
TYR 47	0.58	(0.31-0.8)	
57 A	0.35	(0.26-0.44)	
TAT-RGD	0.94	(0.73-1.15)	1
TAT-KGE	1.11	(0.67-1.49)	
TAT wild-type	1	1	

<sup>a</sup>The results are given as the increment of activation of CAT activity values induced by the wild-type Tat (Fold=1). <sup>b</sup>The results are expressed as percent (%) inhibition of the wild-type Tat activity.

From the results presented in Table 2 it is evident that for the majority of the mutants the transactivating effect of the HIV-1 LTR was reduced or absent, with the exception of the RGD mutant, which had an activity similar to wild-type Tat. We selected the 4 mutants (cys22, lys33, phe38, lys41) having the lowest (almost zero) transactivating activity and determined the negative transdominating effect on the transactivating activity of wild-type Tat. To this end, COS-1 cells were co-transfected with each vector containing a Tat mutant and the pCV-Tat vector (in a molar ratio of 10:1) in the presence of the HIV-1 LTR-CAT vector. As shown in Table 2, the lys41 and tyr47 mutants inhibited almost completely Tat activity, while

the lys33 and cys22 mutants partially inhibited the Tat activity. However, the cys22 recombinant protein (described in following Example 3) competed the wild-type Tat protein in transactivating the HIV-1 LTR-CAT (fig. 1B). A mutant in the cysteine region (cys22), one in the core region (lys41), one deleted of the RGD sequence (RGD $\Delta$ ) and a double mutant containing the mutation in lys41 and the deletion of the RGD sequence (lys41-RGD $\Delta$ ) were selected.

The sequence of the tat insert and of the mutants selected for the vaccination is reported hereinafter. A series of tat mutants is described prepared by 1) substitution of a base to obtain an amino acidic substitution and 2) deletion of a base to obtain a deletion of the correspondent amino acids. The substitutions and deletions were obtained by site direct mutagenesis. The sequences of the wild-type tat gene and of the tat gene mutants, hereinafter reported, were inserted in the pCV0 plasmid vector as described above.

With Seq. 1 it is intended the HIV-1 tat gene sequence, from BH-10 clone and its derived protein. With Seq. 2 it is intended the cys22 mutant sequence (and its derived protein), represented by a substitution of Timine (T) nucleotide in position 66 starting from the 5' end with the Guanine (G) nucleotide. This substitution originates, in the derived amino acidic sequence, a substitution of a Cysteine (C in one letter code) in position 22 at the amino-terminal end, with a Glycine (G in one letter code). With Seq. 3 it is intended the lys41 mutant sequence (and its derived protein), represented by a substitution of the Timine (T) nucleotide in position 123 from the 5' end with the Cytosine (C) nucleotide. This substitution originates, in the derived amino acidic sequence, a substitution of a Lysine (K in one letter code) in position 41 from the amino-terminal end, with a Threonine (T in one letter code). With Seq. 4 it is intended a sequence of the RGD mutant (and its derived protein), represented by the deletion of the nucleotide sequence CGAGGGGAC, from nucleotide 232 to nucleotide 240, starting from the 5' end of the wild-type tat gene. This gives a deletion of the amino acids Arginine-Glycine-Aspartic acid (RGD in one letter code) in the positions 78-80 from the amino-terminal end. With Seq. 5 it is intended a sequence of the double lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (and its derived protein), originated by the combination of the above described mutants.

**Wild-type tat nucleotide sequence (Seq. 1)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
5 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acid sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKALG  
10 ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**Cys22 mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 2)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
15 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
20 LGISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**Lys41 nucleotide sequence (Seq. 3)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
25 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTALG  
30 ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**RGDΔ mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 4)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
5 CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKALG  
ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

**Lys41-RGDΔ mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 5)**

10 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

15 **Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTALG  
ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

**Example 3. Construction and characterization of the DNA immunogens.**

The DNA molecules for the inoculation of animals are inserted in the 6.4 kb pCV0  
20 plasmid vector (Ref. 5). This plasmid comprises two SV40 replication origins, the  
major late promoter of the adenovirus (AdMLP) and the splicing sequences of the  
adenovirus and of the mice immunoglobulin genes, the cDNA of mice  
dihydrofolate-reductase gene (dhfr) and the SV40 polyadenylation signal. The site  
for the PstI restriction enzyme is located at the 3' of the AdMLP, and represents  
25 the site in which the exogenous gene of interest is cloned. The *tat* gene cDNA  
(261 base pairs) (Seq. 1, example 2) of HIV-1 was derived from the HIV-1 BH10  
clone (Ref. 126) and coded for a 86 amino acid-long protein. The pCV-Tat vector  
(Ref. 5) was obtained by cloning the *tat* cDNA in the pCV0 PstI site, driven by the  
AdMLP. The choice of this vector is based on that the AdMLP induced a higher  
30 expression and release of Tat, with respect to other eukariotic promoters, such as,  
for instance, the immediate early region promoter of the cytomegalovirus (CMV)

as demonstrated by Ensoli et al. (Ref. 41), and reported in Table 3.

TABLE 3. *Expression, subcellular localization, release and activity of Tat in COS-1 cells transfected with pCV-Tat and CMV-Tat<sup>a</sup>.*

Vectors	Tat expression			Tat <sup>b</sup> content			Tat activity	
	Nucleus <sup>c</sup>	Cytoplasm (%)		Total	Intracell. (%)	Extracell (%)	Intracell. <sup>d</sup> (fold)	Extracell. <sup>e</sup> (cpm)
Positive Cells								
PCV-Tat	5-10	++	+++	25	63,5	36,5	50	2.478
CMV-Tat	3-5	++	+	14,6	92,2	7,8	72	2.254
Controllo	0	-	-	0	0	0	1	1.400

<sup>a</sup>COS-1 cells ( $5 \times 10^6$ ) were transfected by electroporation with 30  $\mu$ g of pCV-Tat, CMV-Tat or a control DNA. 48 hours after transfection, Tat expression was evaluated by immunoistochemistry with anti-Tat monoclonal antibodies (given values are the mean of the percentage values of positive cells) and by localisation of nuclear and cytoplasmic Tat. The presence of intra- and extra-cellular Tat was analyzed by radioimmunoprecipitation on the cellular extracts (500  $\mu$ l) and in the culture media (4 ml) and subsequent densitometric reading (Gelscan XL; Pharmacia) of the precipitated Tat bands. The activity of intracellular Tat was measured on cellular extracts of COS-1 cells co-transfected with Tat expressing vectors, or the control vector, and the LTR-CAT HIV-1 plasmid; the extracellular Tat activity on the AIDS-KS cells proliferation (determined by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation assay) was measured in the culture medium (diluted 1:2 and 1:4) of the cells transfected with plasmids expressing Tat or the control plasmid. The results are the average of five independent experiments.

<sup>b</sup>Densitometric analysis of the immunoprecipitated Tat protein band. Values are expressed in an arbitrary scale, the total detected minimum value (intra- and extracellular Tat) being 10.

<sup>c</sup>-, negative; +, 50% of Tat-positive cells; ++, 50-100% of Tat-positive cells.

<sup>d</sup>CAT activity after 20 minutes incubation with respect to the control vector, the activation value of which being considered 1.

<sup>e</sup>AIDS-KS cell growth was measured by a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation assay (standard deviation, SD: 12%). The supernatants of the cells transfected with the control DNA had a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation of 1,400 cpm (SD: 11.5%). The

*culture medium derived from activated T lymphocytes (positive control) had a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation of 2,400 cpm (SD: 10%).*

Table 3 shows that in the pCV-Tat transfected cells, compared with the CMV-Tat transfected cells, the percentage of Tat-positive cells and the total Tat content are higher, the amount of released Tat is much higher and is related to the total and cytoplasmatic content of Tat, and the biological activity of the extracellular Tat on AIDS-KS cell growth is therefore higher. Such results show that the pCV-Tat vector codes for a biologically active protein, induces high expression levels of the tat gene and can release from the cells much higher Tat amounts than the CMV-Tat vector.

The pCV0 vector is utilized also for the expression of HIV-1 nef, rev and gag genes and of the genes coding for IL-12 and IL-15 cytokines. The cDNAs of nef (618 base pairs, NL43 strain) (Ref. 112) rev (348 base pairs, strain NL43) (Ref. 95) and the gag genes (1500 base pairs, strain NL43) (Ref. 95), or the cDNAs of IL-12 (Ref. 165) or IL-15 genes (Ref. 56) are amplified by polymerase chain reaction technique (PCR) by using specific primers complementary to the first 15 nucleotides of 5' region (primer forward) (Seq. P1, P3, P5, P7, P9) or to the last 15 nucleotides of 3' region of the gene (primer reverse) (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). Moreover, each primer, both forward and reverse, comprises the sequence for the restriction PstI enzyme to consent the cloning of the amplified product into the pCV0 vector. After cloning, the sequence of the inserted genes is controlled by DNA sequencing. The pCV0 vector is used also for the Tat co-expression with other viral genes of HIV-1 (rev, nef or gag) or with the IL-12 or IL-15 cytokine-coding genes. To this end the cDNA of the HIV-1 tat gene of 261 base pairs (Seq. 1, example 2) is amplified by PCR with a primer forward including the sequence for the PstI restriction enzyme (Seq. P11) and a primer reverse complementary to the last 15 nucleotides of the tat gene (Seq. P12). The viral genes (nef, rev or gag) or the genes coding for the IL-12 or IL-15 cytokines are amplified by a primer forward which includes also a sequence of 15 bases complementary to the tat 3' region, permitting the gene being in frame with the tat gene (Seq. P13, P14, P15, P16, P17), and a primer reverse including the sequence for the PstI restriction

enzyme (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). Afterwards, a third PCR reaction is performed in which the DNA template is represented by the amplified products of the tat gene and of the gene of interest. The primer forward is represented by the primer utilized to amplify tat (Seq. P11) and the primer reverse by the one utilized in  
5 amplifying the gene of interest (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). The amplified tat/gene of interest is purified with agarose gel, digested with PstI and cloned in pCV0. After cloning, the sequence of the inserted genes is controlled by DNA sequencing, while the protein expression is determined by means of transfection as described above (Ref. 41).

10 The sequences of the above mentioned primers are:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

15 Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTGAAA3'

20 Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA  
GGAAGAAGC3'

25 Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5'

GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGTGCG  
AGAGCG3'

30 Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC  
CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT  
TTCGAAA3'

**Example 4. Inoculation in healthy *Macaca fascicularis* of an anti-Tat protein vaccine: evaluation of safety, tolerability, specific immune response and protective efficacy against virus challenge.**

The tolerability, safety and the ability to elicit a specific immune response (humoral and cellular) and protection against virus challenge of the recombinant Tat protein vaccine, produced by the described method and purified through heparin-affinity columns, was assessed in the experimental model of cynomolgus monkey (*Macaca fascicularis*). In order to induce a broad immune response we used aluminium phosphate (Alum) that has been tested in numerous models and it is the sole approved for human use. Among particulate adjuvants we used RIBI (belonging to the group of emulsifiers or composed by monophosphorylic lipid A, dimycolic trehasole and skeleton of the bacterial wall of Calmette-Guerin bacillus) (Ref. 7, 109).

In the first pilot experiment we evaluated the tolerability, the safety and the ability to elicit a specific immune response (humoral and cellular). Thus, 3 monkeys were inoculated according to the following schedule: monkey 1 (M1) was inoculated with the recombinant Tat protein (100 µg), resuspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, by the subcute route in one site; monkey 2 (M2) was inoculated with the recombinant Tat protein (10 µg), resuspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, by the subcute route in one site; and monkey 3 (M3) was the control monkey not inoculated. Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from all monkeys at days -42 and -35 preceding the first vaccine inoculation in order to determine the basal parameters. Serum and plasma samples were frozen at -20°C or -80°C and used later to resuspend the protein inoculum. Monkeys 1 and 2 were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. The immunization schedule was interrupted at week 37 for monkey M1 and at week 41 for monkey M2. Animals were sacrificed to study the immunological parameters in several organs and tissues (spleen and lymph nodes), such as the evaluation of the presence of a proliferative response to Tat,



and of CAF and CTL activities against Tat. CAF activity is the antiviral activity mediated by CD8<sup>+</sup> lymphocytes, neither MHC-restricted nor cytolytic. In the same days of the inoculation of the immunogen, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn from each animal to perform laboratory tests (chemo-physic analyses, electrolytes, leukocytes, platelet counts and haemoglobin quantitation), the evaluation of the immunological parameters, such as the presence of specific immunoglobulins (IgM, IgG, IgA), the levels of Th1 type- (IL-2, IFN $\gamma$ ) and Th2 type-cytokines (IL-4, IL-10), the production of chemokines (RANTES, MIP-1 $\alpha$  and MIP-1 $\beta$ ), the lymphocytic phenotype (CD4, CD8, CD3, CD14, CD20, CD25, CD56, HLA-DR, CD45RA), the proliferative response to Tat, the presence of specific cytotoxic activity (CTL), the presence of antiviral activity (CAF), and the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) mediated by PBMC and by autologous serum. Moreover, to evaluate the *in vivo* presence of a cell-mediated immune response, all vaccinated and control monkeys were subjected to a skin-test to Tat.

The results of this experiment are as follows. No alterations of the chemo-physic, haematologic and behavioristic parameters were observed. In vaccinated and control monkeys, signs of inflammation and neo-vascularization were not detected at the sites of inoculation. These results indicate that the Tat protein was well tolerated by the animals and that was non-toxic at the administered doses and at the given inoculation route. In monkeys M1 and M2 the presence of antibodies of the IgG type specific to Tat were detected at week 5 after the first inoculation. At week 37, anti-Tat IgG were detectable up to 1:6400 plasma dilution in both monkeys, and, at week 41, up to 1:12.800 plasma dilution in monkey M2. The results are shown in figures 2 and 3. In the control monkey M3, anti-Tat antibodies with low titers were detected, likely elicited by the repeated inoculations of low amount of Tat that was injected in this monkey to control the specificity of the skin test reactions. In monkeys M1 and M2, anti-Tat antibodies were mainly directed against the amino-terminal region (aa 1-20) of Tat, with a titer of 1:3200 (figure 4). In monkey M2, vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat, antibodies directed against aa 36-50 and 46-60 of Tat were also detected, with titers of 1:50 and 1:100, respectively (figure 4). The ability of monkeys' serum to neutralize Tat was determined by

means of in vitro assays that measured the inhibition of the rescue of HIV-1 replication in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous Tat protein, as previously described (Ref. 41). These assays demonstrated that plasma from monkeys M1 and M2, at week 27 after the first inoculation, blocked virus replication induced by exogenous Tat, as determined by quantification of p24 antigen in the culture supernatants. Conversely, preimmune plasma from the same monkeys did not block Tat activity (Table 4).

TABLE 4

*Neutralizing activity of monkeys' plasma on the rescue of virus replication induced by extracellular Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Preimmune M1	0
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Preimmune M2	0
Tat (39 ng/ml) + Immune M1	79.12
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Immune M2	100

<sup>a</sup>The neutralizing activity of plasma was determined in HLM-1 cells (HeLa-CD4<sup>+</sup> cells containing an integrated copy of an HIV-1 provirus defective in the tat gene). HLM-1 cells were seeded at  $6 \times 10^5$  cells/well in 24-well plates and incubated at 37°C for 16 hours. Cells were washed twice with PBS, containing 0.1 % of bovine serum albumine (BSA), and cultured for 48 hours with fresh medium (0.3 ml) in the presence of recombinant Tat protein and an equal volume of the animal plasma, withdrawn at time 0 (preimmune plasma) or at week 27 (immune plasma). Negative controls were represented by cells treated only with the preimmune plasma pooled together, with the immune plasma pooled together or with PBS containing 0.1% BSA (PBS + 0.1%BSA), without Tat. In all control samples no effects were observed on the rescue of virus replication. Each plasma was tested in duplicate. The presence of virus released by the cells was assayed by quantitation of p24 Gag antigen, using a commercial p24 antigen capture ELISA kit (NEN-Dupont). The results are expressed as the percentage of inhibition of virus rescue [measured for each plasma as the average value of p24 (pg/ml) in two wells] by the immune plasma as compared to the preimmune plasma (0% inhibition). Monkeys M1 and M2 were vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein

(100  $\mu$ g and 10  $\mu$ g, respectively) resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI, and injected by the subcute route in one site.

The results indicate the presence of a proliferative response to Tat at week 22 (Table 5) in monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein, being higher in monkey M2 that received 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein at each boost.

Table 5

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from the primary immunization				
		15	22	27	32	37
M1	PHA	15.3	13.9	19.9	40.6	3.2
	TT	1.2	4.7	2.1	3.8	2
	Tat	0.8	2.4	1.1	1.3	0.6
M2	PHA	8.1	11.6	17.1	16.8	1.7
	TT	2	3.8	1.7	1	0.6
	Tat	0.9	3	1.4	1.2	0.6
M3	PHA	5.1	19.9	18.2	6.6	8.1
	TT	7.2	6.2	5.5	2.8	5.6
	Tat	2.1	1.4	1.3	0.7	0.9

<sup>a</sup>PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density gradient were plated at a concentration of  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/well in triplicates in a flat bottomed 96-well plate, cultured in RPMI-1640 supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (FCS) and stimulated with Tat (1 or 5  $\mu$ g/ml), PHA (4  $\mu$ g/ml) or Tetanus Toxoid (TT) to which monkeys were vaccinated. Unstimulated controls were incubated in RPMI, 10% FCS medium. The increase of cellular proliferation was measured at day 5 by <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation as previously described (Ref. 39, 22). Results are expressed as stimulation index and were calculated as follows: average of the test sample (cpm)/average of control (cpm). Values greater than 2.5 were considered positive. Monkeys M1 and M2 were immunized subcute with 100  $\mu$ g or 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI. M3 represents a control monkey. As shown in Table 6 no cytotoxic activity to Tat was detected in monkeys M1 and M2 immunized with recombinant Tat.

TABLE 6

*Analysis of cytotoxic activity to Tat (CTL)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M1	41	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M2	41*	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
M3	41	0	0	0	0	0	0	-

- 5 <sup>a</sup>PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density centrifugation were resuspended at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^7$  cells/ml in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% heat inactivated FCS and seeded in a 24-well plate (500  $\mu$ l per well) for 12 hours at 37°C in the presence of 1  $\mu$ g of Tat. One day later, the cells incubated without Tat were centrifuged at 1500 rpm and resuspended in 50  $\mu$ l of RPMI 1640
- 10 supplemented with 10% FCS, incubated for 3 hours at 37°C with 1  $\mu$ g of Tat, washed, resuspended in 500  $\mu$ l of fresh medium and added to the well containing the PBMCs previously stimulated. On day 2 the cells were diluted with 1 ml of medium containing IL-2 (2 IU/ml) and cultured for 14 days. Autologous B lymphocytes isolated from each monkey before the vaccine protocol were used
- 15 as target cells (BLCL). To this aim, PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density centrifugation at day 35 were seeded at a concentration of  $3 \times 10^5$  cells/well in a 96-well plate and cultured for 2 or 3 weeks in the presence of 50% of a medium collected from a cell line that produces Papiovirus as previously described (Ref. 28). Ten B cell lines obtained for each animal were expanded and frozen. To test the toxicity, the
- 20 Delfia Cytotoxic Test (Wallac, Turku, Finland) based on the time resolved fluorescence was used (Ref. 12, 13, 14). To this aim, BLCL were cultured at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/200  $\mu$ l of RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% FCS containing 4  $\mu$ g of Tat for 12 hours at 37°C. As the control, another aliquot of autologous BLCL was incubated with the same medium without Tat. BLCL were
- 25 washed and resuspended in 1 ml of RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% FCS containing 5  $\mu$ l of fluorescence enhancing ligand and incubated for 15 min at 37°C according to the manufacturer's instruction. After 5 washings, BLCL were resuspended at a concentration of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/ml and promptly centrifuged in

order to harvest the supernatant that was used to measure the background level. PBMCs (Effectors) were seeded in duplicate at a concentration of  $2.5 \times 10^4$  cells/100  $\mu$ l in medium containing IL-2 and properly diluted in a 96-well plate.  $5 \times 10^3$  of target cells/100  $\mu$ l (cultured with or without Tat) were added to each well. Target:Effector ratios were 1:50, 1:25, 1:12.5, 1:6.25, 1:3.125. PBMCs and target cells (Tat-pulsed or unpulsed) were incubated for 2 hours at 37°C with i) 20  $\mu$ l of 5% Triton to measure the maximum release, ii) 100  $\mu$ l of growth medium to detect the spontaneous release, iii) 200  $\mu$ l of supernatant from target cells to detect the background level. At the end of the incubation period the plates were centrifuged, 20  $\mu$ l of each supernatant were transferred into a new plate and incubated in the presence of 200  $\mu$ l of an Europium solution included in the kit. The fluorescence was measured after 20 min incubation with a time resolved fluorescence reader (Victor, Wallac, Turku, Finland). Specific CTL activity was measured as following: % specific release =  $\frac{[(\text{average of sample detection} - \text{background}) - (\text{spontaneous release} - \text{background})]}{[(\text{Maximum release} - \text{background}) - (\text{spontaneous release} - \text{background})]} \times 100$ . The test was considered positive when the Tat specific-release was higher than 4% at most of the Effector : Target ratios tested. 4% is an arbitrary value established on the basis of previous control experiments. ND, not determined. Monkey M2 was immunized subcutaneous with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI. M3 represents a control monkey.

ND: not done.

\* PBMCs were isolated from peripheral lymph nodes when M2 had been sacrificed. Moreover, the results demonstrate, at weeks 22, 27 and 37, the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF), measured as the ability of cell supernatants from monkeys CD8+ T lymphocytes to inhibit acute infection of the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P in CEMx174 cells, or to control reactivation of HIV-1 chronic infection in OM-10-1 cells (Table 7). CAF activity was generally observed in vaccinated monkeys as compared to control animals.

TABLE 7

*Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Week after the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	22	89.5	ND
	27	62	61.7
	37	ND	ND
M2	22	44	ND
	27	54	27
	37	48	53
M3	22	24	ND
	27	37	22
	37	75	23

<sup>a</sup> PBMC from monkeys vaccinated with 100  $\mu$ g (M1) and 10  $\mu$ g (M2) of recombinant Tat protein and from a control monkey (M3), that was not vaccinated, but had repeated skin tests with Tat were isolated by Ficoll density gradient. CD8+ T lymphocytes enriched cultures were isolated from PBMC by anti-CD8 magnetic beads (Dynabeads, Dynal, Norway) according to manufacturer's instructions. The purity of the cultures was controlled by FACS analysis using a series of antibodies directed against specific cellular markers (CD3, CD4, CD8). CD8+ enriched cultures were seeded (in duplicate) at  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/500  $\mu$ l per well in 48-well plates, previously coated with an anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody (2.5  $\mu$ g/ml, BioSource International, Camarillo, CA) for 12 hours at 4°C, and grown in RPMI 1640, containing 10% fetal bovine serum and IL-2 (20 U/ml). 250  $\mu$ l of medium were collected every three days, for two weeks, and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium. Cell supernatants were centrifuged, filtered (0.45  $\mu$ m) and stored at -80°C. Cell supernatants derived from all time points, with the exception of the first one, were pooled and the presence of antiviral activity was tested as their ability to inhibit viral replication in two systems, represented by acute and chronic infection, respectively. For the acute infection system, the CEM x 174 cell line was used, which derives from the human B cell line 721.174 fused with the human T cell line CEM (Ref. 143). Cells ( $2 \times 10^5$ ) were incubated in

polypropilene tubes with or without 200  $\mu$ l of CD8+ supernatants, prepared as described above, for 2 hours at 37°C. Cells were washed 3 times with fresh medium, seeded at  $2 \times 10^4$  cells per well, in 96-well plates, and incubated in 200  $\mu$ l with (treated cells) or without (untreated cells) of different volumes (50  $\mu$ l, 5  $\mu$ l and 0.5  $\mu$ l) of culture supernatants derived from CD8+ T lymphocytes of monkeys injected with the vaccine or the control monkey. After infection, aliquots of culture supernatants were collected every three days and substituted with an equal volume of complete medium previously added with the CD8+ culture supernatant from vaccinated and control monkeys. The results shown in the Table correspond to day 7 after infection and are expressed as percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication of cells treated with CD8+ culture supernatants derived from vaccinated monkeys as compared to untreated cells. Viral replication was determined by measuring the RT values, as described (Ref. 54), or the p27 Gag values by ELISA, in the cell supernatants collected at each time point. For the chronic infection system OM-10-1 cell line was used (Ref. 20, 21), which represents a human T lymphocytic line chronically infected by HIV-1. Cells were seeded (in duplicate) at  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/200  $\mu$ l per well, in 96-well plates, in the presence of anti-TNF $\beta$  antibodies (40  $\mu$ g/ml), with or without different volumes (50  $\mu$ l, 5  $\mu$ l, 0.5  $\mu$ l) of cell supernatant from CD8+ T lymphocytes derived from vaccinated or control monkeys. Cells were activated to proliferate by PMA ( $10^{-7}$  M). After 24 hours, aliquots of culture medium were collected to determine viral replication by measuring RT or p24 Gag levels by ELISA. The results are represented as % of inhibition of reactivation of infection in treated cells as compared to untreated cells. The results of acute and chronic infection shown in the Table refer to cells treated with 5  $\mu$ l of supernatant derived from CD8+ cell cultures. ND: not done.

Analysis of the delayed hypersensitivity (DTH) by means of a skin test showed that both the vaccinated (M1 and M2) and control (M3) monkeys were negative (Table 8).

TABLE 8  
Skin-test to Tat<sup>a</sup>

Weeks after the primary immunization	Monkeys		
	M1	M2	M3
10	-	-	-
15	-	-	-
22	-	-	-
27	-	-	-
32	-	-	-
37	-	-	-

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µl of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone were inoculated by the intradermal route in a dorsal area previously shaved of the vaccinated and control (control of specificity of the response) monkeys, at weeks 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 following the first immunization. Monkeys M1 and M2 were vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein (100 µg and 10 µg, respectively) in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, injected by the subcute route in one site. Monkey M3 is a control monkey that has not been vaccinated. The appearance of a nodular erythema after 48-72 hours was suggestive of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction (DTH): ++, Ø ≥ 5 mm; +, Ø ≥ 1-4 mm; +/-, erythema without hardening; -, Ø < 1 mm.

The results of this pilot experiment indicate that Tat recombinant protein, produced and purified according to a protocol described by us, was not toxic at the doses of 100 and 10 µg administered by the subcute route. In addition, Tat protein elicited a specific and broad immune response with antiviral activities, both humoral and cell-mediated. A stronger and specific anti-Tat immune response was observed in monkey M2, vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant protein. Moreover, the RIBI adjuvant did not show any apparent sign of toxicity in the vaccinated monkeys.

Based on these results, a second pilot experiment was designed in order to determine the effects of immunization with 10 µg of Tat combined with RIBI or Alum adjuvants. Monkeys were injected by the subcute route in one site according to the following schedule. Monkey M1-3: 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI. Monkeys M4-6: 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum. Monkey M7: RIBI



250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum (control monkey). Monkey M8: Alum 250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum (control monkey). Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from each monkey at day -9 preceding the first immunization in order to carry out the exams described in the previous pilot experiment and to determine the basal parameters of each animal. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At week 36 monkeys M1-6 received the last boost with recombinant Tat protein (16 µg) in 200 µl of ISCOM (immune stimulating complex) and 300 µl of PBS. ISCOM is an adjuvant consisting of quil A saponin, cholesterol and phospholipids which increases humoral and cell-mediated immune response (Ref. 109, 90). Monkeys M7 and M8 were injected at the same time points only with adjuvants. At each vaccination point and at weeks 40, 44 and 50, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn from the animals to analyze the clinical and immunological parameters described in the previous pilot experiment. Moreover, urine samples and vaginal swabs were collected to analyze the presence of Tat specific secretory IgA. In order to evaluate the protective effect of Tat immunization against the infection, vaccinated and control monkeys were challenged with the chimeric "simian/human immunodeficiency virus" (SHIV), strain 89.6P, containing the HIV-1 *tat* gene, previously grown and titered in *Macaca fascicularis* (Ref. 128, 129, 69). After challenge, animals were monitored (every two weeks for the first month, every four weeks for the next three months and every 8 weeks up to 6-12 months) for virological parameters, such as plasma p27 antigenemia and plasma and cellular viral load. To confirm that infection had occurred, anti-SIV antibodies were also searched by means of a commercial kit used for the detection of anti-HIV-2 antibodies which recognizes also anti-SIV antibodies (Elavia Ac-Ab-Ak II kit, Diagnostic Pasteur, Paris, France).

At present, the results of the second pilot experiments are as follows. No alterations of the chemo-physical, haematological and behavioristic parameters were observed. Monkeys did not show any inflammatory or neovascularization sign at the site of inoculation. A specific antibody response (IgM, IgG) was observed. At week 15 anti-Tat antibody (IgG) titers reached high levels, ranging from 1:6400 to 1:25600 (figures 5-7). The antibodies essentially reacted with the

amino-terminal region (aa 1-20) of Tat, with titers ranging from 1:1600 to 1:3200 (figure 8) as shown at week 22. Moreover, antibodies directed against aa 46-60 of Tat, with titers ranging from 1:100 to 1:200, were also detected (figure 8). The ability of the monkeys' plasma to neutralize Tat activity was tested by assaying the inhibition of viral rescue in HLM-1 cells incubated with serial amounts of exogenous Tat, as previously described in the first pilot experiment. The results of these experiments have shown that immune plasma (diluted 1:2) from monkeys M1-6 at week 15 blocked viral replication induced by 30 ng/ml of exogenous Tat, as determined by the measurement of p24 antigen released into the culture medium. Conversely, the preimmune plasma of monkeys M1-6 or plasma from control monkeys (M7, M8) did not block Tat activity (Table 9). Moreover, immune plasma (diluted 1:2) of monkeys M1-6, withdrawn at week 21, blocked virus replication induced by 60 ng/ml, 120 ng/ml, 240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml of exogenous Tat. In particular, these plasma determined a 10-fold reduction of virus replication induced by very high doses of extracellular Tat (240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml) (Table 9).

TABLE 9

*Neutralizing activity of immune plasma on the rescue of virus replication induced by extracellular Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M1	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M2	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M3	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M4	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M5	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M6	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 15)	89.8
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 15)	78.7
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 15)	100
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 15)	100
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 15)	70.8
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 15)	94.2
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M1	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M2	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M3	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M4	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M5	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M6	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	96.3
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	100
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	100
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	98.7
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	99
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	98.8
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	59.2
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	90.4
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	96.8
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	98.3
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	100
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	97.8
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	26.1
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	49.4
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	70.3
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	91.2
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	94.5
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	86
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	32.7
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	38.9
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	57.5
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	89.4
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	72
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	71.8

<sup>a</sup> The ability of anti-Tat plasma to neutralize Tat activity was determined in HLM-1 cells, as described in legend to Table 4. Recombinant Tat protein (30 ng/ml, 60 ng/ml, 120 ng/ml, 240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml) was added alone or together with an equal volume of monkey preimmune plasma or at week 15 or 21 (immune plasma). Monkeys M1-3 were vaccinated with 10 µg of Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were vaccinated with 10 µg of Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum; two control monkeys were injected with RIBI (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M8). The results are represented as described in legend to Table 4.

The ability of monkey plasma to neutralize the activity of extracellular Tat released by the cells during acute infection was tested in CEM x 174 cells infected with the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P. At day 7 after infection virus replication was observed in 50% of control cells infected with SHIV and cultivated with the preimmune plasma of monkeys M1-6. Conversely, virus replication was not detected in infected cells that were grown in the presence of the immune plasma from monkeys M1-6 withdrawn at week 44 (Table 10).

TABLE 10

*Neutralizing activity of immune plasma on transmission of virus infection <sup>a</sup>*

Sample	p27 (pg/ml)
SHIV + Preimmune M1	Neg
SHIV + Preimmune M2	Neg
SHIV + Preimmune M3	1.080
SHIV + Preimmune M4	0.602
SHIV + Preimmune M5	1.169
SHIV + Preimmune M6	Neg
SHIV + Immune M1	Neg
SHIV + Immune M2	Neg
SHIV + Immune M3	Neg
SHIV + Immune M4	Neg
SHIV + Immune M5	Neg
SHIV + Immune M6	Neg

<sup>a</sup> CEM x 174 cells ( $3 \times 10^4$  cells/150  $\mu$ l) in 96-well plates were infected with the chimeric SHIV 89.6P virus ( $5 \times 10^5$  TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) for 2 hours at 37°C in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS. Cells were washed twice with RPMI 1640 and resuspended in 150  $\mu$ l of complete medium added with 5% of the monkey preimmune plasma or immune plasma (week 44) from animals vaccinated with recombinant Tat (10  $\mu$ g) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Animal plasma were previously heated at 56° for 30 min. and analyzed by ELISA to control anti-Tat antibody titers. Each serum was tested in duplicate. At days 3, 5 and 7 after infection 120  $\mu$ l of culture medium were collected and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium containing 5% of preimmune or immune plasma from monkeys M1-6. The ability of the plasma to neutralize extracellular Tat, released during acute infection, and to control the transmission of infection in vitro was determined by detecting the viral Gag p27 in the culture medium by ELISA (Coulter International, Miami, FL). The results, represented as p27 values (pg/ml), correspond to the mean value of two wells for each serum at day 7 after infection.

Moreover, a proliferative response to Tat was observed since week 11 (Table 11).

TABLE 11

*Proliferative response to Tat <sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from primary immunization									
		0	11	15	21	28	32	36	40	44	50
M1	PHA	16.96	10.50	15.27	33.8	7.2	51.5	64.3	36.05	24	65.7
	TT	11.69	1.96	3.01	1.2	1.2	1.3	0.93	1.4	10.05	7.2
	Tat	1.12	1.55	0.52	1.7	0.8	0.8	0.6	0.7	9.27	4.7
M2	PHA	31.27	25.75	21.28	87.1	25.7	56	38.2	40.3	29.03	26
	TT	1.12	1.8	0.57	1.7	1.15	1.6	4.95	1.2	1.51	2.9
	Tat	1.08	3.65	6.22	14.14	3.5	1.8	4.1	1.9	7.67	13.2
M3	PHA	22.42	7.89	16.88	36.3	148.5	42	78.9	27	53.71	ND
	TT	11.43	0.95	1.71	1.25	1.2	1.1	1	1	1.81	ND
	Tat	1.65	2.69	18.82	23.51	12.03	0.9	1.3	0.5	23.85	ND
M4	PHA	3.88	20.77	15.22	83.7	18.6	35	38.2	45.2	57.47	15.8
	TT	2.85	4.49	9.07	6.9	15.8	3.7	3.8	5	19.77	6.6
	Tat	1.29	3.01	3.24	7.9	10.1	2.6	1.5	3.9	33.61	4.7
M5	PHA	6.25	5.74	16.74	72.2	7.45	41	56.5	32.9	33.85	12
	TT	2.31	1.07	4.84	3.9	0.9	0.83	1.4	1.24	10.22	1.95
	Tat	1.80	0.66	1.76	3.6	2.22	0.8	1.14	1.3	1.33	1.4
M6	PHA	11.96	17.94	2.77	29.4	7.3	25	8.3	6.85	18.01	5.2
	TT	4.14	1.71	0.13	1.7	10.34	1.3	1.8	1.1	2.49	0.9
	Tat	1.37	1.06	0.11	2.95	9.3	1.13	1.3	1	5.8	0.3
M7	PHA	21.65	20.30	37.93	17.6	17.9	75	12.9	34.8	41.81	27.5
	TT	0.97	0.80	0.88	1	0.6	1.04	0.6	0.4	1.11	1.1
	Tat	1.78	0.68	0.73	1	0.42	0.9	0.5	0.8	1.07	0.4
M8	PHA	26.51	67.09	16.38	14.9	17.2	28.2	18.95	20.6	28.61	13.6
	TT	1.20	10.78	0.20	1.6	0.62	0.8	1.2	0.9	1.11	2.1
	Tat	1.12	0.00	0.21	1.03	0.57	0.6	0.5	0.9	1.04	1

<sup>a</sup> Peripheral blood lymphocytes were isolated, activated with PHA (4 µg/ml), the tetanus toxoid (TT) (10 µg/ml) and Tat (5 µg/ml) and assayed as described in legend to Table 5. Monkeys M1-3 were inoculated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were inoculated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M7) and with Alum (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M8). ND, not done.

A strong cytotoxic T cell response (CTL) was detected in one monkey vaccinated with the Tat protein and RIBI (M1) and in two monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein and Alum (M4 and M5), whereas a weaker CTL response was observed in monkey M6 immunized with Tat and Alum (figure 9 and Table 12).

TABLE 12  
Analysis of CTL response

Monkey	Week	Target: Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Average	
M1	28	5.9	4.7	4.1	7.9	5.3	5.5	+
	36	ND	14.4	8.8	4.9	6.7	8.7	+
M2	28	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
	36	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M3	28	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	36	ND	0	0.6	0.5	2.0	0.7	-
M4	28	0	0	1.1	1.1	2.6	0.9	-
	36	ND	2.7	8.3	15	1.9	6.9	+
M5	28	4.9	3.9	4.7	5.5	1.7	4.1	+
	36	0	1	0	0	0	0.2	-
M6	28	0	2.6	1.1	7.2	7.2	3.6	+/-
	36	ND	0	0	0	0	0	-
M7	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
M8	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	-

<sup>a</sup> The assay was performed as described in Table 6. Monkeys M1-3 were

immunized with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) and Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). ND, not done.

At week 44, the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) was determined. TAA was measured as the ability of PBMC from monkeys vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein, cultured in the presence of autologous serum, to be resistant to SHIV 89.6P infection (Table 13).



TABLE 13

*Analysis of the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Days after infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M1	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M2	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M3	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M4	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M5	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M6	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M7	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M8	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were collected at week 44 from monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein (10 µg) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) and from control monkeys inoculated with RIBI (M7) or Alum (M8). PBMC, purified by Ficoll gradient and seeded in triplicate at 5 x 10<sup>5</sup>/200 µl per well in 48-well plates, were grown in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS and 5% of autologous plasma previously heated at 56°C for 30 min., in the presence of an anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody (5ng/ml) and IL-2 (2 U/ml), for 48-72 hours at 37°C. Cells were infected with serial dilutions of the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P (10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-5</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) for 2 hours at 37°C, washed 3 times with PBS-A and resuspended in 50% of conditioned medium and 50% of fresh medium at 5 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml/well. At days 3, 7, 10, 14 and 17 after infection, aliquots of culture medium were collected and substituted with equal volumes of fresh medium. Virus replication was determined in cell supernatants by p27 Gag ELISA (Coulter International, Miami, FL). The results are shown as the minimum infectious dose of SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) at days 7 and 17 after infection able to infect monkey lymphocytes.

The results demonstrate the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes (CAF) (Table 14). An overall increase of CAF activity was observed in vaccinated monkeys as compared to control animals.

TABLE 14

*Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Weeks after the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	0	8	30
	32	53	53
M2	0	36	0
	32	60	27
M3	0	0	37
	32	55	29
M4	0	45	0
	32	85	66
M5	0	41	0
	32	ND	ND
M6	0	49	18
	32	34	41.4
M7	0	39	39
	32	71	44
M8	0	37	0
	32	76	26.8

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) from monkeys vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein (10 µg) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6), and from control monkeys inoculated with RIBI (M7) or Alum (M8). Acute infection was tested on CEM x 174 cells infected with SHIV 89.6P. The assay was performed as described in Table 7 and the results refer to day 7 after infection. The presence of CAF on the chronic infection system was tested in the U1 cell line (Ref. 47), which is a promonocytic human cell line chronically infected by HIV-1. U1 cells, seeded at  $1 \times 10^4$  cells/200 µl per well in 96-well plates, were incubated with PMA ( $10^{-8}$  M) to induce reactivation of HIV-1 infection, with or without different volumes (50 µl, 5 µl, 0.5 µl) of culture supernatants from CD8+ T lymphocytes derived from vaccinated and control monkeys. Three days after PMA treatment, the presence of HIV-1 in the culture medium was determined by RT assay or p24 Gag ELISA. The results are shown as % of inhibition of HIV-1 replication in cells treated with CD8+ T cells supernatants compared to untreated cells. The results of inhibition of acute and chronic infection refer to cells treated with 5 µl of CD8+ supernatants.

The production of cytokines ( $\gamma$ IFN, IL-4,  $\text{TNF}\alpha$ ) and of the RANTES chemokine from PBMC of monkeys vaccinated with Tat and RIBI (M1-3) or Tat and Alum (M4-6) and control monkeys M7 and M8 was also determined (Table 15).

**TABLE 15**  
*Analysis of cytokine and chemokine production*

Monkey	Control				PHA				TT			
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES
M1	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	988/1096	-/-	948/-	1788/2564	-/-	-/3.8	-/-	Nd/Nd
M2	-/-	-/-	126/-	-/-	325/280	-/-	244/172	292/284	86/66	-/-	-/-	Nd/Nd
M3	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd
M4	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	426/66	-/-	98/-	-/284	-/-	-/-	-/224	Nd/Nd
M5	-/-	-/-	48/-	-/-	279/303	-/-	416/-	536/608	-/-	-/-	-/-	Nd/Nd
M6	-/-	-/-	-/-	246/-	255/137	-/-	-/-	1124/268	-/-	-/-	-/266	Nd/Nd
M7	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	150/169	-/-	40/-	1228/976	-/-	-/4	-/nd	Nd/Nd
M8	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	0/0	20/32	60/-	2160/1588	-/-	-/-	-/nd	Nd/Nd

Monkey	Tat (1 µg)				Tat (5 µg)			
	γIFN	IL-4	TNFα	RANTES	γIFN	IL-4	TNFα	RANTES
M1	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	16/-	-/-
M2	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
M3	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd
M4	-/-	-/-	378/430	-/-	-/-	-/-	344/352	-/-
M5	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
M6	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-78	-/-	150/-	-/-
M7	-40	-3.3	84/-	-/-	-/-	-3.2	-/-	-/-
M8	-/-	-4.8	-/-	-/-	-/-	-10	-/-	726/528

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the production of cytokines and chemokines after 48 and 96 hours of culture (48/96) from PBMC of monkeys vaccinated with 10 µg of Tat and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated with RIBI or Alum adjuvants, respectively. PBMC, withdrawn at week 44 and purified by Ficoll gradient, were seeded at  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml per well in 24-well plates and grown in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS. PBMC were unstimulated (control), to evaluate the spontaneous release of cytokines and chemokines, or stimulated with PHA (2 µg/ml), the tetanus toxoid (TT, 5 µg/ml) or Tat (1 or 5 µg/ml). Aliquots of culture supernatants were collected 48 and 96 hours following stimulation to determine the presence of cytokines and chemokines, by means of commercial ELISA kits from BioSource International (Camarillo, CA, USA) to assay cytokines production, and from R&D Systems (Abingdon, Oxon, UK) to evaluate RANTES production. The results are shown as pg/ml at 48 and 96 hours of culture (48/96), respectively. Cut-off values were (pg/ml):  $\gamma$ IFN, 31.2; IL-4, 3.12; TNF $\alpha$ , 15.6; RANTES, 6.25. (-), values were lower than corresponding cut-off values. Nd: not done.

Moreover, at week 15 five monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant protein (M2-6), showed a positive reaction to the skin test to Tat, with a strong delayed hypersensitivity reaction (Table 16 and figure 19). In monkeys 4 and 5 the skin test reaction was even stronger in the following weeks (Table 16).

TABLE 16

*Skin-test to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization						
	11	15	21	28	32	36	44
M1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M2	-	+	+	+/-	+/-	+	+/-
M3	+/-	+	+/-	+/-	-	-	-
M4	-	+	++	++	++	++	++
M5	+/-	+	++	+	++	++	+
M6	-	+	+/-	+/-	-	-	-
M7	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M8	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µl of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone were inoculated by the intradermal route in a shaved area of the back of vaccinated monkeys. Control animals were not inoculated (ND, not done) at weeks 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36 and 44 after the first immunization. Monkeys M1-3 were vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous and 250 µl of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M7) or Alum (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M8). The presence of an erythematous nodule after 48-72 hours was suggestive of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction (DTH): ++, Ø ≥ 5 mm; +, Ø ≥ 1-4 mm; +/-, erythema without hardening; -, Ø < 1 mm.

The post-challenge results indicate that 4/6 (67%) vaccinated monkeys were protected against infection with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P, as shown by the results of the virological assays (Table 17). Particularly, p27 Gag antigen was not detected in plasma of monkeys M1, M2, M4 and M6, proviral DNA was not found by PCR in lymphocytes from these monkeys and cytoviremia was negative. Monkeys M3 and M5 were infected as shown by the presence of p27 Gag antigen in the plasma, by detection of proviral DNA in the cells and by a positive cytoviremia (Table 17). Both controls (M7 and M8) resulted infected, based on the same virological assays. To further control the infectivity of the viral dose used for the challenge, another naive monkey (M13) was added to the control animals and infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P (corresponding to a dose of virus 3.5-fold lower than the dose used for the challenge of the animals in the protocol). Monkey

M13 resulted to be infected based on all the virological assays. To confirm that the animals were exposed to the virus, the presence of antibodies against SIV antigens, encoded by the chimeric SHIV 89.6P virus (Gag, Pol, RT, Nef), was analyzed as already described in this Example. The presence of anti-SIV antibodies in the monkeys that were negative for the virological parameters (M1, M2, M4 and M6) confirm that these animals were exposed to the virus and indicates that an abortive infection of SHIV had occurred in these monkeys. Monkeys that showed low anti-SIV antibody titers were studied for in vitro production of specific antiviral IgG (IVAP) (Ref. 177, 178) according to the following method. PBMC ( $2 \times 10^6$ /well) were seeded in 24-well plates and stimulated with PWM (2  $\mu$ g/ml, Sigma, St. Louis, USA). Following 7 days incubation (at 37°C in the presence of 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and 95% humidity) culture supernatants were collected to assay for anti-HIV antibody production by an Elisa commercial kit for the detection of HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibodies (Abbott, HIV-1/HIV-2 EIA Third Generation Plus). All challenged monkeys resulted positive for the production of anti-HIV Env antibodies, since HIV-1 Env is present in the SHIV 89.6P.





Analysis of the virological parameters after challenge of monkeys vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated with RIBI or Alum, respectively. Monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P.

5   <sup>a</sup>The plasma antigenemia was evaluated by p27 Gag ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and it is expressed as p27 values (pg/ml). Neg, the value was lower than the corresponding cut-off value (18 pg/ml).

<sup>b</sup>DNA was purified by whole blood using the QIAamp blood kit (Angiogen GmbH and Qiagen Inc., Hilden, Germany). The quality of the DNA was controlled by PCR

10   amplification of the β-globin gene, as previously described (Ref. 141). The presence of proviral DNA was analyzed by semiquantitative PCR amplification of SIV gag. PCR was performed on 1 µg of cellular DNA using primers SG1096Ngag (corresponding at nucleotides 1096-1119 on SIVmac251 genome:

15   5'TTAGGCTACGACCCGGCGGAAAGA3') and SG1592CgagD (mapping at nucleotides 1569-1592 of SIVmac251 genome:

5'ATAGGGGGGTGCAGCCTTCTGACAG3') which amplify a 496 base pair fragment of the SHIV gag gene, as described (Ref.153). To quantify the number of copies of proviral DNA, in each experiment a standard curve was prepared using

20   the plasmid pCMRII-Δgag (containing a 100 base pair deletion in the gag gene of SIVmac251) as a template DNA and the primers described above that amplify a 396 base pair DNA fragment. PCR products were analyzed by electrophoresis and quantified by densitometric analysis (Ultrascan LX Enhancer Laser, LKB, Bromma, Sweden). The relationship between the OD values and the number of

molecules of the Δgag plasmid was correlated by means of linear regression

25   analysis (Statgraphics, Manugistics, Inc. Cambridge, MA). The OD values were linear up to 1000 molecules (coefficient of correlation = 0.954± 0.026). The

number of copies of SHIV proviral DNA/µg of cellular DNA was determined interpolating the OD values of each sample to the standard curve. The sensitivity of the assay was 1 copy of provirus/µg of DNA.

<sup>c</sup>Cytoviremia was determined in co-cultivation assays. To this aim  $1 \times 10^4$  CEM x 174 cells were cultivated in the presence of serial dilutions of CD-8 depleted PBMC under study (a total of 12 dilutions, from  $1 \times 10^6$  to  $3.9 \times 10^3$  cells per well) in 96-well plates. At days 3, 7 and 10 after infection, 150  $\mu$ l were removed to assay the presence of p27 Gag by ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium. The results were analyzed by means of the Reed and Muench formula to determine the number of productively infected PBMC per million of total cells.

<sup>d</sup>The presence of antibodies against SHIV was determined on serial dilutions of animal plasma tested in duplicate using the Elavia Ac-Ab-Ak II kit (Diagnostic Pasteur, Paris, France), according to the manufacturer's instructions. The highest dilution at which plasma values were higher than the cut-off value is shown.

<sup>e</sup>Virus isolation was performed, instead of cytoviremia, for monkey M13. To this aim PBMC ( $3 \times 10^6$ ) from monkeys infected with different doses of SHIV 89.6P, purified by Ficoll, were cultivated with CEM x 174 cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ) in 1 ml of medium containing 10% FCS. After 24 hours, cells were diluted at  $1 \times 10^6$ /ml and cultivated for three days. Two ml of medium were then collected and cells were re-seeded at  $3 \times 10^5$ /ml in 7 ml. The excess of cells was discarded. This procedure was repeated twice a week for 4 weeks. The presence of virus was determined by p27 Gag ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and then by RT assay. Virus isolation was considered positive (+) when both assays (p27 and RT) were positive in 3 sequential samples.

Conversely, virus isolation was considered negative (-).

<sup>f</sup>A qualitative DNA-PCR was performed for monkey M13.

The virological data overlap the absolute number of CD4 lymphocytes that resulted dramatically reduced in infected monkeys (M3, M5, M7, M8) and high and stable in the virus-negative animals (M1, M2, M4, M6) as shown in Table 18.

TABLE 18  
FACS analysis of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes\*

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P											
	0			15			30			60		
	%			%			%			%		
	(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)		
	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+
M1	32.1 (1490)	53 (2460)	0.6	ND	ND	ND	30.8 (2420)	57.3 (4500)	0.54	30.6 (2460)	57.9 (4670)	0.53
M2	27.7 (1550)	45.3 (2530)	0.6	ND	ND	ND	35.5 (2120)	43.7 (2610)	0.81	29.6 (2000)	42.4 (2870)	0.7
M3	33 (1120)	39.3 (1340)	0.84	ND	ND	ND	3.1 (190)	75.6 (4660)	0.04	6.2 (240)	70 (2750)	0.09
M4	16.6 (670)	68.3 (2740)	0.24	ND	ND	ND	17.25 (2050)	68.7 (8180)	0.25	15.5 (1520)	75 (7350)	0.21
M5	36.3 (2770)	43.9 (3350)	0.83	ND	ND	ND	1.1 (90)	82.3 (1300)	0.01	4.1 (480)	75.5 (8730)	0.05
M6	35.3 (1210)	43.4 (1490)	0.81	ND	ND	ND	35.9 (1240)	45.5 (1570)	0.79	37.8 (3700)	43.7 (4280)	0.86
M7	36.1 (1610)	31.3 (1400)	1.15	ND	ND	ND	7.4 (480)	66.1 (4260)	0.11	13.7 (860)	56.7 (3550)	0.24
M8	25.7 (850)	51.3 (1710)	0.5	ND	ND	ND	3.3 (210)	76.2 (4840)	0.04	8.1 (590)	64.9 (4670)	0.13
M13	40.5 (2590)	39.7 (2544)	1.01	38.4 (434)	33.6 (380)	1.14	35.1 (1721)	32.2 (1479)	1.16	3.1 (111)	62.3 (2225)	0.05

<sup>a</sup>FACS analysis of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes from monkeys vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated only with RIBI or Alum adjuvants, respectively. Monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P. Analysis was performed by fluorescence-activated-cell-sorter (FACS) as described (Ref. 137), using labeled-monoclonal antibodies (anti-CD4-FITC, BioSource; anti-CD8-PerCp, Becton-Dickinson). ND, not done.

The results before the challenge indicate that Tat as the immunogen, as well as RIBI and Alum as the adjuvants (or ISCOM that was used as adjuvant in the last boost), were well tolerated by the animals and were non-toxic, confirming the results of safety and tolerability of the immunization with Tat obtained in the first pilot experiment. Moreover, these data confirm the observations of the first pilot experiment, supporting additional evidence to the fact that the recombinant Tat protein elicits a strong humoral and cellular response specific to Tat with antiviral effects *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The post-challenge results (4/6 protected monkeys) confirm the expectation of the *in vitro* results and indicate that an anti-Tat vaccine induces protection against infection and therefore against the disease. The follow-up of the two vaccinated and infected monkeys will clarify the effects of the vaccination on disease progression.

**Example 5. Inoculation in *Macaca fascicularis* of an anti-Tat DNA vaccine: analysis of safety, tolerability, specific immune response and efficacy of protection against viral challenge.**

It is proposed the direct inoculation of DNA of the plasmid pCV-Tat, containing the cDNA of the *tat* gene, and of the plasmid pCV0 as control DNA. Plasmid DNAs to be administered to animals are amplified in *E. Coli* (strain DH5) according to standard procedures (Ref. 110) and to protocols established by the "European Agency for the evaluation of medical products; Human Medicine Evaluation Unit" (Technical Report Series No. 17 January 1997), purified by two CsCl gradients and dialyzed for 48-72 hours against 100 volumes of PBS. DNA are then checked by restriction enzyme digestion. The functionality of the plasmid DNA is controlled by transfection of 5-10 µg of DNA using calcium-phosphate techniques (Ref. 110)

in H3T1 cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ), which contain an integrated copy of the reporter plasmid HIV-1 LTR-CAT, and, 48 hours later, by the analysis of CAT activity (Ref. 55). The tolerability, the safety, the ability to elicit a specific immune response (both humoral and cellular) and the efficacy of protection against the virus challenge following immunization with pCV-Tat plasmid DNA were evaluated in cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*). In a first-pilot experiment, three monkeys were immunized according to the following schedule: monkey M1 was inoculated with 200  $\mu\text{g}$  of pCV-Tat in 300  $\mu\text{l}$  of PBS by the i.d. route in 2 sites of the back, near the axillary lymph nodes (150  $\mu\text{l}/\text{site}$ ); monkey M2 was inoculated with 500  $\mu\text{g}$  of pCV-Tat in 500  $\mu\text{l}$  of PBS by the i.m. route in 2 sites of the back (250  $\mu\text{l}/\text{site}$ ). At days 1 or 5 before the i.m. inoculation, 250  $\mu\text{l}$  of physiological solution, containing 0.5% bupivacaine and 0.1% methylparaben, were injected in the two sites, previously marked, where plasmid DNA had to be inoculated. This was performed in order to increase the uptake and expression of DNA in the muscle (Ref. 37, 45). Monkey M3 was not inoculated and was used as a control animal. However, starting from week 10, this monkey was inoculated with 6  $\mu\text{g}$  ( $5 + 1 \mu\text{g}$ ) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from all monkeys 42 and 35 days preceding the first inoculation for analysis of basal parameters. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Finally, at week 42, animals received the last boost with recombinant Tat protein (16  $\mu\text{g}$ ) in 200  $\mu\text{l}$  of ISCOM and 300  $\mu\text{l}$  of PBS. Animals were observed daily for clinical parameters as described in Example 4. Moreover, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn the same day of inoculation as described in Example 4. The protective effect of vaccination was determined after challenge of the monkeys with 10  $\text{MID}_{50}$  of SHIV89.6P, that was injected by the intravenous route at week 65. The post-challenge follow up, still ongoing, was performed as described in Example 4. The results of this experiment are as follows. In two vaccinated monkeys and in the control monkey no alterations of clinical, haematological and behavioristic parameters were observed. Inflammatory signs or neovascularization in the site of injection were not observed. These results indicate that the pCV-Tat DNA was well tolerated by the animals and was non-toxic at the doses and inoculation

routes used in the experiment. Monkey M1, vaccinated with 200 µg of DNA by the i.d. route, developed Tat-specific IgG antibodies since week 32 (Figure 11). The antibody titers (from week 32 to week 58) ranged between 1:100 and 1:800 (Figure 12). At week 37, epitope mapping analysis (performed as described in legend to Figure 4) showed that these antibodies were directed against specific regions of Tat, mapping at aa 1-20, aa 46-60 and aa 65-80, with titers of 1:200, 1:100 and 1:50, respectively (data not shown). In monkey M2, vaccinated with 500 µg of DNA by the i.m. route, anti-Tat antibodies were barely detected (with a 1:50 titer, not shown) for the entire period of the study. The results are shown in Figure 11. The ability of plasma from monkey M1, vaccinated with 200 µg of DNA by the i.d. route, to neutralize Tat activity, was tested by assaying the inhibition of the rescue of viral replication in HLM1 cells incubated with exogenous Tat protein, as described in Example 4. This assay showed that the plasma of monkey M1, diluted 1:2, and obtained at week 37, reduced viral replication induced by 30 ng/ml of exogenous Tat. Conversely, the plasma of the same monkey obtained at time 0 (preimmune) did not block extracellular Tat (Table 19).

TABLE 19

*Neutralizing activity of plasma on rescue of viral infection induced by extracellular Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition
Tat + M1 preimmune	0
Tat + M1 immune	51

<sup>a</sup> The ability of anti-Tat antibodies to neutralize Tat activity was determined in HLM1 cells by adding 30 ng/ml of recombinant Tat protein, previously incubated with an equal volume of plasma obtained at time 0 (preimmune) or at week 37 (immune) from monkey M1, vaccinated with 200 µg of pCV-Tat plasmid DNA by the i.d. route. The assay was performed and the results expressed as described in Table 4.

The results shown in Table 20 demonstrate the presence of a proliferative response to Tat at week 42 in monkey M1 immunized with 200 µg of DNA by the i.d., whereas in monkey M2 this type of cellular response was not detected.

TABLE 20

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks after the primary immunization							
		15	22	27	32	37	42	48	58
M1	PHA	32,9	45	89,3	40,5	3,1	13,3	ND	13,1
	TT	0,8	2,7	1,5	1,3	0,6	9	1,2	1,6
	Tat	0,9	1,7	1,2	1,1	1,1	5,9	1	1
M2	PHA	11,7	18,5	21,8	32,2	1,1	6,2	7	18,9
	TT	0,9	1,8	0,8	1,1	1	1,5	1,1	1
	Tat	0,8	1,4	0,9	1,1	1,1	1,3	1,1	1
M3	PHA	5,1	19,9	18,2	6,6	8,1	77,8	ND	2,1
	TT	7,2	6,2	5,5	2,8	5,6	36,8	1	2,1
	Tat	2,1	1,4	2,2	0,7	1,5	2,8	0,8	0,9

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were isolated, stimulated with PHA (4 µg/ml), tetanus toxoid (TT) and Tat (1 or 5 µg/ml) and tested as described in Table 5. Monkeys were vaccinated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not vaccinated but was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. ND: not done.

The anti-Tat cytotoxic activity (CTL) was detected in monkey M1 at week 42 and 48 and in monkey M2 at week 48. Furthermore, a positive CTL response was observed at week 48 in monkey M3 which was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg of Tat as a control for skin tests (Table 21).

TABLE 21

*Analysis of Tat-specific cytotoxic activity (CTL)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M1	42	27,4	27,8	17,1	9,8	3,9	17,2	+
	48	ND	ND	21,3	0	11,7	11	+
M2	42	1,2	5,9	2,4	1	0	2,1	-
	48	ND	ND	ND	57	25,1	41	+
M3	42	0	0	0	1,2	0	0,6	-
	48	ND	12,4	4,2	0	0	0	+

<sup>a</sup> The assay was carried as described in Table 6. Monkeys were vaccinated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not vaccinated but was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. ND: not done.

The results shown in Table 22 indicate at week 52 the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) in both monkeys vaccinated with 200 and 500 µg of DNA.

TABLE 22

*Analysis of total antiviral activity (TAA) <sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Days post infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M1	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M2	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M3	10 <sup>-8</sup>	10 <sup>-8</sup>

- <sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 13. Monkeys were inoculated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not inoculated but since week 10 received 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. PBMC were collected at week 52 from the primary immunization and were infected with SHIV 89.6P (10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-6</sup>, 10<sup>-8</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) The results are represented as the minimum infectious dose of SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) that was still able to infect the cells.

The results shown in Table 23 indicate the presence of soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes, at week 22 and 27, in both vaccinated monkeys. This activity was lower in the control monkey.

TABLE 23

*Analysis of the CD8+ cell mediated soluble antiviral activity (CAF) <sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Weeks from primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	22	62	27
	27	56	25
M2	22	74	ND
	27	28	ND
M3	22	24	ND
	27	37	22

- <sup>a</sup> Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity produced by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) derived from monkeys inoculated with 200 µg (M1) and 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat and from the monkey M3. The antiviral activity was assayed on acute and chronic infection in CEM x 174 cells infected with SHIV 89.6P and in



OM-10-1 cells chronically infected with HIV-1, as described in Table 7. The results are represented as the percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication in cells treated with supernatants from CD8+ T lymphocytes compared to untreated cells. The results of the acute and chronic infection shown in the table refer to samples  
5 treated with 5  $\mu$ l of CD8+ culture supernatants. ND, not done.

The results shown in Table 24 demonstrate that monkey M1, inoculated with 200  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.d. route, had a positive skin test to Tat at week 22.

TABLE 24  
Skin test to Tat <sup>a</sup>

Weeks post immunization	Monkey		
	M1	M2	M3
10	--	--	--
15	--	-	-
22	+	--	-
27	--	--	-
32	-	--	-
37	-	-	-
42	-	--	-
48	--	--	--
52	--	--	-
58	--	--	--

- <sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µL of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone (control) were inoculated i.d. in a previously thrichotomized area of the upper back of the vaccinated animals and in the control monkey (control for the specificity of the response) at weeks 10, 15, 22, 27, 32, 37, 42, 48, 52, and 58 from the primary immunization. The monkey M1 was inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of DNA of the plasmid pCV-Tat, whereas the macaque M2 received 500 µg of the same plasmid, i.m.. Monkey M3 (control) was not vaccinated but since week 10 received 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. The appearance of an erythematous nodule, 48 to 72 hours later, indicated the presence of delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH): ++,  $\phi \geq 5$  mm; +  $\phi$  1-4 mm;  $\pm$ , erythema without hardening; -,  $\phi < 1$  mm.
- These results indicate that the plasmid pCVTat (pCVTat-DNA) was well tolerated and safe both intradermally and intramuscularly at the given doses. Moreover, these results demonstrate that the immunization with the pCVTat-DNA induces both a humoral (although lower than that induced by the immunization with the recombinant Tat protein) and cellular anti-Tat immune response with antiviral effects. Concerning the protective efficacy after challenge (performed at week 65 from the initial immunization), the virological data, including measurements of antigenemia and cytoviremia, and determination of number of proviral DNA copies (DNA-PCR) in PBMCs, indicate

that the monkey M2, immunized i.m. with Tat-DNA, resulted protected upon challenge with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV-89.6P, whereas the macaque M1, immunized i.d. with a smaller dose of Tat-DNA (200 µg) resulted infected, suggesting that, in regard to the immunization with DNA, the i.m. route is more effective than the i.d. inoculation. The control monkey M3 also resulted resistant to the infection. However, as previously described, this monkey, unlike the controls of the other experimental protocols, received repeated skin tests for Tat in order to control the test specificity (Table 24), and anti-Tat antibodies, although at low titers (1:100), were detected since week 32 from the beginning of the immunization (data not shown). Moreover, the proliferative response to Tat in this monkey showed a weak and sporadic reactivity to the antigen (Table 20). Finally, monkey M3 showed the presence of specific anti-Tat CTLs (Table 21). Although preliminary, these data indicate that the repeated i.d. injection of 6 µg of Tat could have resulted in the immunization of the animal and in the protection from challenge. Thus, the monkey M3 will be considered vaccinated i.d. with the Tat protein and studied as such.



The FACS evaluation of the percentage and of the absolute number of the CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes confirmed the virological data, with a clear reduction (of approximately 4 folds) of the CD4 lymphocytes in the infected monkey, already  
s at the first post-challenge analysis (day 30) and confirmed later on (day 60) (Table 26).



Based on these results a second experiment was designed in which the effects of the immunization with the pCVTat-DNA were evaluated in 3 monkeys (M9-M11) as compared to the control monkey (M12) that received the pCV0-DNA. All animals were inoculated i.m. in 2 sites on the back with a total of 1mg of pCVTat (M9-M11) or of pCV0 (M12). Either 1 or 5 days before the vaccination, 250  $\mu$ l of saline solution containing 0.5% of bupivacaine and 0.1% of methylparaben were inoculated into the two marked sites in which successively the plasmid would have been injected. The macaques were vaccinated at time 0 and at week 6, 11, 15, 21, 28, and 32. A final booster was performed at week 36 with the recombinant Tat protein (16  $\mu$ g) resuspended in 200  $\mu$ l of ISCOM and 300  $\mu$ l of PBS. The animals were controlled every day for clinical parameters as described in the Example 4. Moreover, 10 ml of blood were drawn 9 days before the primary immunization and at every immunization, as described in the Example 4. In order to evaluate the protective effects of the vaccination, the monkeys were challenged at week 50 from the beginning of the immunization by intravenous (i.v.) injection of 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV-89.6P. The post-challenge follow-up is still ongoing and is performed as described in the Example 4.

The results of this experiment are the following. No modifications in terms of behavior, clinical parameters, and blood chemistry were noted both in the vaccinated and in the control animals. No signs of inflammation or vascular neo-formations were detected at the injection sites. These results confirm that 1 mg of the plasmid pCVTat DNA, injected i.m., was well tolerated and non-toxic. Anti-Tat IgG were detected since week 15 (figure 13), with titers ranging from 1:50 to 1:100 (data not shown). Moreover, a proliferative response to Tat was detected as early as week 2 in one monkey (M11) (table 27).

TABLE 27

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from primary immunization										
		2	6	11	15	21	28	32	36	40	44	50
M9	PHA	8.9	9.2	17.1	58.2	18	47.1	43.4	3.1	72.6	64.6	7
	TT	2.9	1.7	0.9	1	1.8	0.7	1.1	0.8	1	7	2.7
	Tat	0.4	0.5	0.6	1.5	1.6	0.9	1	0.7	1.1	7	1.9
M10	PHA	8.5	18	19.8	ND	10.1	2.2	14.7	15.2	4.4	8.4	ND
	TT	2.4	0.3	0.8	ND	1.1	0.6	1	0.9	0.6	6.4	ND
	Tat	1	0.3	0.7	ND	1.1	0.5	1	0.9	0.7	4.2	ND
M11	PHA	25.7	43.3		12.1	27.8	3.4	21.3	14.1	15.9	25.8	ND
	TT	4.2	1.9	1.3	0.9	1.1	3.6	1.2	0.8	0.3	1.8	ND
	Tat	5.1	0.8	1.6	0.7	1.1	1.1	1.2	0.7	0.7	3	ND
M12	PHA	28.7	30.9	41	50.7	30.8	7.6	43	22.6	34.6	19.9	55.1
	TT	3.2	1.6	0.9	5.2	1.6	1.6	1.3	1.1	1	0.7	3.1
	Tat	3.2	1.4	0.8	1.3	1	1.6	1	0.8	1	1.6	1.3

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were isolated, stimulated with PHA (4 µg/mL), or tetanus toxoid (TT, 10 µg/mL), or Tat (1 and 5 µg/mL) and assayed as described in table 5. The monkeys were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). ND, not determined.

Anti-Tat CTLs were detected at week 32 post-immunization (Table 28).

10 TABLE 28

*Analysis of the anti-Tat cytotoxic activity (CTLs)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL Activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M9	32	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	50	4,2	0	0	0	0,9	1	-
M10	32	0	0	9,9	2,7	0	2,5	-
	50	3,5	0	2,3	0	0	1,1	-
M11	32	0	10,5	8,9	3,5	0,9	4,7	+
	50	0	0	0	3,8	0,3	0,8	-
M12	32	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	50	0	0	0	0	0	0	-



<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 6. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control).

PBMCs obtained from the monkey M11 at week 44 resulted resistant to in vitro infection with serial dilutions of the chimeric SHIV-89.6P virus by an assay described previously that detects the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA). In fact, TAA is evaluated as the capability of PBMCs from monkeys vaccinated with pCVTat-DNA, grown in the presence of autologous serum, to resist to the infection with serial virus dilutions. (Table 29)

TABLE 29

Analysis of the total antiviral activity (TAA)

Monkey	Days post infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M9	10 <sup>-2</sup>	>10 <sup>-2</sup> **
M10	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M11	>10 <sup>-2</sup> *	>10 <sup>-2</sup> *
M12	10 <sup>-2</sup>	>10 <sup>-2</sup> **

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 13. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). PBMCs were withdrawn at week 44 from the first immunization and infected in vitro with 10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-5</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub> of the SHIV-89.6P. The results are expressed as the minimum infectious dose of the SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) still able to infect the cells.

\*No culture resulted infected at the highest SHIV concentration used in the assay (10<sup>-2</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell). \*\*The cultures became negative on day 17 post-infection.

The results shown in table 30 demonstrate the presence of the soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by the CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes in the vaccinated monkeys and in the control monkey (M12) injected with the empty vector (pCV0).

TABLE 30

Analysis of the soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by the CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) <sup>a</sup>

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M9	0	21	14.6
	36	77	2.6
M10	0	40	13.8
	36	67	25
M11	0	49	19
	36	42	14
M12	0	65	23
	36	62	14

<sup>a</sup>Analysis of the presence of the soluble antiviral activity mediated by the CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF). PBMCs were obtained from the three monkeys (M9-M11) injected with 1 mg of pCVTat and from the control monkey (M12) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV0. The acute infection assay was carried out in CEMx174 cells infected with the SHIV-89.6P, as described in Table 14. The chronic infection assay was carried out in U1 cells chronically infected with the HIV-1, as described in Table 14. The results are expressed as the percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication in cells cultured in the presence or in the absence (control) of 5  $\mu$ L of supernatants from CD8+ T cells.

The production of cytokines ( $\gamma$ IFN, IL-4, TNF $\alpha$ ) and of the chemokine RANTES was evaluated at week 44 in PBMCs from both the vaccinated and control monkeys (Table 31).

TABLE 31

Analysis of the production of cytokines and of RANTES a

Monkey	Control					PHA					TT			
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES
M9	-/-	-/3.5	-/-	-/-		312/204	-/-	250/-	536/2288		-/-	-/-	-/-	nd/nd
M10	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd
M11	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		420/183	-/-	388/-	4336/3124		-/-	-/-	-/nd	nd/nd
M12	-/-	-/3.2	-/-	-/-		430/932	-/-	-/-	1936/2576		-/-	-/-	218/nd	nd/nd

Monkey	Tat (1 $\mu$ g)					Tat (5 $\mu$ g)					Tat (5 $\mu$ g)			
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES
M9	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
M10	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd
M11	-/-	-/4	-/-	544/368		-/-	-/3.5	-/-	-/3.5		-/-	-/-	-/-	2124/-
M12	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 15. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). PBMCs were withdrawn at week 44 after the first immunization. Results are shown as pg/ml of cytokines and RANTES detected at 48 and 96 hours (48/96) respectively.

5 (-), the values were below the cut-off value. The cut-off values (pg/ml) were:  $\gamma$ IFN: 31.2; IL-4: 3.12; TNF- $\alpha$ : 15.6; RANTES: 62.5. ND: not done.

The results show the presence of a weak reactivity to the skin tests with Tat in one monkey (M9) at week 11 (Table 32)

TABLE 32

Skin test to Tat <sup>a</sup>

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization						
	11	15	21	28	32	36	44
M9	+/-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M12	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µL of PBS-A, 0.1% BSA or the buffer alone (control) were inoculated i.d. in a previously thrichotomized area of the upper back of the vaccinated animals but not in the control monkeys at weeks 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36, and 44 from the initial immunization. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The appearance, 48 to 72 hours later, of an erythematous nodule indicated the presence of delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH): ++,  $\phi \geq 5$  mm; +  $\phi$  1-4 mm; ±, erythema without hardening; -,  $\phi < 1$  mm.

The post-challenge results indicate that all the vaccinated animals were protected from the infection with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of the SHIV-89.6P, as indicated by the virological tests (plasma antigenemia, determination of the proviral DNA copy number, cytoviremia) that were all negative (Table 33). Moreover, the presence of anti-SIV antibodies in the monkey M11 indicated the exposure to the virus or an abortive infection. On the contrary, they were not detected in the remaining monkeys, therefore we decided to carry out the *in vitro* antibody production assay (IVAP) as well as the lymphoproliferative response to SIV antigens. These assays are ongoing and preliminary data indicate the presence of anti-HIV Env antibodies in all the DNA-inoculated monkeys. The macaques will be inoculated with a higher dose of the virus, since even the control animal M12 resulted resistant to infection. This monkey had been vaccinated with the empty vector pCV0. Recent data from the literature have demonstrated the adjuvant role played by certain DNA sequences that are much more frequent in bacteria than in eukariotic cells, and that, similarly to LPS and mannose, represent a strong stimulus for the natural

immunity (Ref. 179). Thus, it is conceivable that the protection observed in the monkey M12 may be due to the induction of a non-specific antiviral immunity by these bacterial sequences, such as the production of IFN $\alpha$ , IFN $\beta$ , IL-12, and IL-18, known to exert immuno modulant and antiviral functions. This is strongly suggested by the presence in this macaque of TAA (Table 29) and CAF (Table 30) antiviral activities in the absence of anti-Tat specific humoral and cellular immunity. In fact, these assays also measure non-antigen specific antiviral activities. The naive monkey M13, inoculated with a 3.5 fold lower virus dose than that injected in the macaque M12, resulted infected. These results confirm that 10 MID<sub>50</sub> challenge dose with which M12 monkey was inoculated were infectious (Table 33). On the basis of this result the inventor plans to utilize the pCV0 vector or parts of it as an adjuvant.

TABLE 33

### Analysis of the virological parameters

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P virus											
	15				30				60			
	p27 <sup>a</sup> (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg) <sup>b</sup>	cytoviremia <sup>a</sup>	Anti-SIV IgG <sup>d</sup>	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg)	cytoviremia	Anti-SIV IgG	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg)	Cytoviremia	Anti-SIV IgG
M9	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M10	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M11	<20	<1	Neg	1:2	<20	<1	Neg	1:2	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M12	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M13	1876	+f	+e	ND	<20	+f	ND	1:1600	<20	43	ND	1:3200

a,b,c,d The assays were performed as described in Table 17. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV89.6P. \*Viral isolation was performed in place of cytoviremia and resulted positive.

[DNA PCR was not quantitative and resulted positive.

FACS analysis of the CD4 and CD8 (Table 34) subsets confirmed the virological data.

In fact, a significant decline of the percentage and absolute number of the CD4 lymphocytes was observed at 15 and 60 days post-challenge only for the  
5 naive monkey M13, resulted infected as indicated by the positiveness of plasma antigenemia, proviral DNA, and virus isolation. (Table 33).



TABLE 34

FACS analysis of CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes.

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P											
	0				15				30			
	% (cells/ $\mu$ l)				% (cells/ $\mu$ l)				% (cells/ $\mu$ l)			
	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+		CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+		CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+	
M9	21.5 (1500)	37.6 (2630)	0.57	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	26.4 (1340)	51.6 (2610)	0.51	30.6 (2000)
M10	39.5 (1050)	36.3 (960)	1.1	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	34.8 (1730)	41.8 (2080)	0.83	31.6 (3760)
M11	35.8 (1080)	37.7 (1140)	0.95	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	28.7 (1330)	36.7 (1710)	0.78	24.5 (890)
M12	30.9 (1860)	46 (2760)	0.67	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	26.7 (1300)	49.6 (2420)	0.54	23.7 (2620)
M13	40.5 (2590)	39.7 (2544)	1.01	ND	38.4 (434)	33.6 (380)	1.14	1.16	35.1 (1721)	32.2 (1479)	1.16	3.1 (111)
												52.1 (5760)
												62.3 (2225)
												0.45
												0.05

aThe assay was performed as described in Table 18. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV89.6P.

These results demonstrate that the vaccination with the pCVTat plasmid was well tolerated and non-toxic and confirm those on the safety and tolerability of the DNA vaccination, obtained in the first pilot study. In addition, these data provide evidence that the pCVTat-DNA plasmid induces a specific humoral (although  
5 weaker than that induced by the Tat protein) and cellular immune response with antiviral effects, part of which may be due to particular DNA sequences present in the pCV0 vector that could function as adjuvants.

Immunization protocols that will include combinations of the DNA coding for other HIV-1 and cytokines genes described in the Example 3 will be evaluated. In these  
10 experiments SHIV containing the tat, rev, and nef genes of HIV will be used (Ref. 146, 85, 142, 65, 94, 129).

The pCV0 and pCVTat plasmids will be inoculated in the animals utilizing other delivery systems that may improve the immunization effectiveness, such as liposomes, nanoparticles, erythrocytes, gene gun delivery, or Tat DNA will be  
15 delivered through the utilization of herpes vectors as described in the prophetic Examples 9 and 10.

#### **Example 6. Therapeutic vaccine.**

A protocol of vaccination, based both on Tat-protein and Tat DNA, was made to evaluate the safety and toxicity of anti-Tat vaccine in already infected individuals.  
20 The experiment was performed on monkeys infected with decreasing doses of SHIV89.6P and with immunodeficiency disease (AIDS). The viral stock used for the infection was obtained from spleen and lymph nodes of a cynomolgus monkey infected 14 days before. Lymphocytes, purified by mechanical separation, were divided into two aliquots ( $1.5 \times 10^6$  cells/ml each). One aliquot was depleted of  
25 CD8+ T-cells by using immuno-magnetic beads (Dynal, Norway). Both cultures were stimulated with PHA ( $1 \mu\text{g/ml}$ ) for three days and seeded at the concentration of  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml in presence of 50U/ml of IL-2. Viral replication was detected by the presence of reverse transcriptase (RT) in the culture medium harvested after three days. Before testing, the supernatant was clarified and  
30 ultracentrifuged at 100,000 rpm, for 11 minutes at  $+4^\circ\text{C}$  (Beckman TL-100 ultracentrifuge) and pellet was lysed. Thirty  $\mu\text{l}$  of the suspension were added to

the reaction mix (TRIS HCl 1M, pH 8; MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.5 M; KCl, 1M; Poly A 1mg/ml; oligo-dT 12-18 100 µg/ml; DTT 0.02 M; 1,2 <sup>3</sup>[H]-Methyl thymidine tri-phosphate 1mCi/ml) and incubated at 37°C for 60 minutes. The reaction was stopped by adding 500 µl of Na Pyrophosphate 0.1 M pH5 and 600 µl of tri-chlor-acetic acid (TCA).20% and the sample was spotted on a 0.45 µm filter (Millipore) and then read with a β-counter after the addition of 5 ml of scintillation cocktail (Filter Count, Packard).

Culture media containing more than 20,000 cpm were centrifuged and supplemented with 10% human serum AB. The virus was concentrated by ultra-centrifugation at 30,000 rpm (90 minutes at 4°C), resuspended in RPMI 1640 containing 10% of human serum (AB group) and then stored in small aliquots in liquid nitrogen. The viral stock was titred in vitro on the human cell lines CEMx174 and C8166 (3 x 10<sup>3</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell), and in vivo on cynomolgus monkeys (3.17 x 10<sup>5.69</sup> MID<sub>50</sub>/ml).

A first pilot experiment has been performed on 7 monkeys infected i.v. with SHIV89.6P prepared as described above. Each monkey received 1 ml of SHIV diluted in saline buffer supplemented with 2% of human serum (AB, Rh-) according to the following protocol. One monkey (IM1) was inoculated with 1:500 of viral dilution; two monkeys (IM2, IM3) received the dilution 1:5,000; two monkeys (IM4, IM5) were inoculated with 1:50,000; the monkey IM6 received the 1:500,000 dilution; the last monkey (IM7) received 1:5,000,000 dilution. Each monkey was bleed at day 7 before infection with SHIV for determination of the basal parameters. Serum and plasma samples were frozen at -20°C or -80°C and then used to re-suspend the protein inoculum. At time 0 all monkeys were inoculated with SHIV89.6P. Monkeys were checked daily. Moreover, at day 0 and after 2 and 4 weeks they were bled and 10 ml of blood were used for hemato-chemical determinations ( chemical-clinical analysis, electrolytes, white cells and platelets counts, hemoglobin) and virological and immunological analysis (i.e. plasma p27 Ag determination and viral load in plasma and cells). At week 4 post-infection, 6 monkeys (IM1-6) were infected. The monkey IM7, which received the lowest viral dilution (1:5,000,000) was SHIV-negative (Table 35).

TABLE 35

Detection of the presence of SHIV89.6P in monkeys infected with serial viral dilutions

Monkey	SHIV 89.6P dilution	Weeks post infection					
		0		2		4	
		Viral isolation <sup>a</sup>	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>	Viral isolation	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>	Viral isolation	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>
IM1	1:500	ND	ND	+	>450	+	.47
IM2	1:5.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	161.8
IM3	1:5.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	6.67
IM4	1:50.000	ND	ND	+	<20	+	>450
IM5	1:50.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	166.7
IM6	1:500.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	0
IM7	1:5.000.000	ND	ND	-	0	-	0

<sup>a</sup>Virus isolation and <sup>b</sup> plasma p27 Ag (pg/ml) were carried out as described in the legend to table 17. Monkeys were inoculated i.v. with serial dilutions of the virus stock, as described in text.

After 7 weeks from infection, all the animals showing serious immunodeficiency symptoms were vaccinated with both the Tat protein and DNA of the plasmid pCVTat according to the following protocol. Monkeys IM1, IM3, IM5 and IM6 received the Tat protein (20µg), dissolved in 250 µl of PBS-A supplemented with 0.1% BSA and 20% of autologous plasma and then added to 250µl of Alum adjuvant. The protein inoculum was performed sub-cutaneously on a single site of monkey's upper back, whether the plasmid pCVTat (1 mg), resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A, was injected i.m. in a different site in the back. Monkeys IM2 and IM4 (controls) were injected with 250 µl of Alum and 250 µl of PBS-A, 0.1% BSA 20% autologous plasma, s.c., in a site of the upper back and with pCV-0 (1 mg) resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A, i.m., in a site in the upper back different from the previous one. The uninfected monkey IM7 was not vaccinated. The schedule of vaccination consisted of a time 0, corresponding to 7 weeks after SHIV infection, and 1, 4, 5, 10, 11, 13, 14, 17, 18 weeks on. To evaluate the effects of this vaccination on disease progression, each macaque was daily checked for the presence or signs of disease and at time 0 and after 3, 8, 12, 16 and 21 weeks, 10

ml of blood were withdrawn for laboratory tests (chemical-clinical analysis, electrolytes, white cells and platelets counts, hemoglobin), for the evaluation of immunological status (presence of specific immunoglobulins, measure of Th1 and Th2 cytokines, chemokines production), for characterization of lymphocytes by FACS analysis (CD4, CD8, CD28, CD40, CD86, CD20, CD2, CD26 and CD20), and finally for evaluation of virological parameters (proviral DNA detection by semi-quantitative PCR, plasma viral load by competitive RT-PCR, plasma p27 Gag antigen by ELISA and presence of anti-SHIV Ab, as described previously). Other boosts will be made on the basis of the immunological, virological and clinical results.

After the last inoculum, monitoring will be scheduled monthly and at the appearance of clinical modifications. PBMC, sera, plasma and urine samples will be frozen at every time point for future tests as previously described.

The results already available from this experiment, obtained at week 8 after immunization, are described. In both the vaccinated asymptomatic and control monkeys no signs of inflammation and neo-angiogenesis in the inoculation sites or general symptoms of disease were observed. No modifications of the clinical status were evident in the monkeys already symptomatic. Moreover, no activation of viral replication was detected. Taken together these results indicate the absence of toxicity or increased viral replication in the monkeys vaccinated with a biologically active Tat protein or DNA (Table 36).

TABLE 36

*Analysis of virological parameters*

Monkey	Weeks from the beginning of vaccination					
	0		3		8	
	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR copies/ $\mu$ g	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR Copies/ $\mu$ g	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR Copies/ $\mu$ g
IM1	12.3	68	17.3	52	141	41
IM3	0	61	0	48	0	71
IM5	97.1	20	21.7	15	23.6	95
IM6	0	43	0	55	0	24
IM2	21.2	ND	36.6	53	27.4	78
IM4	81	195	22	288	15.4	135
IM7	ND	ND	ND	ND	0	>1

The tests were performed as described in Table 17. Monkeys IM1, IM3, IM5 and IM6 were injected with Tat protein (20 $\mu$ g) and Alum adjuvant s.c. and with pCVTat (1mg) i.m.. Monkeys IM2 and IM4 (infected controls) were injected with Alum adjuvant s.c. and pCVO (1mg) i.m.. IM7 was an uninfected naive monkey.

FACS analyses indicate that no modifications were observed in CD4+ and CD8+ T-lymphocytes after vaccination (Table 37).



These data confirm that both Tat protein and pCVTat plasmid, at the used doses and inoculation routes, were well tolerated and without any toxic effect in the vaccinated monkeys and, moreover, they did not increase viral replication nor the CD4 T cell decline in infected animals.

5 **Example 7. Co-stimulation of purified CD4+ lymphocytes from SIV-infected monkeys, with anti-CD3/28 coated beads results in a logarithmic expansion of the cell number without significant viral replication and transmission.**

Peripheral blood mononuclear cells were depleted of CD8+ cell-population by using anti-CD8 immuno-magnetic beads (DynaI, Oslo; Dynabeads M-450 CD8).

- 10 The purification degree was evaluated by FACS analysis and considered as acceptable if higher than 95%. The CD8-depleted cells (named CD8<sup>-</sup>PBMC) were grown in the presence of PHA (2µg/ml) and IL-2 (40U/ml) or immuno-magnetic beads previously coated with two monoclonal antibodies against the CD3 (Clone FN18, BioSource) and the CD28 (Clone 9.3) antigens (anti-CD3/28 beads). To
- 15 improve the binding of anti-CD3/28 beads with target cells, the incubation was performed on a rotating wheel disposal. Then, the bound cells (named CD8-CD3+CD28+) were selected with a magnet and seeded in culture. Three times a week, cell concentrations were adjusted to the starting level and IL-2 was added where indicated; moreover, regarding the cells stimulated with anti-CD3/28 beads,
- 20 preliminary results suggest that the continuous stimulation regimen coupled with a constant control of the bead:cell ratio, adjusted at every time point, is highly effective in the induction of the proliferative response. Our previous studies have shown that in the absence of exogenous IL-2, the CD8-CD3+CD28+ cell population proliferates better than CD8-PBMC stimulated with anti-CD3/28 beads.
- 25 Moreover, the addition of exogenous IL-2 (40U/ml, three times per week) significantly increases the kinetic of proliferation both in terms of number of cells and duration of effect (Figure 14).

To evaluate the antiviral activity of this stimulation, CD8-CD3+CD28+ purified cells from 4 uninfected monkeys were infected at day 0 with 0.1 M.O.I. of SIV and then

30 cultivated under continuous stimulation. CD8-PBMC stimulated with PHA and IL-2 were the control of the experiment. Viral infection was followed through detection



of p27 Gag antigen in culture supernatant by a commercial ELISA (Coulter, Hialeah, FL). The p27 Gag antigen levels (ng/ml) were measured on day 6 and 12 after infection. As shown in figure 15, there is a significant difference in the infection in the two stimulation regimens. In fact, at day 6 after infection, the p27 antigen in the CD3/28 beads-stimulated cultures was 40% to 87% lower than cultures stimulated with PHA plus IL-2, and at day 12 this difference was increased in 2 out of 4 monkeys. This suggests a reduction of viral infection susceptibility. In only one case (MK 9401) we observed a viral propagation in both stimulation regimens.

The results here described demonstrate that *Macaca fascicularis* is a good model for the ex vivo expansion of lymphocyte sub-population by anti-CD3/28 beads co-stimulation, without viral replication. This represents the rationale for the therapeutic vaccine we propose, based on expansion and re-infusion of autologous anti-viral specific lymphocytes, in HIV-infected individuals.

**Example 8. Use of dendritic cells for vaccination.**

The dendritic cells (DC) and macrophages, in a lesser extent, are able to efficaciously present antigens to the T lymphocytes and induce, in this cell subset, proliferation or acquisition of specific cytotoxic activities. These cells are named "antigen presenting cells"(APCs) and can start the immune response. Thus, DC may be utilized in *ex vivo* immunization protocols. For this reason, DC precursors were isolated from peripheral blood of *Macaca fascicularis* by culturing in vitro adherent cells after seven days of GM-CSF and IL-2 stimulation. Alternatively, CD34+ cells were purified with immuno-magnetic beads and then cultured in vitro with GM-CSF and TNF- $\alpha$  for 14 days. To confirm that DC were isolated, morphologic analysis and phenotypic characterization (FACS analysis and immuno-histochemistry) were performed. Functional analysis was based on the unique capability of DC to induce proliferation of allogeneic lymphocytes.

The results obtained fully confirm the effectiveness of the purification and the functional characterization of DC. In details, to isolate DC precursors, PBMCs, obtained by Ficoll density gradient centrifugation, were again stratified on Percoll discontinuous gradient (50% and 42.5%). The cellular fraction that, after

centrifugation at 500 g for 30 min, was between the two gradients was mainly constituted of monocytes (as confirmed by FACS analysis, data not shown). These cells were kept at 4°C to avoid cell adhesion to the plastic tubes, then collected, washed, counted and seeded in culture at 37°C. The day after, non adherent cells were washed away with 4 gentle washings. To induce differentiation into DC, a complete medium supplemented with GM-CSF (200 ng/ml, Leucomax, Sandoz, Milan, Italy) and IL-4 (200 U/ml, Pepro tech, London, England) was added to adherent cells. As control, a complete medium without cytokines was added to induce the normal differentiation of monocytes in the macrophage lineage. Twice a week, half of the supernatant was replaced with fresh medium identical as that one utilized at day 0. The maturation of DC in the wells treated with cytokines was detected by typical morphological changes, like clustering, loss of adherence and development of cellular offshoots. The monocyte/macrophages adherent cells grown without cytokines were detached by EDTA treatment (0.5 mM in PBS-A), washed twice, counted and resuspended in fresh medium at different concentrations depending on the experiment performed. For the allogeneic mixed leukocyte reactions (AMLR), the obtained APCs (DC or macrophages) were tested with a fixed amount of allogeneic T lymphocytes, purified by Ficoll and Percoll gradients and adhesion, and then frozen. The AMLR was performed in 48-well plates with  $0.5 \times 10^6$  T lymphocytes and serial dilutions of APCs. At day 4 of culture, a fixed amount of the cell suspension was seeded in a 96-well plate in triplicate. One  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine was added to each well and the plate was then incubated at 37°C for 16 hours. At the end of incubation, the amount of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine incorporated by the cells was measured with a  $\beta$ -counter and expressed as counts per minute (cpm). Results indicate that the DC obtained are potent APC as demonstrated by the higher induction of proliferation in allogeneic human lymphocytes compared to the macrophages stimulation, and by the capability to induce T lymphocyte proliferation in monkeys at all the concentrations used (Figure 16B).

For the use in vaccination, DC will be resuspended at the concentration of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/100  $\mu\text{l}$  in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 5% of autologous serum, 10 mM of

Hepes buffer, 100 U/ml of penicillin-streptomycin, 0.5 mg/ml of amphotericin B and 0.03% of glutamine, and then incubated for 2 hours at 37°C in presence of Tat protein or Tat-peptides or combination of Tat, Rev, Nef, Gag and/or cytokines. Then, this treated DC will be inoculated twice or more within 2-4 weeks from first injection, intravenously. Alternatively, DC will be transduced with *tat*-gene-containing vectors alone or associated with other vectors mentioned above and then injected intravenously.

#### **Prophetic example 9**

The described immunogens will be utilized in order to induce and/or potentiate a specific immune response at the mucosa level. One of the approaches is based on the use bacteria (*S. Gordonii* and *Lactobacillus*) "engineered" to express the viral antigens mentioned above. These bacteria colonize the oral and vaginal mucosa of mice and induce a specific both local and systemic antibody response against heterologous antigens expressed on surface of recombinant bacteria (Ref. 116, 104, 106, 121, 117, 139, 105, 107). These bacteria can work as live vectors of vaccines and take the advantage to cause a prolonged stimulation of the immune system. Moreover, we will evaluate the possibility to co-express, on the bacterial surface, viral antigens and molecules involved in the immune response, such as the B sub-unit of the temperature-sensitive toxin of *E. Coli* or cytokines.

The preparation of the recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* will be carried out as previously described (Ref. 116). Briefly, (i) chromosomal integration of recombinant DNA molecules; (ii) transcriptional fusions with strong chromosomal promoters; (iii) transcriptional fusions with the gene coding for the protein M6, a surface protein of Streptococcus. The recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* will be utilized to colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys. It has been demonstrated that the recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* which express the V3 region of gp120 of HIV-1 and the E7 protein of HPV-16, permanently colonize the vaginal mucosa of the mouse after a single inoculum, inducing an antigen-specific antibody response both local and systemic. The systemic response is in prevalence composed of IgG2a antibodies, which suggests a Th1-type response (Ref. 105, 106). We will select human vaginal strains of *Lactobacillus*, which are able to

colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys. Thereafter, an already developed genetic system will be utilized, which permits the expression of heterologous antigens on the surface of *Lactobacillus* (Rush, 1997). This strategy is based on: (i) cloning of genetic fusions (*emm6*/heterologous gene) into insertion vectors which carry homologies with the conjugative transposon Tn916; (ii) transformation of the vectors in bacterial strains which work as intermediate host (*Bacillus Subtilis*); (iii) conjugative mobilization of the recombinant transposons from *B.subtilis* to *Lactobacillus*. The recombinant strains of *Lactobacillus* will be utilized to colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys.

Vaginal samples will be obtained utilizing special absorbent filters (Ref. 38, 105, 106). Colonization will be evaluated by plating the vaginal samples on selective plates and expression of HIV antigens in vivo will be monitored by immunofluorescence on vaginal swaps (Ref: 105). By using already standardized methods (Ref. 38), the vaginal swaps will be utilized for i) Papanicolau test, in the case of vaginal vaccination; ii) presence of vaccine antigens in the cells; iii) phenotypic characterization of cells by cytofluorometric analysis (CD1, CD2, CD4, CD5, CD8, CD11c, CD14, CD20, CD28, CD40, CD25, HLA-DR); iv) evaluation of cytokine production (IL-2, IFN $\gamma$ , TNF $\alpha$ , IL-4, IL-10, IL-15, semi-quantitative RT-PCR), determination of the presence of cytokines and  $\beta$ -chemokines in the mucosal fluids, by Elisa assays; v) dosage of total and specific immunoglobulins (IgA and IgG) in the mucosal fluid by Elisa [Di Fabio et al., Vaccine 15: 1 (1997)]. One month after the last inoculum of the immunogen, the monkeys will be infected intravenously or through the mucosal route with the SHIV 89.6P. The follow-up of the monkeys will be carried out as described in the Example 4. Blood samples will be obtained in order to execute the routine laboratory exams, the evaluation of immunological parameters, both humoral and cellular, as described in the Example 4. The inventor believes that this method can be utilized successfully to induce specific immunization in monkeys, using the vaginal route. Alternatively, the mucosal immunity can be induced by administering the protein immunogens, above described, directly through the mucosal route in the presence of adjuvants, such as the thermo sensitive toxin of *E. Coli* and the choleric toxin, or utilizing

other bacterial and non bacterial delivery systems, such as cytofectins and liposomes or through the inoculation by other routes which are able to induce the most efficient and protective immune response (Ref. 83, 81, 62).

Moreover, the inventor believes that recombinant herpes vectors, expressing the  
5 above described viral proteins, can be excellent systems to induce an effective mucosal immune response. Recombinant viral vectors from the herpes simplex type 1 virus (HSV-1) will be utilized to express viral proteins for the induction, of a systemic (through cutaneous immunization, i.d.) and mucosal (through the oral, vaginal or nasal route) responses. Non pathogenic, non replicative herpes vectors  
10 will be utilized (Ref. 99) for their ability to include large exogenous sequences, without interfering with the efficacy of the infection (Ref. 52, 64). Therefore, vectors able to contain more than one HIV gene (accessory, regulatory and structural) will be constructed. The mucosal immunity could be induced by an oral, vaginal or nasal vaccine. The herpes vectors can be used in these vaccinal  
15 approaches, since HSV-1 can be administered directly by the mucosal route (Ref. 176, 75). The recombinant viruses will be constructed utilizing a two-steps method which facilitates the insertion of exogenous sequences into the viral genome. The first step requires the insertion of an expression cassette with a reporter gene ( $\beta$ -galactosidase, LacZ) cloned in the restriction site PaeI, which is not present in the  
20 HSV-1 genome, flanked by the wanted target sequence of HSV-1, using the standard procedure for the homologous recombination, to interrupt the HSV-1 gene. The recombinant virus is selected by formation of plaques with a blue phenotype, using "x-gal staining". The digestion of viral DNA with PaeI releases the marker gene and generates two large fragments of viral DNA, not able to  
25 produce infectious viral particles. The second step consists of a co-transfection of the viral DNA, digested with the same plasmid used to create the deletion, where the reporter gene is substituted by the wanted gene. The recombinant viruses will be identified through the selection of plaques with a white phenotype after "x-gal staining". This recombination will lead to the elimination of PaeI sites allowing the  
30 use of this method to insert many genes in different loci of HSV-1 genome (Ref. 74). By crossing the different vectors containing the single genes, we might be

able to create all the different genetic combinations. The vector containing all the wanted genes will be isolated by screening with different markers, phenotypes and selective growth on competent cells. All the combinations will be created by alternating DNA transfections and viral recombinations.

- 5 Vectors expressing the single genes tat, rev, nef or gag, will be constructed utilizing, as basic vector, that one containing the mutations in the genes 4-/22-/27-/41, that is better for the low toxicity and the strong expression of the exogenous gene, compared to the other HSV-1 not replicative vectors. Constitutive promoters will be used, such as those from HCMV (human cytomegalovirus immediate early  
10 promoter), or as ICP0 lep (infected cell protein immediate early promoter) and the Moloney Murine Leukemia virus LTR, for inducing the expression of the genes above mentioned. Non replicative HSV-1 vectors expressing HIV-proteins in different combinations will be constructed. The production of these viruses containing more different genes will be obtained by a genetic crossing over of the  
15 vectors containing the single genes described in the previous point. Double, triple and quadruple vectors will be created. The vectors will be inoculated in the monkeys i.d. or through mucosal (oral, vaginal or nasal) route with particular attention to this last type of administration (Ref. 176, 101, 102). Vaccination schedule consists of multiple inocula at different time points, which must be  
20 determined in relation to immunogen or the combination of immunogens. During immunization the animals will be monitored for the evaluation of hematochemical and immunological parameters as described in the Example 4. With methods already standardized vaginal samples will be obtained, that will be studied as previously described in this Example.

25 **Prophetic example 10**

**Delivery systems**

Tat (protein and/or DNA) alone or in combination (as described above) will be inoculated using new delivery systems, such as erythrocytes or nanoparticles.

- The delivery system involving the use of erythrocytes is based on the possibility  
30 to deliver the antigen bound on autologous erythrocytes. In fact erythrocytes, at the end of their life span (around 120 days in humans), are removed from the

circulation by the macrophages, known to have the function of professional antigen presenting cells. This property can be used for vaccine strategies. Thus, antigens will be bound to the erythrocytes with a particular technique (Ref. 95, 96), that allows the preservation of the immunogenic properties of the antigen (Ref. 29,30). Through this procedure, biotinylation of erythrocytes can be performed in the absence of significative modification of their properties and life span (Ref. 95). Phagocytosis of old erythrocytes by macrophage cells will start an immune response. Antibodies opsonization of erythrocytes carrying the antigen will help antigen removal from circulation. The main advantages of this methodology are:

- 1) small quantity of antigen needed to induce a humoral and cellular immune response,
- 2) long lasting immunization due to the lasting presence of antigens carried by the erythrocytes in the periphery,
- 3) adjuvant functions provided by the system itself.

In fact, it has been shown in animal studies that the administration of antigens bound on the membrane of autologous erythrocytes induces a similar or higher immune response compared to the immune response obtained with the same antigen administered with Freund's adjuvant (Ref. 29). These properties are very useful to develop an anti-HIV vaccine, in particular when it is needed to increase the immunogenicity of the antigen and the antigen availability and when a low number of immunizations is required. In addition, this strategy can be used when no adjuvants are included in the vaccination protocol. In fact, it has been shown in the mouse model that antigens administered through autologous erythrocytes induce similar or higher immune responses compared to those obtained with the same antigen administered with Freund's adjuvant known as the most powerful adjuvant commercially available (Ref. 29), although not approved for human studies because of the important side effects. Thus, the adjuvant effect of erythrocytes carrying Tat protein, alone or in combination with other immunogens previously described, will be analyzed in non human primates. Comparison among these data and those obtained with the administration of Tat protein in the presence of Alum, RIBI or ISCOM will be performed.

The use of nanoparticles can represent an additional delivery strategy. Functional nanoparticles represent an important system for the transport and release of proteins and DNA (Ref. 27, 172). The nanospheres are colloid polymeric particles of different chemical composition, with a large range of diameter from 10 to 1000 nm. It is possible to adsorb different kind of substances on the surface or inside the nanospheres (oligonucleotides, drugs, proteins, peptides, DNA) that are then brought to the cytoplasm or to the nucleus of cells where they are slowly released. In addition, a small amount of the immunogen is needed to be delivered due to the characteristics of nanospheres. Nanoparticles are a good delivery system especially for molecules with low stability in the extracellular environment or when the delivery is directed to a specific target cell.

The inventor believes that nanospheres can be used to deliver the viral antigens above described. It is possible to prepare and characterize three types of nanospheres designed for the delivery and controlled release of DNA (nanospheres type 1 and 2) and proteins (nanospheres type 3).

For the DNA delivery, two types of nanospheres (nanospheres type 1 and 2) are available. The first type of nanospheres (nanospheres type 1) has a triple layers structure with an external layer of poly-oxy-ethylen-glicole (PEG). Recent reports based on stealth systems studies (Ref. 180, 78), show that PEG makes nanospheres invisible to Kupfer cells. In contrast, the more internal layer is made of monomers with tensioactive features containing quaternary ammonium groups that reversibly adsorb the DNA through a mechanism of ionic exchange and an internal core made of methyl-metacrylate as monomer. These nanospheres are obtained by polymerization in microemulsion involving the polymerization of a vinilic or vinilidenic monomer in the presence of a mix of tensioactive reagents. These reagents are thus able to polymerize the monomer. Of these, one has a quaternary ammonium group interacting with oligonucleotides and the other one has a long chain of PEG.

The second type of DNA delivery system is made of functional nano and microspheres (nanospheres type 2) with hydrogel characteristics. These nanospheres should be made in the presence of DNA to trap it inside the delivery



system. Nanospheres core-shell are needed to deliver proteins (nanospheres type 3). They are made by an internal core of poly-methyl-metacrylate and an external shell of hydrosoluble statistic copolymer of acrylic acid and methyl-metacrylate, known to have an high degree of affinity for proteins (Ref. 79, 80). This copolymer is commercially available (EUDRAGIT) and is obtained with different percentages of the two co-monomers. The preparation process leading to the manufacture of this second type of nanospheres involves the polymerization in dispersion. The synthesis involves the radical polymerization of a vinilic or vinilidenic monomer in the presence of EUDRAGIT having steric stabilizing functions. After nanospheres nucleation, the EUDRAGIT arranges outside the particles. Thus, modifying the concentration of the radical initiator, the ratio between the monomer and EUDRAGIT and the reaction time, numerous nanospheres samples are obtained with different morphologic and chemical characteristics.

Thus, it can be evaluated whether the delivery of Tat protein or Tat DNA by nanoparticles, alone or in combination with the immunogens mentioned above (either protein or DNA) will induce an immune response against HIV. In particular, the humoral or cellular-mediated immune responses will be evaluated and compared to those obtained with the not delivered immunogens in the monkey model.

The inventor believes that the information derived from these studies can be useful to develop an anti-HIV vaccine. In addition, the information derived from this experimental protocol will be transferred also to other vaccines studies, in particular to those studies dealing with low immunogenicity recombinant proteins or peptides. The possibility to develop a vaccine with only one administration will lead to enormous advantages in terms of efficacy of the vaccine and decrease of managing costs of vaccine programs.

References

1. Agostini et al., Blood 90:1115 (1997)
2. Albini et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:4838 (1995)
3. Allan et al., Science 230:813 (1985)
- 5 4. Antibodies - A laboratory manual, Eds. Harlow E., Lane D., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory (1988)
5. Arya et al., Science 229:69 (1985)
6. Aryoshi et al., AIDS 9:555 (1995)
7. Audibert et al., Immunol. Today 14:281 (1993)
- 10 8. Badolato et al., Blood 90:2804 (1997)
9. Barillari et al., J. Immunol. 149:3727 (1992)
10. Barillari et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:7941 (1993)
11. Barillari et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 149:3727 (1993)
12. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 160:27-34 (1993)
- 15 13. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 168:267-273 (1994)
14. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 193: 199-206 (1996)
15. Bohan et al., Gene Expr. 2:391 (1992)
16. Bourgault et al., J. Virol. 66:75 (1992)
17. Boyer et al., Nature Med. 3:526 (1997)
- 20 18. Bruisten et al., J. Infect. Dis. 166:620 (1992)
19. Buseyne et al., J. Virol. 67:694 (1993)
20. Butera et al., J. Virol. 65:4645 (1991)
21. Butera et al., J. Virol. 68:2726 (1994)
22. Cafaro et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 7:204 (1991)
- 25 23. Carrol et al, Science. 276: 273-276, (1997)
24. Carson et al., J. Clin. Invest. 99:937 (1997)
25. Chang et al., J. Biomed. Sci. 2:189 (1995)
26. Chang et al., AIDS 11: 1421 (1997)
27. Chavany et al., Phar. Res. 9: 441 (1994)
- 30 28. Chen et al., J. Immunol. 149:4060 (1992)
29. Chiarantini et al., Vaccine 15: 276 (1997)

30. Chiarantini et al., Clin. Diag. Lab. Immunol. 5: 235 (1998)
31. Chirmule et al., J. Virol. 69:492 (1995)
32. Choppin et al., J. Immunol. 147:569 (1991)
33. Corallini et al., Cancer Res. 53: 1 (1993)
- 5 34. Corallini et al., Cancer Res, 53: 5569 (1993)
35. Culman et al., J. Immunol. 146:1560 (1991)
36. Couillin et al., J. Exp. Med. 180:1129 (1994)
37. Danko et al., Vaccine 12:1499 (1994)
38. Di Fabio et al., Vaccine 15: 1 (1997)
- 10 39. Ensoli et al., IV International Conference on AIDS, Stockholm, 1:241 (1988)
40. Ensoli et al., Nature 345:84 (1990)
41. Ensoli et al., J. Virol. 67:277 (1993)
42. Ensoli et al., Nature 371:674 (1994)
43. Ensoli et al., AIDS Updates, Eds. V. De Vita, Jr., Hellman S., Rosenberg S.A.,  
15 Lippincott J.B., Philadelphia; 7: 1 (1994)
44. Felber et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:1495 (1989)
45. Fine et al., Ann. Plast. Surg. 20:6 (1988)
46. Fiorelli et al., J. Clin. Invest. 95:1723 (1995)
47. Folks et al., Science 238:800 (1987)
- 20 48. Franchini et al., Virology 155:593 (1986)
49. Frankel et al., Cell 55:1189 (1988)
50. Fugier-Vivier et al, J. Exp. Med. 186: 813 (1997)
51. Gait et al., Trends Biochem. Sci. 18:255 (1993)
52. Glorioso et al., Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 49:675 ( 1995)
- 25 53. Gobert et al., Virology 176:458 (1990)
54. Goletti et al., J. Virol. 69:2540 (1995)
55. Gorman et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 2:1044 (1982)
56. Grabstein et al., Science 264:965 (1994)
57. Grosjean et al, J. Exp. Med. 186: 801 (1997)
- 30 58. Guy et al., Nature 330:266 (1987)
59. Harrer et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 12:585 (1996)

60. Harrich et al., EMBO J. 16:6 (1997).
61. Hinkula et al., J. Virol. 71:5528 (1997)
62. Honenbang et al., Infect. Immun. 62:15 (1994)
63. Huang et al., EMBO J. 13:2886 (1994)
- 5 64. Huard et al. Gene Ther. 2:385 (1995)
65. Igarashi et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 10:1021 (1994)
66. Jonuleit et al., J. Immunol. 158:2610 (1997)
67. Jullien et al., J. Immunol. 158:800 (1997)
68. Kanai et al., J. Immunol. 157:3681 (1996)
- 10 69. Karlsson et al., J. Virol. 71:4218 (1997)
70. Kashanchi et al., J. Virol. 70:5503 (1996)
71. Kestler et al., Science 248:1109 (1991)
72. Kim et al., Oncogene 7: 1525 (1992)
73. Koup et al., J. Virol. 68:4650 (1994)
- 15 74. Krisky et al., Gene Ther. 4:1120 (1997)
75. Kuklin et al., J. Virol. 240:245 (1998)
76. Landes, Austin, p. 107 (1997)
77. Lanzavecchia, Science 260: 937 (1993)
78. Lasic et al., Chemical Reviews 95: 2601 (1995)
- 20 79. Laus et al., Polymer 37: 343 (1996)
80. Laus et al., Polymers for Adv. Techn. 7: 548 (1996)
81. Lehnen et al., Vaccine Research 1:319 (1992)
82. Levine et al., Science. 272: 1939-1943 (1996)
83. Lewis et al., Vaccine Press, Ed. Robinson, Farrar, Wiblin; Human Press,  
25 Totowa, New Jersey (1996)
84. Li et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 94:8116 (1997)
85. Li et al., J. AIDS 5:639 (1992)
86. Li et al., Science 268:229 (1995)
87. Li et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 94:8116 (1997)
- 30 88. Lippincott J.B., Stockholm, Sweden, May 31-June 3 (1997)
89. Littaua et al., J. Virol. 65:40 (1991)

- 90.Lövgren et al., Vaccine 14:753 (1996)
- 91.Lu et al., J. Virol. 70:3978 (1996)
- 92.Lubaki et al., J. Infect. Dis. 175:1360 (1997)
- 93.Lucey et al., Clin. Diagn. Lab. Immunol. 4:43 (1997)
- 5 94.Luciw et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 92:7490 (1995)
- 95.Magnani et al., Biotech. Appl. Biochem. 16: 188 (1992)
- 96.Magnani et al., Biotech. Appl. Biochem. 20: 335 (1994)
- 97.Malim et al., Nature 338:254 (1989)
- 98.Mann et al., EMBO J. 10:1733 (1991)
- 10 99.Marconi et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci 93:11319 (1996)
- 100.Marcuzzi et al., J. Virol. 66:4228 (1992)
- 101.McLean et al., J. Infect. Dis. 66:341 (1994)
- 102.McLean et al., Vaccine 14:987 (1996)
- 103.Mcfarland et al., J. Inf. Dis. 170:766 (1994)
- 15 104.Medaglini et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92: 6868 (1995)
- 105.Medaglini et al., Biotech. Annu. Rev. 3:297 (1997)
- 106.Medaglini et al., Vaccine 15:1330 (1997)
- 107.Medaglini et al., Am. J. Reprod. Immunol. 39:199 (1998)
- 108.Meyerhans et al., Cell 58:901 (1989)
- 20 109.Morein et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. S10:S109 (1994)
- 110.Molecular cloning – A laboratory manual; Eds. Maniatis T., Fritsch E.F., Sambrook J., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York (1992)
- 111.Myers et al., Human Retroviruses and AIDS: A compilation and analysis of  
25 nucleic acid and amino acid sequences, Los Alamos Laboratory, Los Alamos, NM p.1 (1993)
- 112.Myers et al., Human Retroviruses and AIDS. Theoretical Biology and Biophysics Group. Los Alamos, NH (1995)
- 113.Neuvel et al., J. Virol. 70:5572 (1996)
- 30 114.Nietfield et al., J. Immunol. 154:2189 (1995)
- 115.Nixon et al., Nature 336:484 (1988)

- 116.Oggioni et al., Vaccine 13:775 (1995)
- 117.Oggioni, et al., Gene 169:85 (1996)
- 118.O'Hagan et al., Novel Delivery Systems for Oral Vaccines, Eds. O'Hagan, D.T. CRC Press:Boca Raton, FL, p. 176 (1994)
- 5 119.Parslow, Human Retroviruses, Ed. B.R. Cullen, IRL press, Oxford, England, p. 101 (1993)
- 120.Pilkington et al., Mol. Immunol. 33:439 (1996)
- 121.Pozzi et al., in "Gram-positive bacteria as vaccine vehicles for mucosal immunization", eds. Pozzi G. & Wells, J.M. — Landes, Austin, p. 35 (1997)
- 10 122.Puri et al., Cancer Res., 52:3787 (1992)
- 123.Puri et al., AIDS Res. 11:31 (1995)
- 124.Quesada-Rolander et al., ABS 6-S1, 2nd European Conference on Experimental AIDS Research, Stockholm, Sweeden, May 31-June3 (1997)
- 125.Quinn et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 239:6 (1997)
- 15 126.Ratner et al., Nature 313:277 (1985)
- 127.Re et al., J. Acquir. Immun. Defic. Syndr. 10:408 (1995)
- 128.Reimann et al., J. Virol. 70:3189 (1996)
- 129.Reimann et al., J. Virol. 70:6922 (1996)
- 130.Reiss et al., J. Med Virol. 30:163 (1990)
- 20 131.Reiss et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 5:621 (1989)
- 132.Riley et al, J.Immunol. 158: 5545-5553, (1997)
- 133.Rinaldo et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 11:481 (1995)
- 134.Rinaldo et al., J. Virol., 69:5838 (1995)
- 135.Rodman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:7719 (1993)
- 25 136.Rodman et al., J. Exp. Med. 175:1247 (1992)
- 137.Rosenberg et al., Int. Immunol. 9 (5):703 (1997)
- 138.Rosenthal et al., Seminars in Immunology 9:303 (1997)
- 139.Rush, et al., in "Gram-positive bacteria as vaccine vehicles for mucosal immunization", eds. Pozzi G. & Wells, J.M. — Landes, Austin, p. 107 (1997)
- 30 140.Sadaie et al., New Biol. 2:479 (1990)
- 141.Saiki et al., Science 230:1350 (1985)

142. Sakuragi et al., J. Gen. Virol. 73:2983 (1992)
143. Salter et al., Immunogenetics 21:235 (1985)
144. Schnorr et al, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. 94: 5326 (1997)
145. Sharma et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Co. 208:704 (1995)
- 5 146. Shibata et al., J. Virol. 65:314 (1991)
147. Sipsas et al., J. Clin. Invest. 99:752 (1997)
148. Sodroski et al., Science 227:171, (1985)
149. Steinaa et al., Arch. Virol. 139:263 (1994)
150. Steinman R.M., Exp. Hematol. 24: 859 (1996)
- 10 151. Tahtinen et al., Virology 187:156 (1992)
152. Theoretical Biology and Biophysics, Los Alamos, NH, (1995)
153. Titti et al., Cell. Pharmacol. AIDS 3:123 (1996)
154. Trinchieri, Curr. Opin. Hematol. 4:59 (1997)
155. van Baalen et al., J. Gen. Virol., 77:1659 (1996)
- 15 156. van Baalen et al., J. Gen. Virol. 78:1913 (1997)
157. Vellutini et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 11:21 (1995)
158. Venet et al., J. Immunol. 148:2899 (1992)
159. Viscidi et al., Science 246:1606 (1989)
160. Vogel et al., Nature 335: 601 (1988)
- 20 161. Voss et al., Virology 208:770 (1995)
162. Wain-Hobson, Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev. 3:878 (1993)
163. Westendorp et al., J. Virol. 68:4177 (1994)
164. Westendorp et al., Nature 375:497 (1995)
165. Wolf et al., J. Immunol. 146:3074 (1991)
- 25 166. Yang et al., J. Virol. 70:4576 (1996)
167. Yang et al., J. Virol. 70:5799 (1996)
168. Yasutomi et al., J. Virol. 70:678 (1996)
169. Zauli et al., Blood 86:3823 (1995)
170. Zauli et al., Blood 80:3036 (1996)
- 30 171. Zauli et al., J. Immunol. 157:2216 (1996)
172. Zobel et al., Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Dev. 7: 483 (1997)

173. Gibellini et al., Blood 89:1654 (1997)
174. Bauer et al., J. Infect. Dis. 165:419 (1992)
175. Klein et al., J. Exp. Med. 181:1365 (1995)
176. Bowen et al., Res. Virol. 143:269 (1992)
- 5 177. Zamarchi et al., AIDS Res. Human Retrov. 9:1139 (1993)
178. Fiore et al., AIDS 5:1034 (1991)
179. Roman et al., Nature Med. 3:849 (1997)
180. Allen et al., Biochim. Biophys. Acta 1237:99 (1995)



**CLAIMS**

1. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA for use as a vaccine, said Tat, at picomolar to nanomolar concentrations being capable of: (i) entering and localizing in the nuclei of  
5 activated endothelial cells or dendritic cells; and/or (ii) activating the proliferation, migration and invasion of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) cells and cytokine-activated endothelial cells protein.
2. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or DNA Tat according to claim 1 further capable of: (iii) activating virus  
10 replication when added to infected cells as measured a) by the rescue of Tat-defective proviruses in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous protein; and/or b) by the transactivation of HIV-1 gene expression in cells transfected with a HIV-1 promoter-reporter plasmid.
3. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants  
15 and/or Tat DNA according to claim 2 further capable of: (iv) inducing in mice the development of KS-like lesions in the presence of angiogenic factors or inflammatory cytokines.
4. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA according to claims 1-3 at amounts ranging between 10  
20 ng/ml or less to 1 µg/ml.
5. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA according to claims 1-4 for use in the prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatment of AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms associated with HIV infection.
- 25 6. Protein or peptide or DNA vaccine, prophylactic and/or therapeutic, against AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms associated with the HIV infection, comprising biologically active Tat and/or its mutants and/or portion of the protein or peptides or a DNA as defined in claims 1-4.
7. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which Tat has the following nucleotide  
30 sequence (Seq.1):

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTC

AGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTG  
CCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAA  
GCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTT  
CTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCC  
5 GAAGGAATAG 3'

and any other Tat variant of any HIV type and subtype.

8. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which Tat has the following amino acid sequence :

NH2-EPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAISY  
10 GRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

and any other Tat variant of any HIV type and subtype.

9. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which mutants are selected among the ones having the following nucleotide sequences or part of them:

Nucleotide sequence of cys22 mutant (Seq.2)

15 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATT  
GCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG  
AAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAG  
TTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGG  
20 CCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of lys41 (Seq.3)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG  
25 GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
GCCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.4)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
30 CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG

GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
AATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq:5)

5 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
10 AATAG 3'

10.Vaccine according to claim 6 in which mutants are selected among the ones  
having the following amino acid sequence or part of them:

Amino acid sequence of cys22 mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
15 LGISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant

20 NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAL  
GISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

25 11.Vaccine according to claim 6 in which the Tat portions are selected among the  
peptide sequences

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

30 Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

12. Vaccine according to claims 6-11 comprising proteins or peptides conjugated with the T-helper universal epitope of Tetanus toxoid or any T-helper peptides.
- 5 13. Vaccine according to claims 6-12 in combination with recombinant proteins or peptides of HIV Nef, Rev or Gag or part of them.
14. Vaccine according to claim 6 comprising fusion proteins Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Nef, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Rev, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Gag or part of them.
- 10 15. Vaccine according to claim 6-14 in combination with recombinant immuno-modulant cytokines or other molecules, or part of them, augmenting antiviral immune response.
16. Vaccine according to claim 15 in which cytokines are IL-12 and/or IL-15 or IFN $\alpha$  or IFN $\beta$ .
- 15 17. Vaccine according to claim 6 comprising fusion proteins Tat(wild type or its mutants)/immuno-modulant cytokines, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/IL-12, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/IL-15, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/other molecules, or part of them, augmenting the antiviral immune response.
18. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 comprising DNA encoding for Tat wild-type or its mutants or part of them, inserted in expression vectors.
- 20 19. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 in combination with an expression vector including HIV rev, nef and gag genes, or part of them.
20. DNA vaccine according to claims 18 or 19 in which the vector is a plasmid co-expressing tat (wild-type or its mutants)/rev, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/nef, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/gag or part of them.
- 25 21. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 in combination with DNA molecules inserted in expression vectors encoding for immuno-modulant cytokines or other immuno-modulant molecules, or part of them, augmenting the antiviral immune response.
- 30 22. DNA vaccine according to claim 21 in which the cytokine is IL-12 and/or IL-15.
23. DNA vaccine according to claims 21 or 22 in which the vector is a plasmid co-

expressing tat (wild-type or its mutants)/IL-12, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/IL-15, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/other molecules, or part of them, able to augment the antiviral immune response.

24.Vaccine according to claims 18-23 in which the vector is pCV0.

5 25.Vaccine according to the previous claims including autologous dendritic cells treated and/or untreated according to the previous claims.

26.Vaccine according to the previous claims including adjuvants able to augment the antiviral immune response.

10 27.Vaccine according to claim 26 in which the adjuvant is selected among Alum, ISCOM, RIBI and related mixtures.

28.Vaccine according to previous claims comprising systems for delivery.

29.Vaccine according to claim 28 in which the systems for delivery are selected among nanoparticles, herpes vectors, red cells, bacteria and combinations thereof.

15 30.Vaccine according to claim 29 in which bacteria are selected among *Streptococcus gordonii* and *Lactobacillus*.

31.Vaccine according to claims 29 and 30 in which bacteria are modified to express viral antigens.

20 32.Vaccine according to the previous claims for the immunization of peripheral blood cells from infected individuals, expanded by co-stimulation with magnetic beads coated with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 antibodies.

33.Therapeutic vaccine according to the previous claims, combined with inhibitors of viral replication.

25 34.Vaccine according to claims 6-33 in which the active principle is delivered to the mucosa.

35. Vaccine according to claim 34, in which the active principle is administered nasally, orally, vaginally and/or rectally.

36.Vaccine according to claims 6-33 in which the active principle is administered through systemic or local route.

30 37.Vaccine according to claim 36 in which the active principle is administered through intramuscular, subcute or intradermal route.

38. Vaccine according to claim 37 in which the active principle is administered intradermally at 1-6  $\mu$ g amounts, without adjuvants.

39. Vaccine according to claims 34-38 in which the active principle is carried in a biologically acceptable fluid.

5 40. Vaccine according to claims 34-39 further comprising pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and excipients to maximize the principle activity.

41. Vaccine according to claims 34-40 comprising as active principle Tat according to claim 1 at preventive and/or therapeutic amounts.

42. Biologically active Tat nucleotide sequence (Seq. 1):

10 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
15 GCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

43. Biologically active Tat amino acid sequence

NH<sub>2</sub>-EPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAISY  
GRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

44. Biologically active Tat mutant protein having nucleotide sequence selected among:

20 Nucleotide sequence of the cys22 mutant (Seq.2)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATT  
GCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG  
25 AAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAG  
TTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGG  
CCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the lys41 mutant (Seq.3)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
30 CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA

GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
GCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.4)

5 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
10 AATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.5)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
15 GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
AATAG 3'

45. Biologically active Tat mutants amino acid sequence selected among:

Amino acid sequence of cys22 mutant

20 NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
LGISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41 mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

25 Amino acid sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant

30 NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

46. Biologically active Tat mutants with peptide sequence selected among :

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

5 Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

10 47. Expression vector comprising a DNA sequence selected among the ones listed in claims 42 and 44 or parts thereof.

48. Expression vector pCV0 including a DNA sequence selected among the ones listed in claims 42-44 or parts thereof.

15 49. Expression vector pCV0 according to claim 48, comprising a DNA sequence codifying for a gene selected among tat, rev, nef, gag, IL-12, IL-15 and combinations thereof.

50. Transformed cells including the vector according to claims 47-49.

51. Dendritic cells treated with Tat protein or its peptides or mutants according to claims 42-46 or combinations with Rev, Nef, and Gag proteins and/or cytokines.

20 52. Dendritic cells according to claim 51 transduced with an expression vector comprising tat gene.

53. Process for producing biologically active Tat protein or its mutants or its recombinant forms or parts of them comprising to cultivate the cells according to claim 50 and to isolate and purify the thus obtained protein or parts of it.

25 54. Process for preparing the pCV0 vector according to claim 49, in which the corresponding cDNA is amplified by PCR technique using primers selected among:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

30 Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'



Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTTCGAAA3'

5 Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA  
GGAAGAAGC3'

10 Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GCGAGAGCG3'

15 Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC  
CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT  
TTCGAAA3'

55. Primer selected among:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

20 Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

25 Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTTCGAAA3'

Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

30 Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA

GGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
5 GCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC  
CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT  
TTCGAAA3'.

10 56. Process for preparing a vaccine according to claims 6-41, wherein Tat is in its  
non oxidated form.

57. Process for preparing a vaccine according to claims 6-41, wherein Tat, in its  
lyophilized form, is re-suspended in a biologically acceptable fluid for  
administration.

15 58. Use of Tat protein wild-type in its active form and/or its mutants and/or parts  
related to the protein or peptides or the DNA encoding for these proteins or  
parts of them or peptides to make a protein or peptide or DNA vaccine,  
preventive and/or therapeutic, against AIDS, tumors, the syndromes and  
symptoms associated to HIV infection.

20 59. Use of Alum, ISCOM, RIBI and other adjuvants, alone or in combination, to  
make a vaccine according to claim 6.

60. Use of paramagnetic beads coated with monoclonal antibodies anti-CD3 and  
anti-CD28 to make a vaccine according to claim 6.

25 61. Therapeutic method for treating AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms  
associated with HIV infection characterized in that preventive or therapeutic  
amounts of biologically active Tat according to claims 1-5 are administered.

HIV-1 Tat, or derivatives thereof, alone or in combination, for prophylactic and therapeutic vaccination against AIDS, tumors and related syndromes

Abstract

The present invention refers to Tat as the active principle for a prophylactic and/or  
5 therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat is in biologically active form either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or  
10 in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-  
15 12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.

1/17

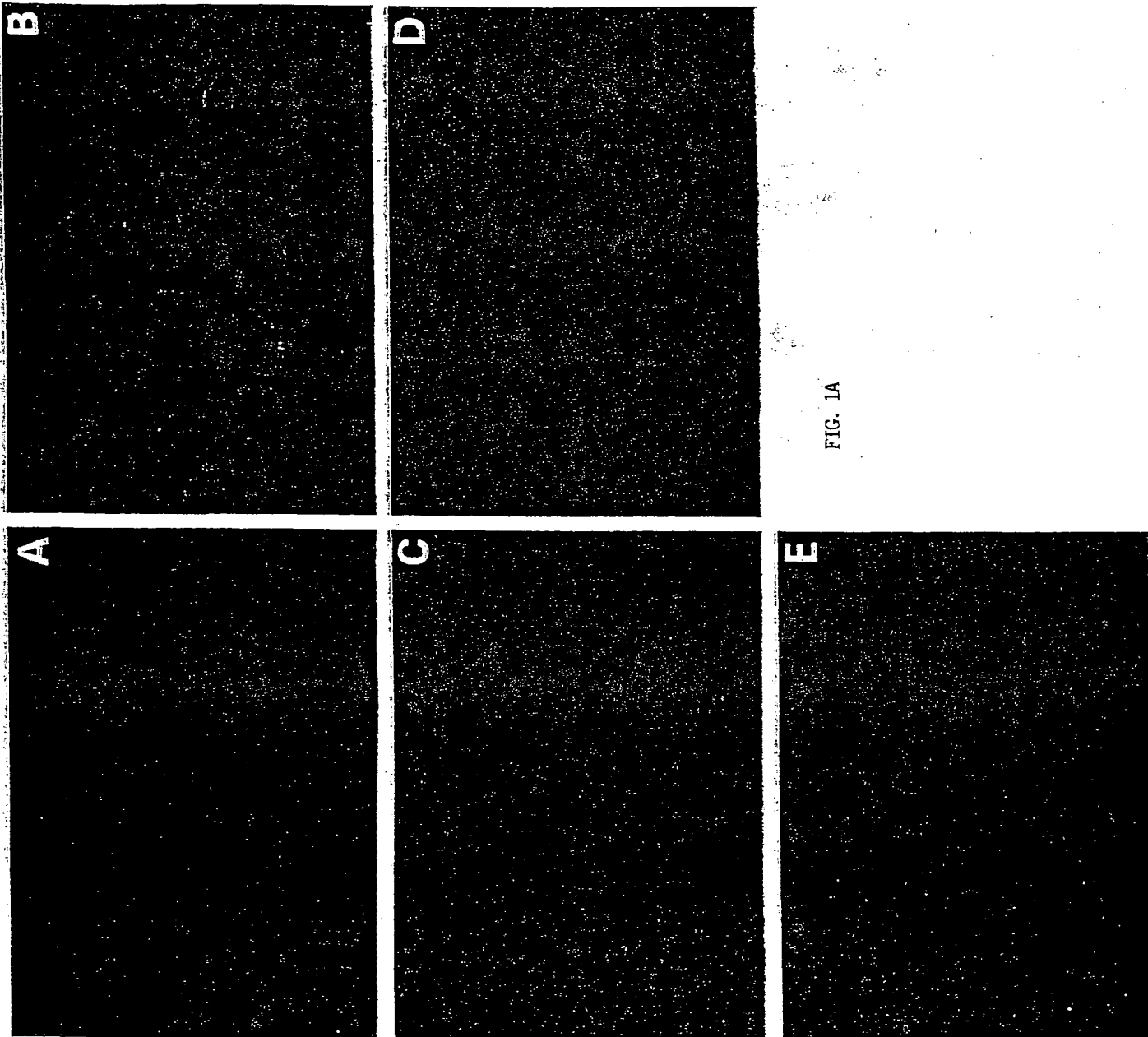


FIG. 1A

2/17

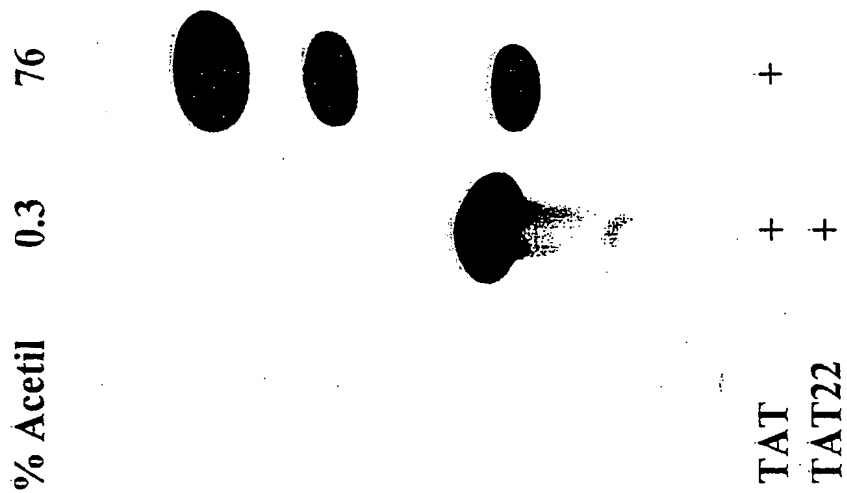


FIG. 1B

3/17

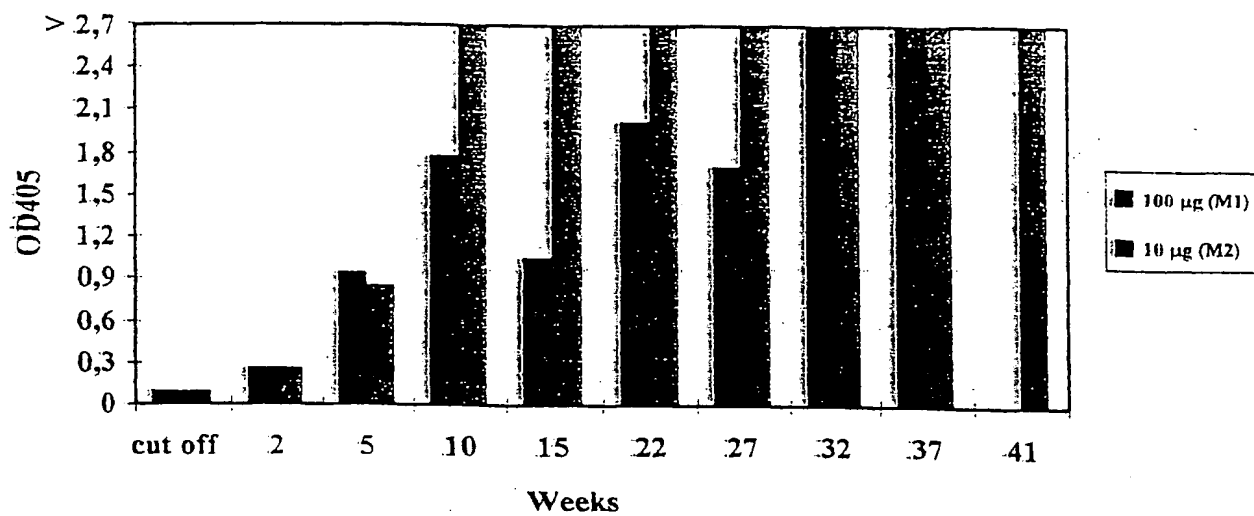
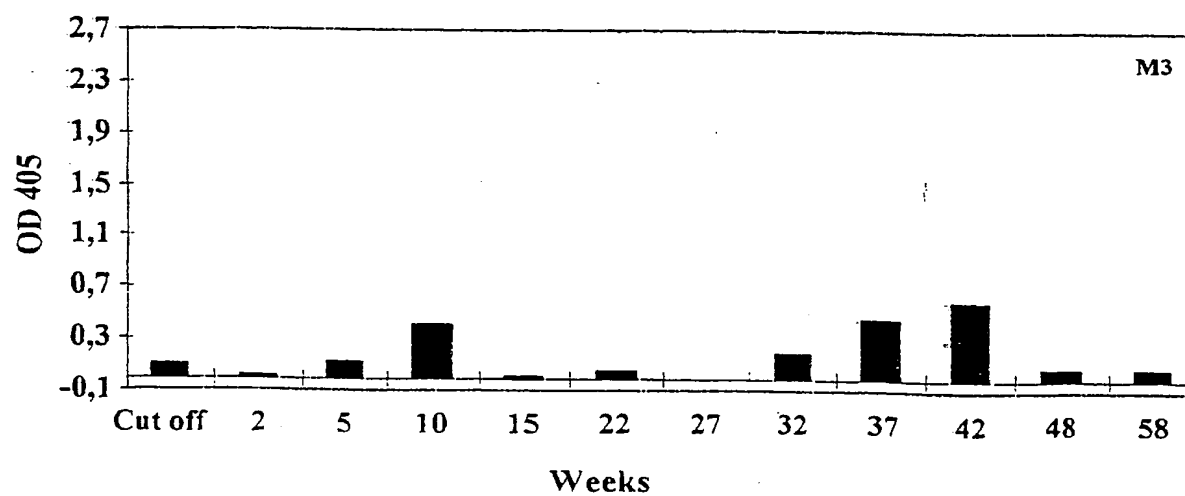
**A****B**

FIG. 2

4/17

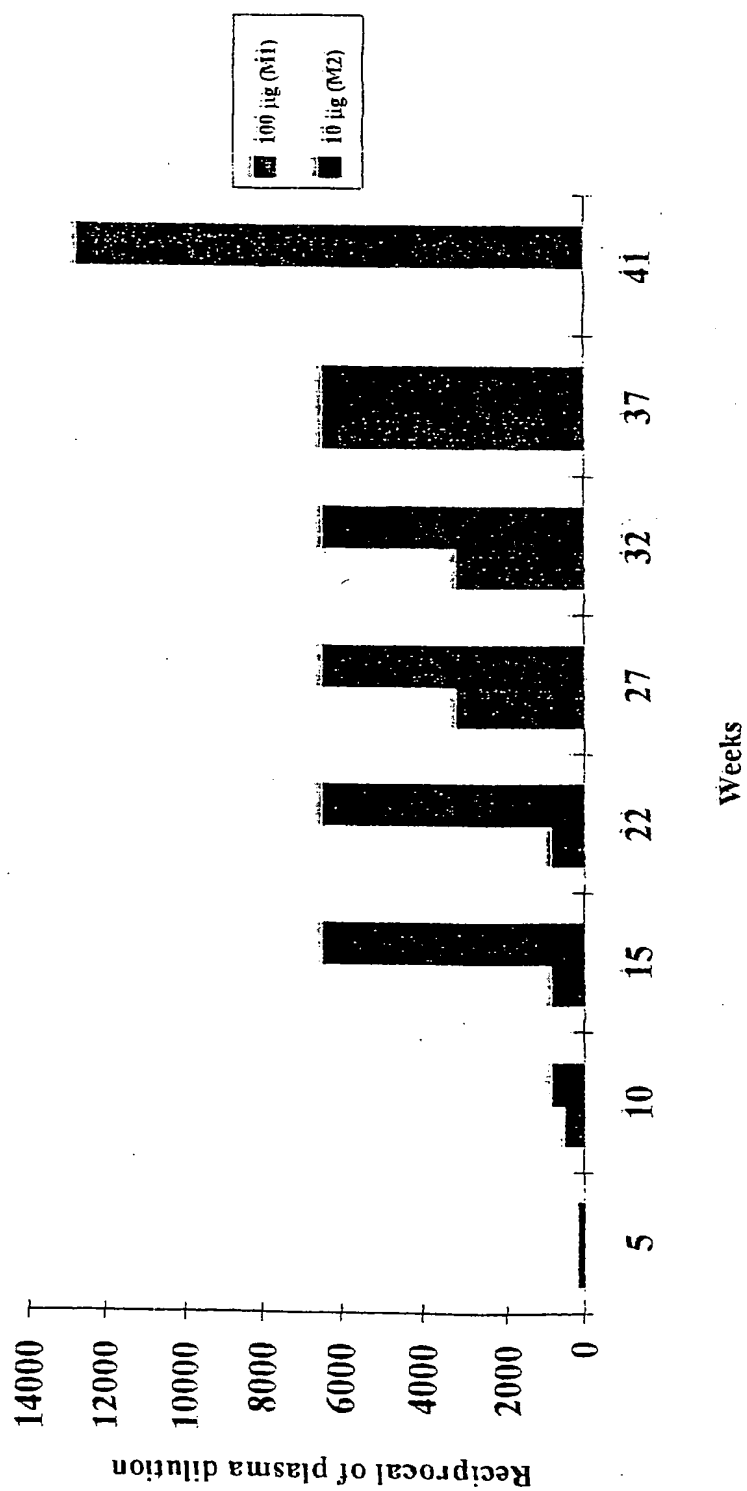
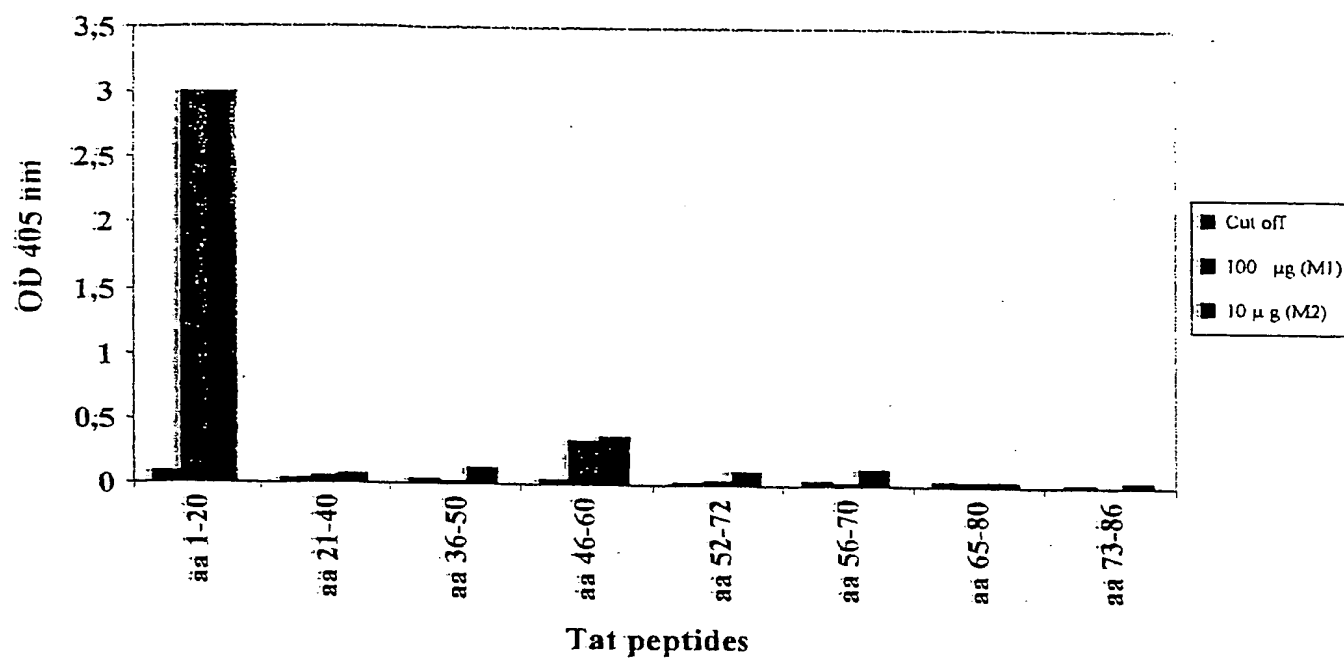


FIG. 3

A

5/17



B

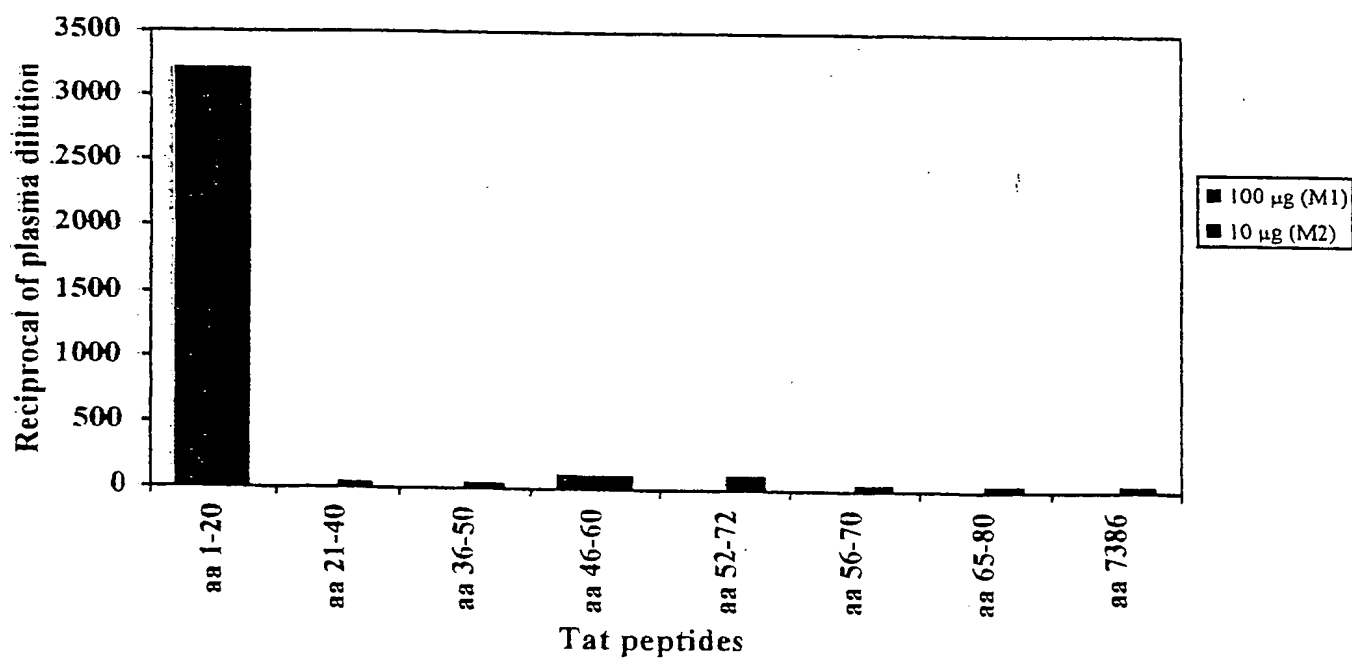


FIG. 4



6/17

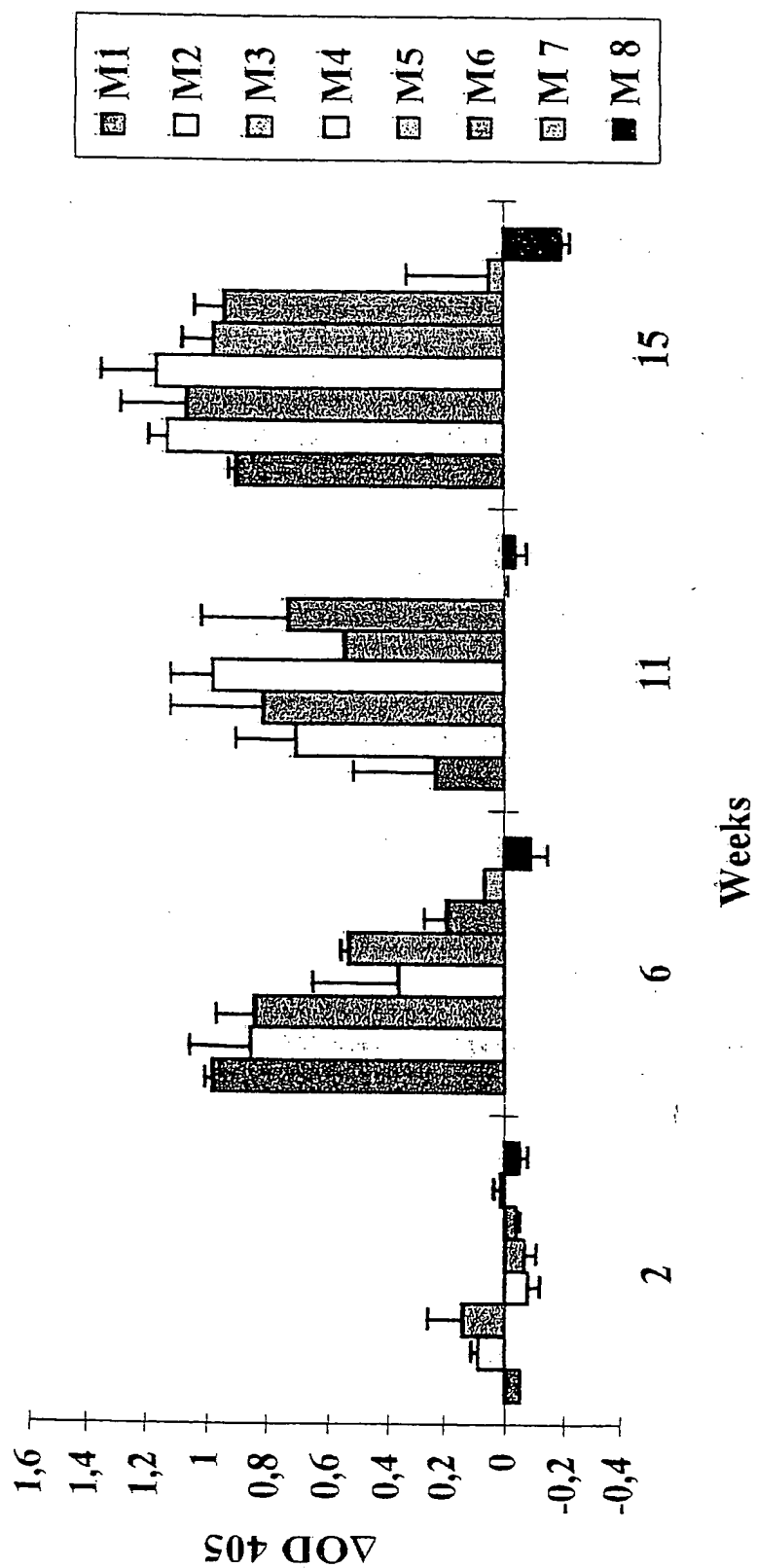


FIG. 5

7/17

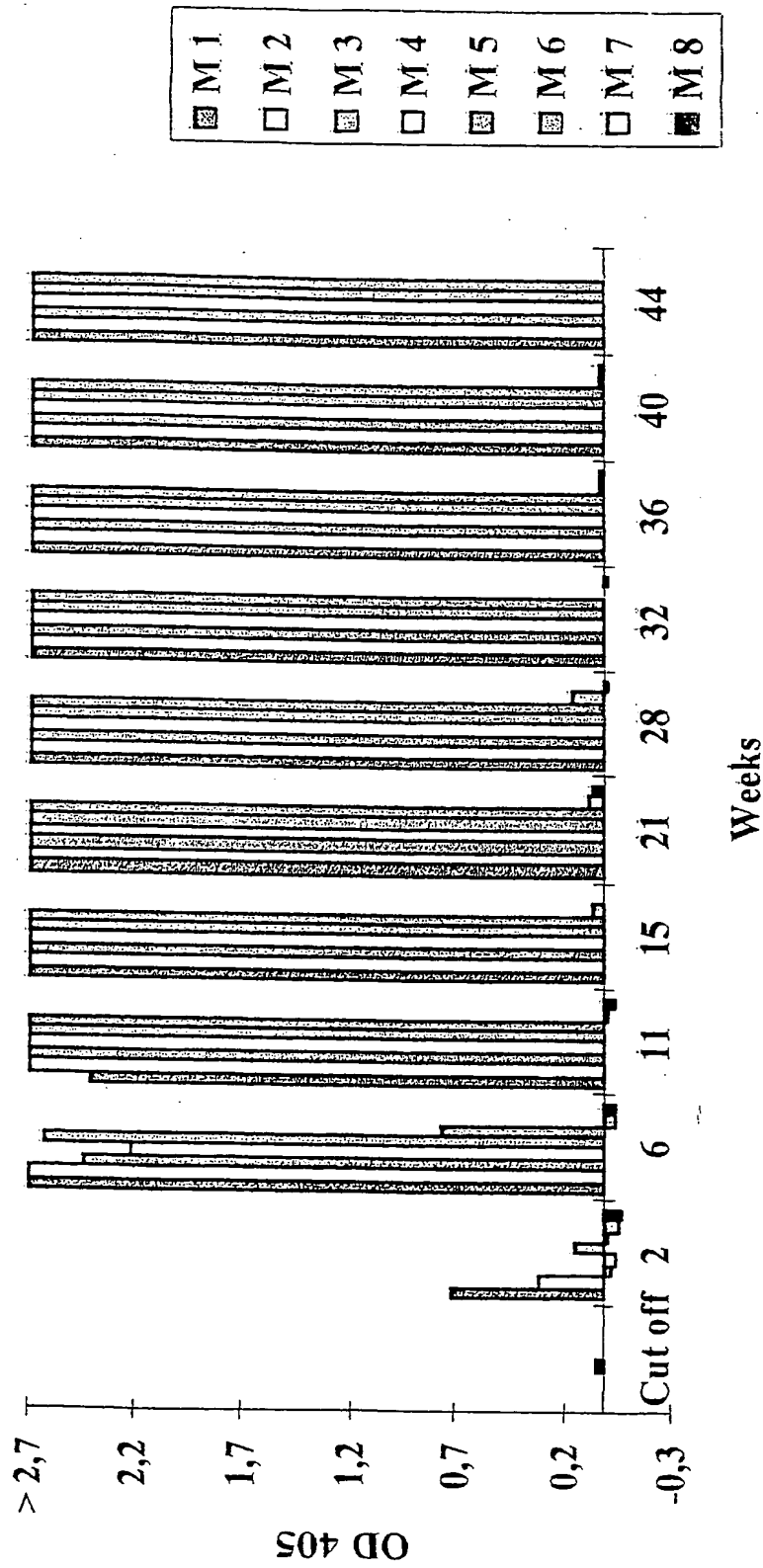


FIG. 6

8/17

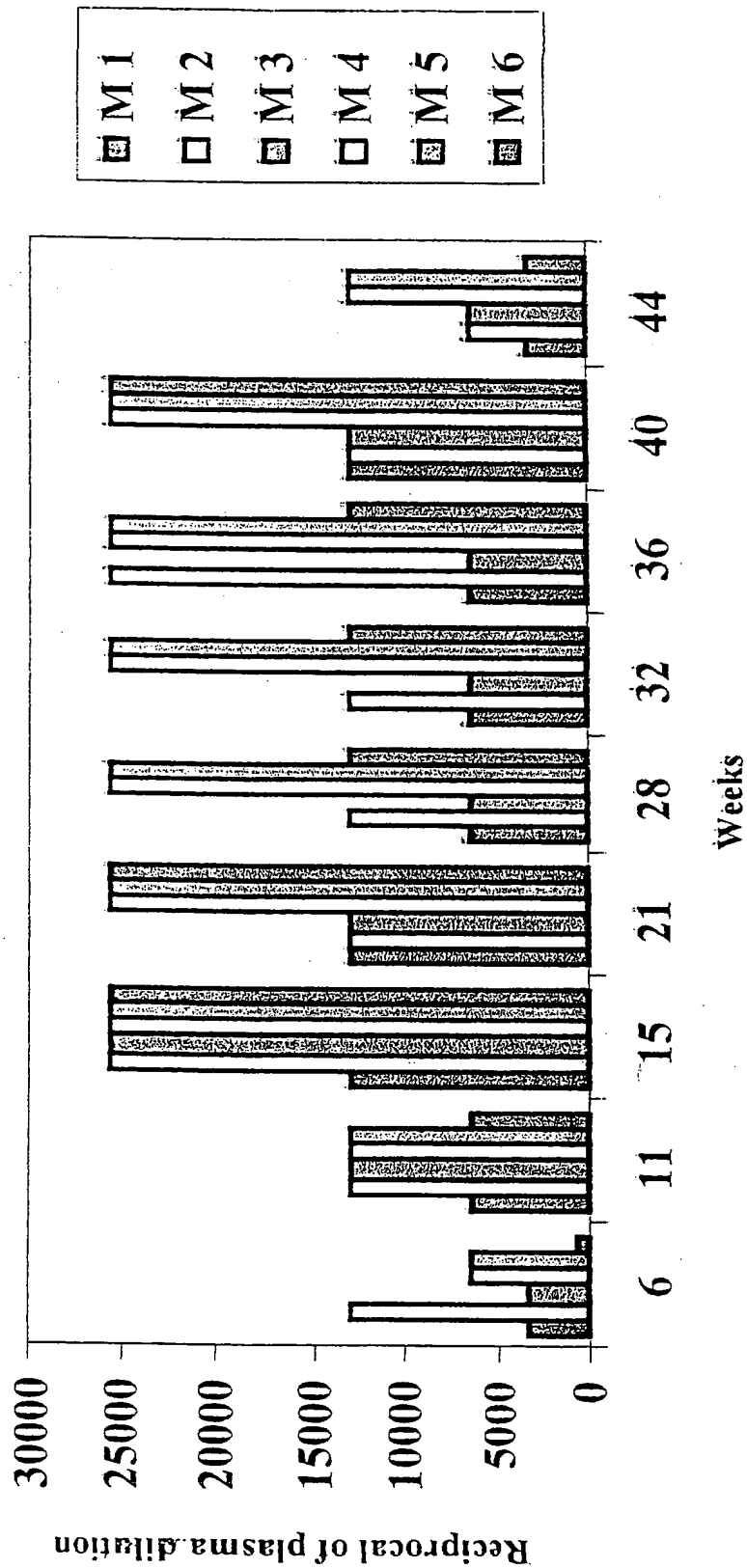
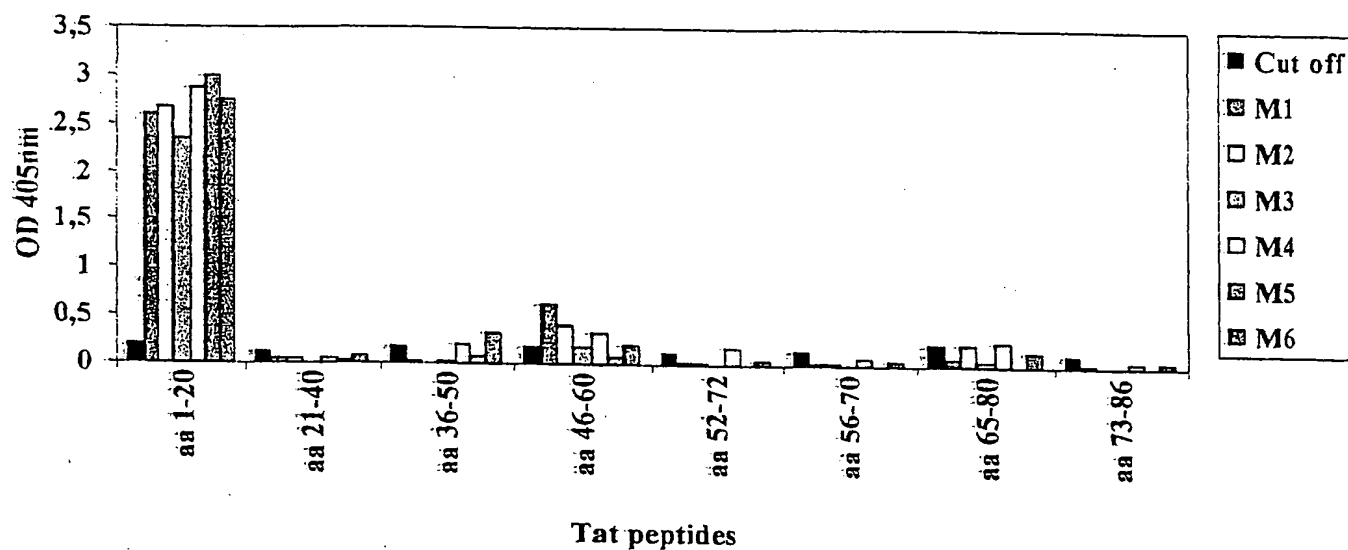


FIG. 7

9/17

A



B

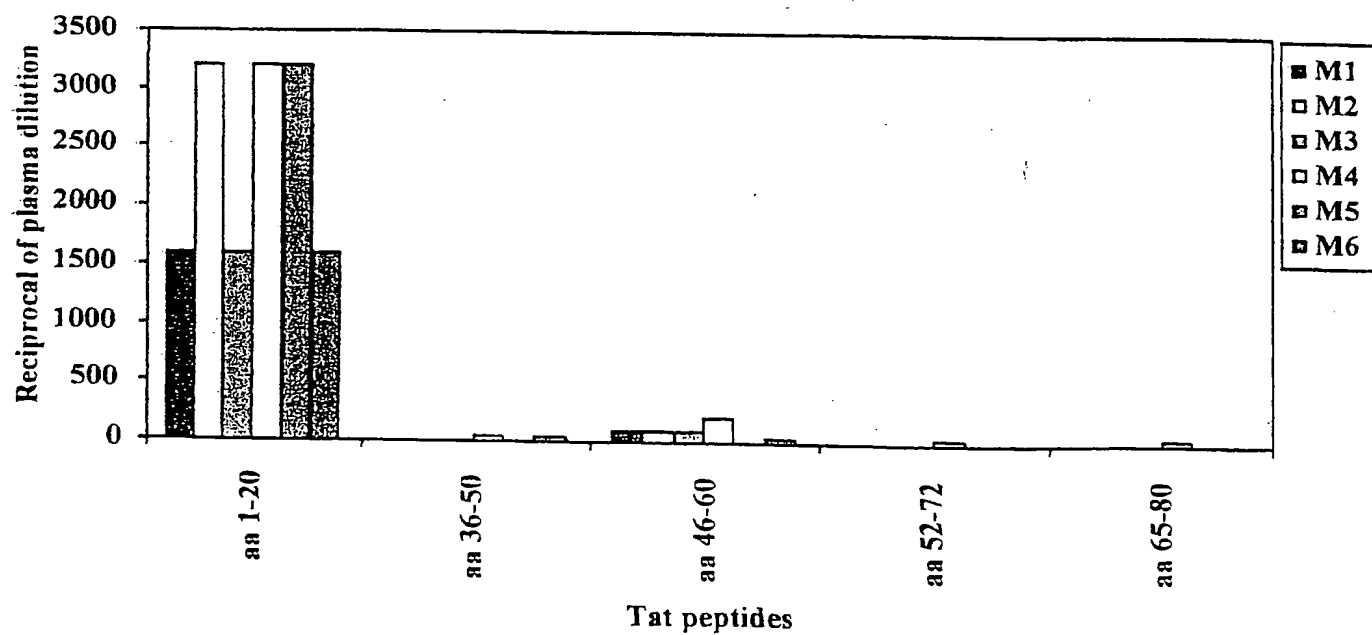
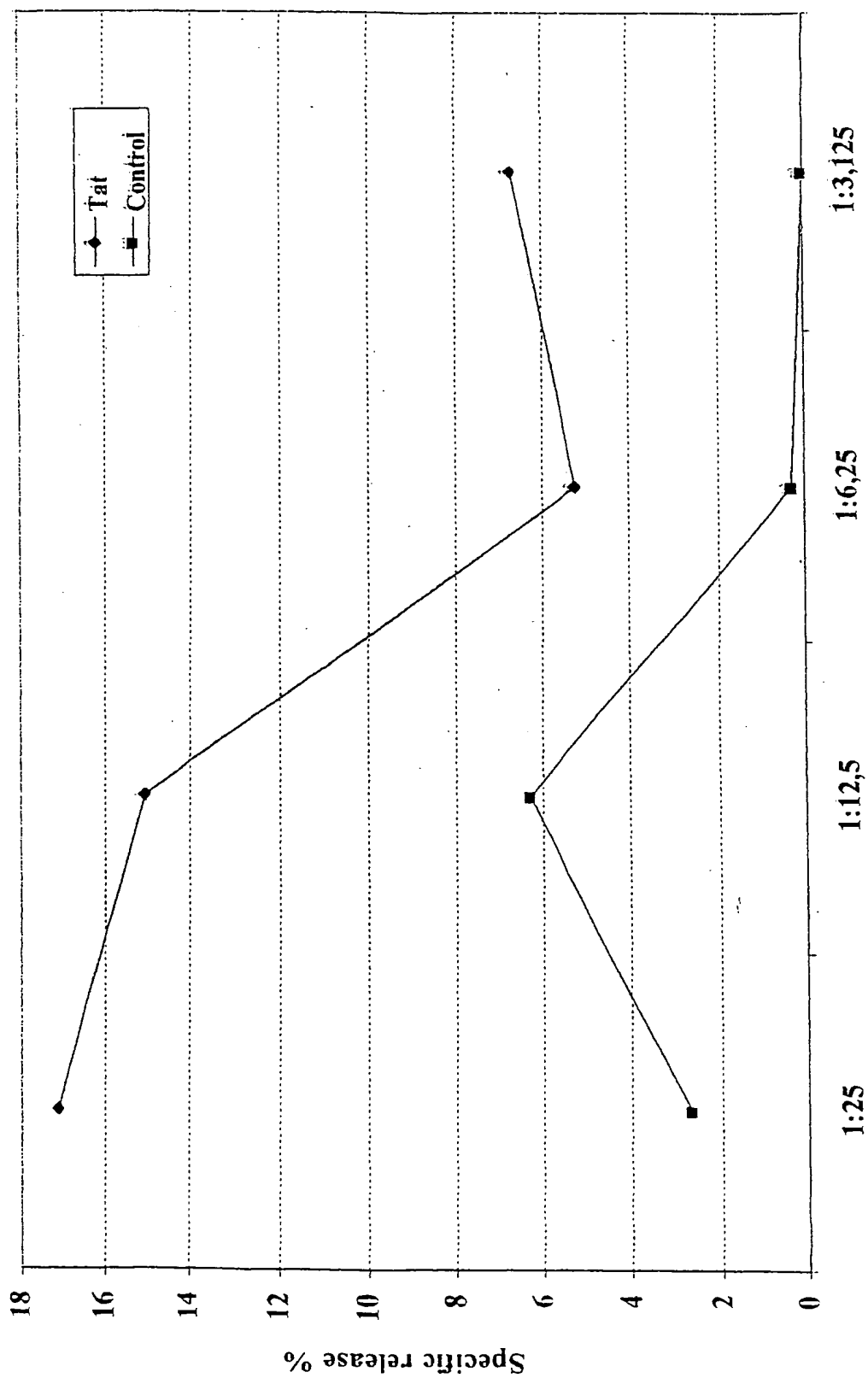


FIG. 8

10/17



Target : Effector ratios

FIG. 9

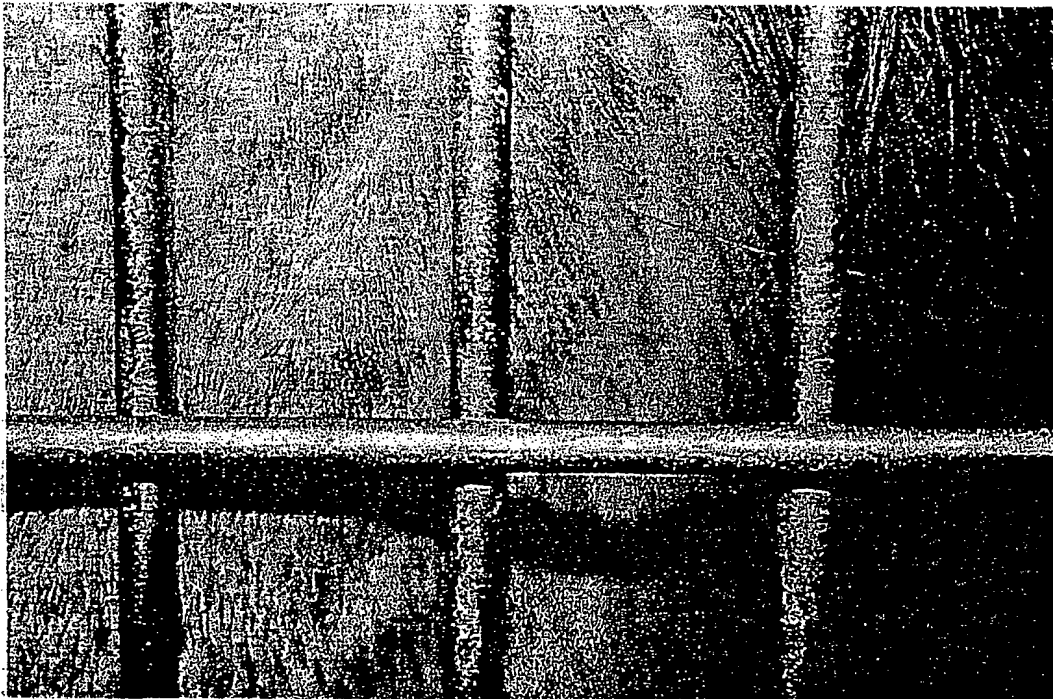
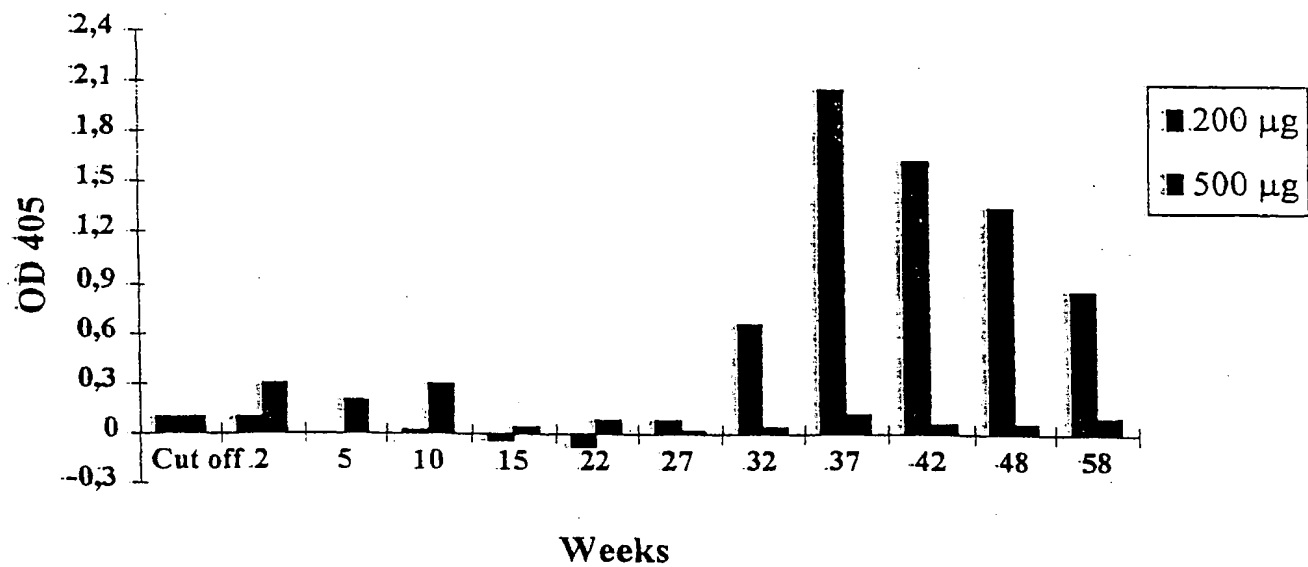
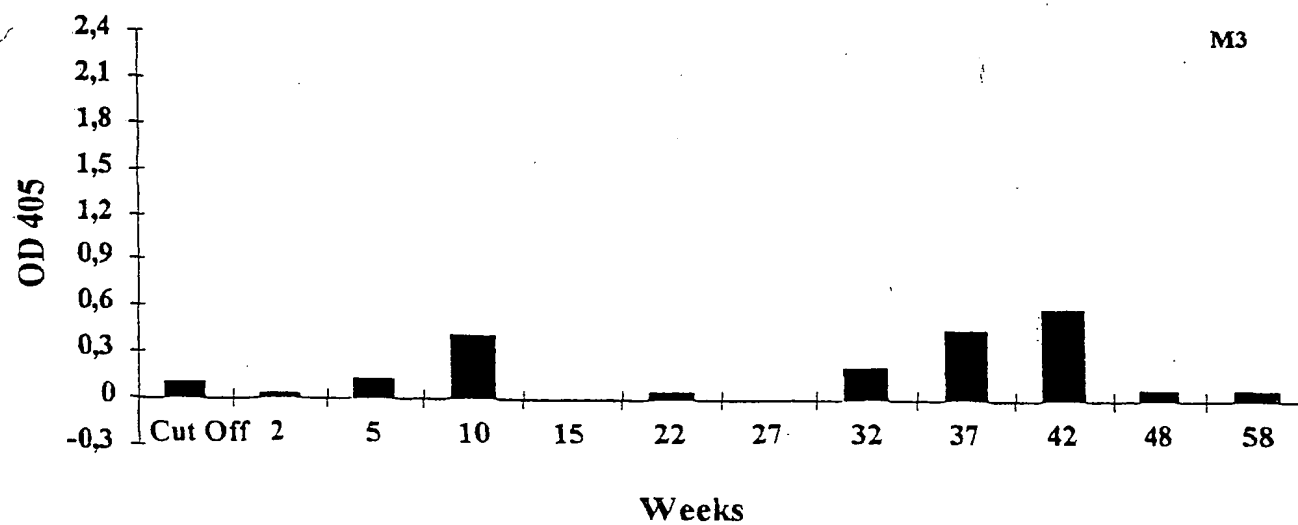


FIG. 10

**A**

12/17

**B**

M3

FIG. 11

13/17

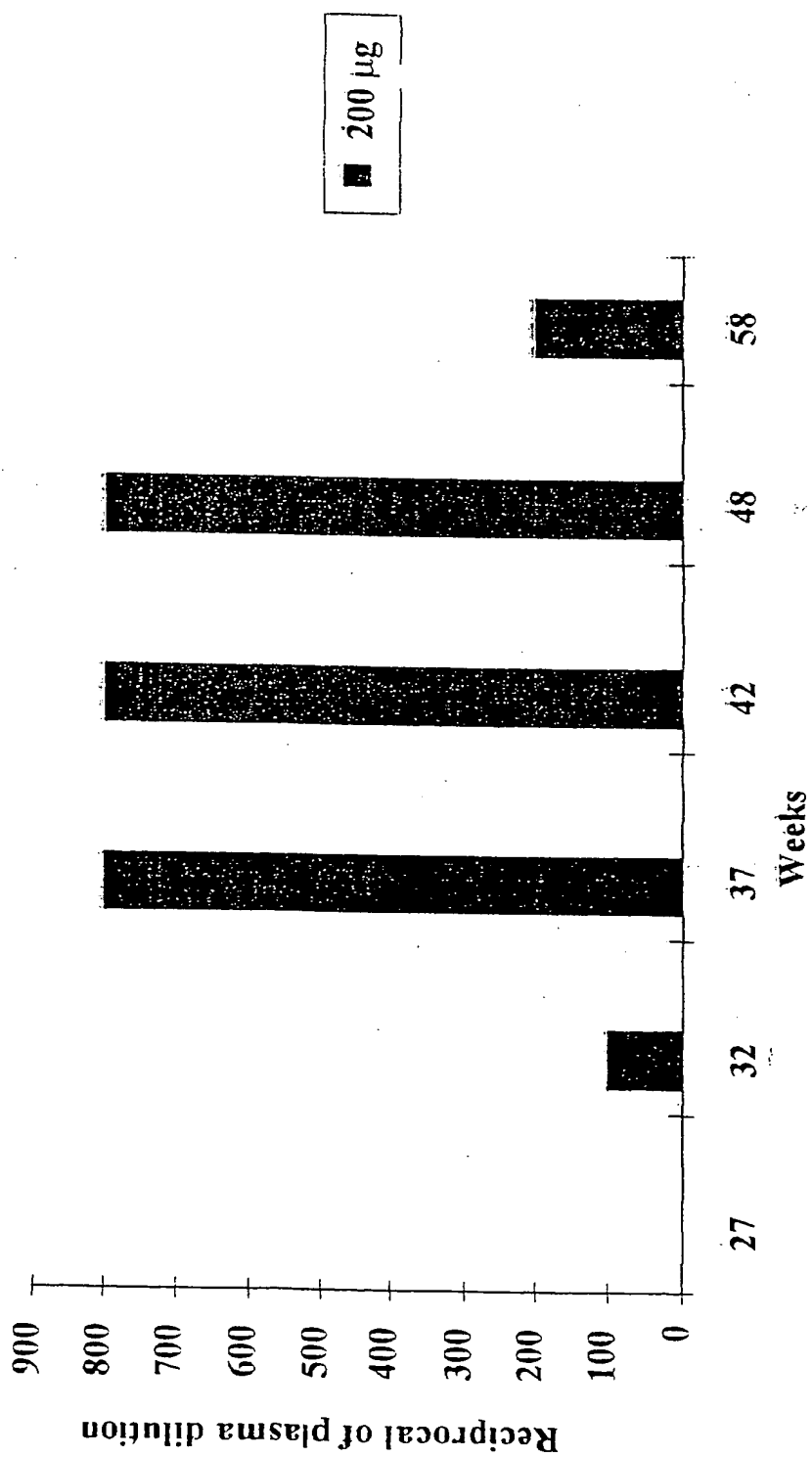


FIG. 12



14/17

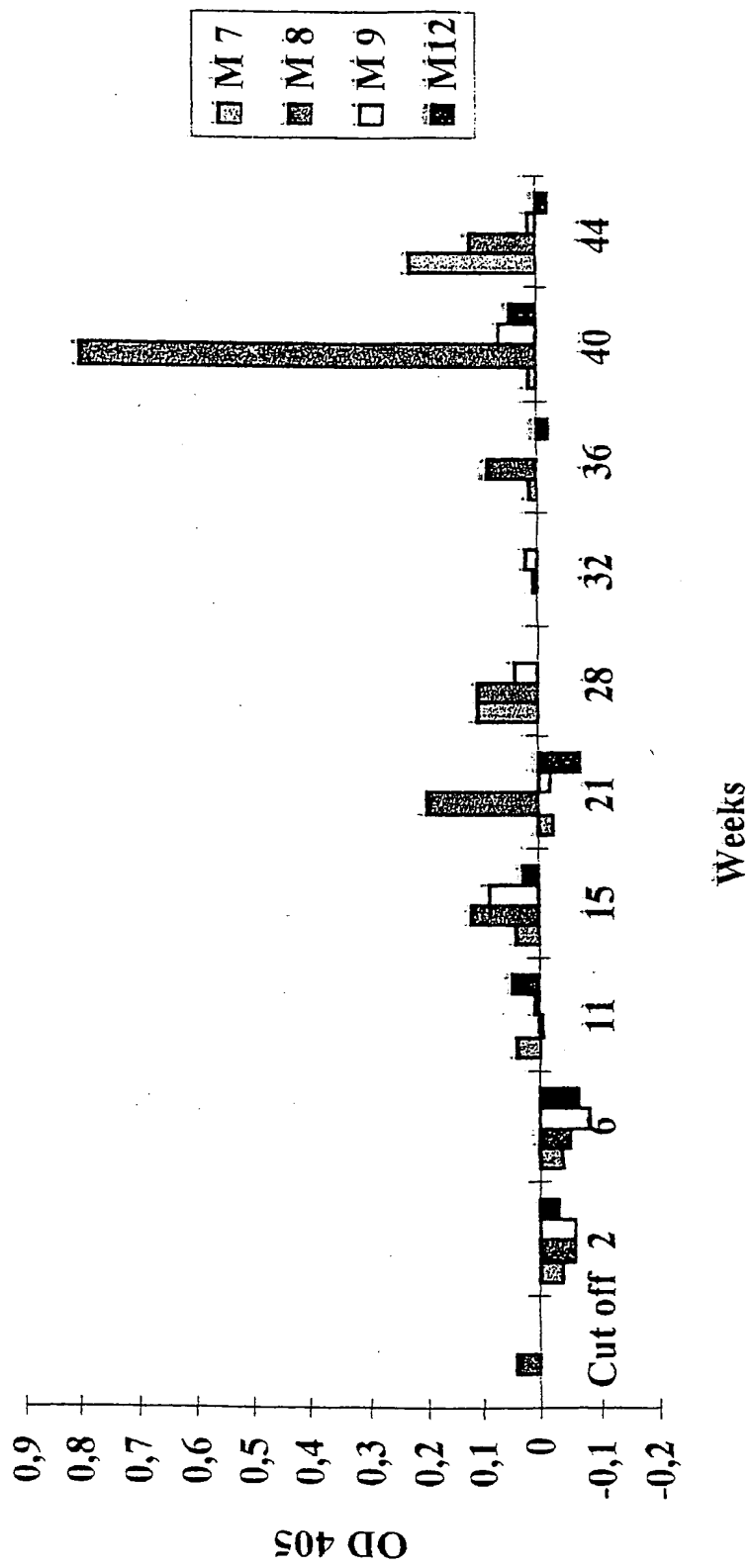


FIG. 13

15/17

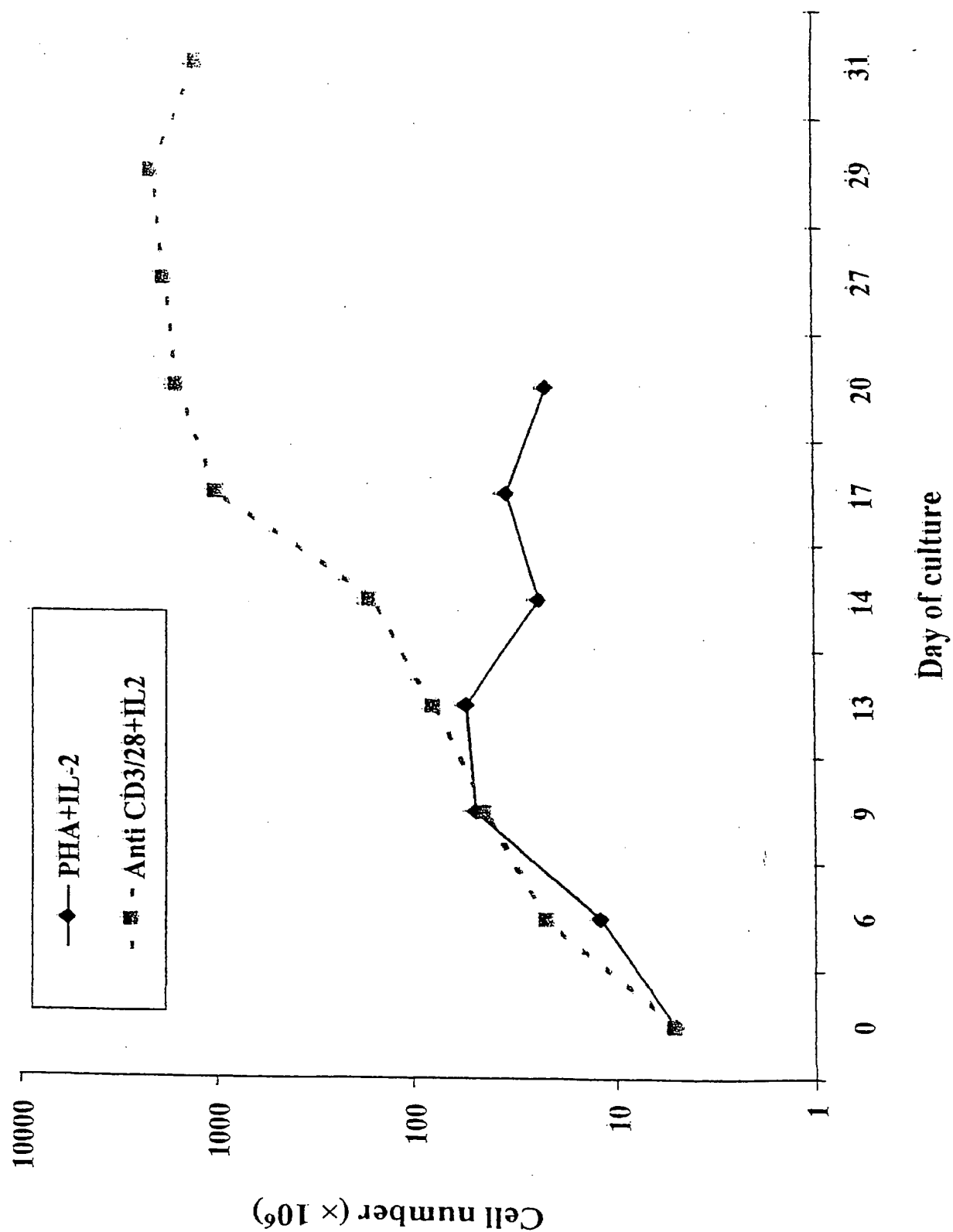
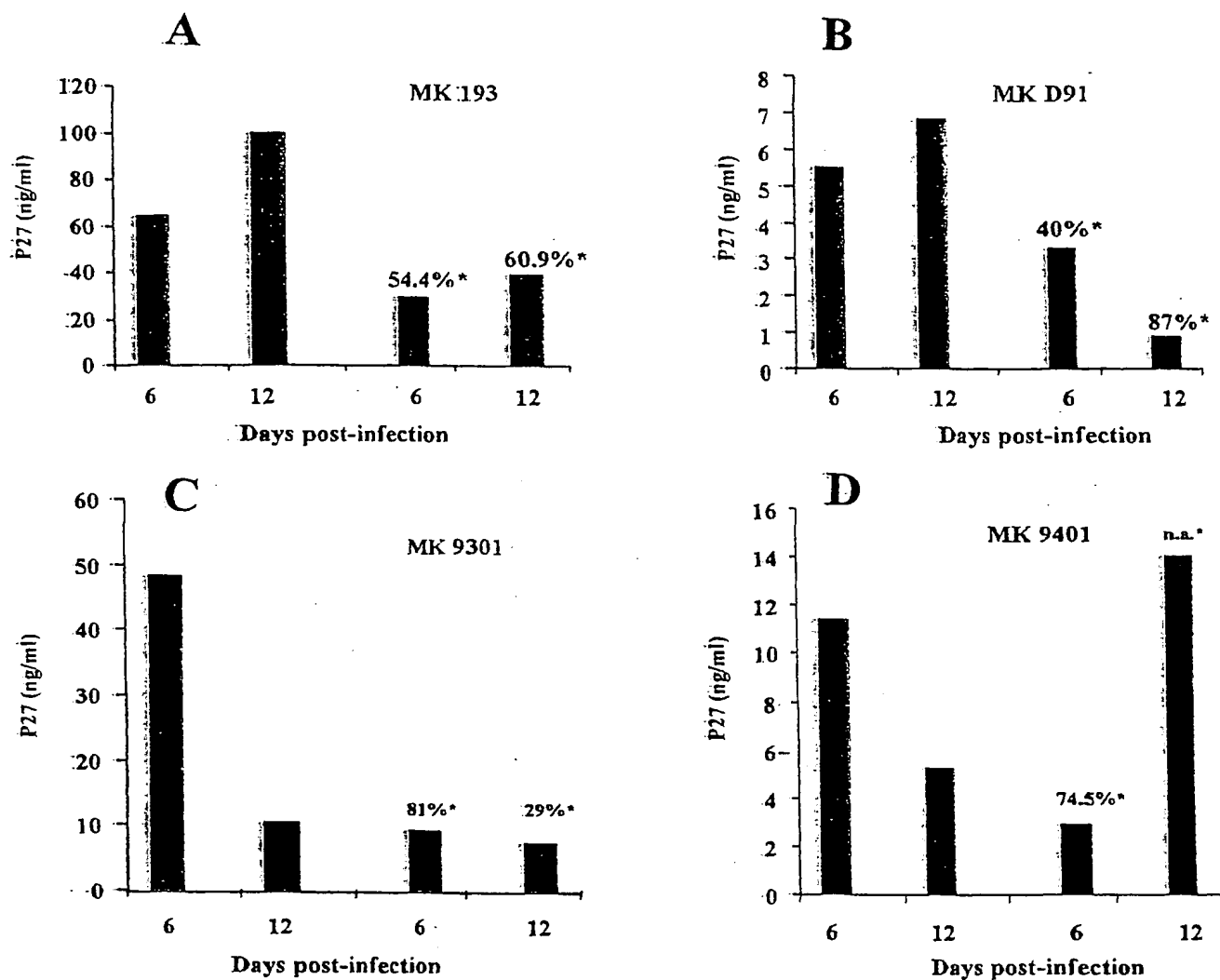


FIG. 14



\*: Percentage of inhibition

FIG. 15

17/17

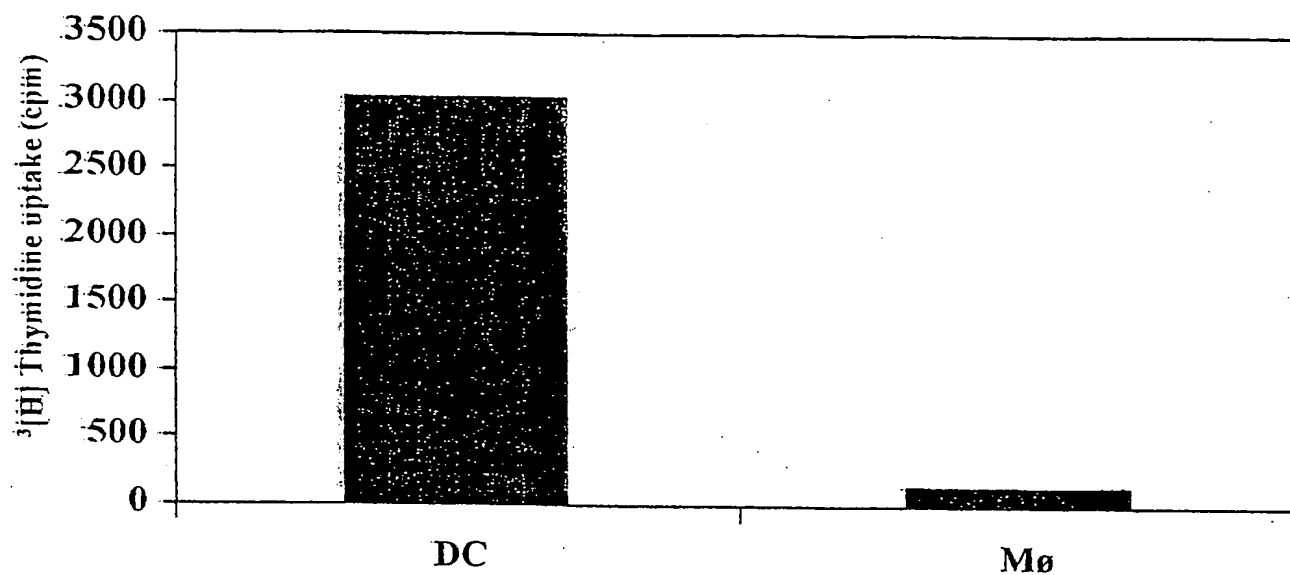
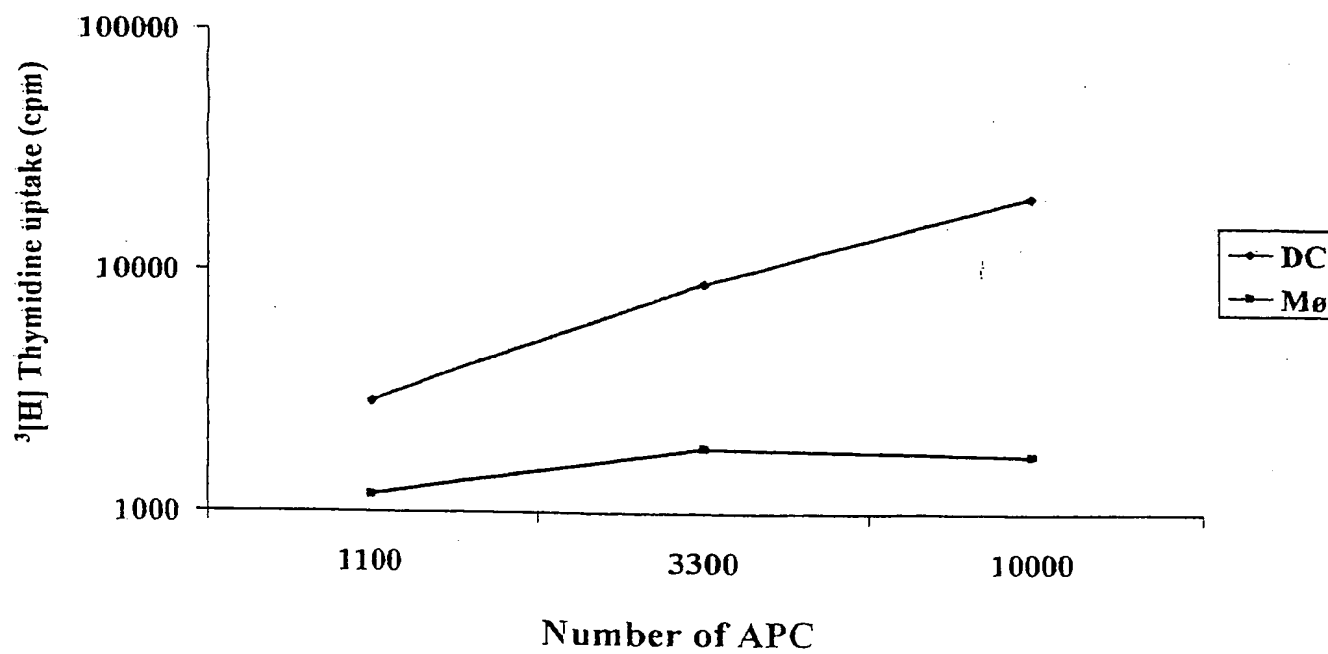
**A****B**

FIG. 16

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> ISTITUTO SUPERIORE DI SANITA'

<120> HIV-1 Tat, or derivatives thereof, alone or in combination, for prophylactic and therapeutic vaccination against AIDS, tumors and related syndromes

<130> 1354PTWO

<140> RM97A000743

<141> 1997-12-01

<160> 34

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.0

<210> 1

<211> 261

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 1

```
atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60
gctgtacca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccagtttg ttcataaca 120
aaagccttag gcctctcta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctctcaa 180
ggcagtcaga ctcatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctcccaatc ccgaggggac 240
ccgacaggcc cgaaggaata g                               .261
```

<210> 2

<211> 83

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 2

```
Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser Gln
 1         5         10         15
```

```
Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe His
 20         25         30
```

```
Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Ile Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys
 35         40         45
```

```
Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr His Gln Val
 50         55         60
```

```
Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp Pro Thr Gly
 65         70         75         80
```

Pro Lys Glu

<210> 3

<211> 260

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 3

```
atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60
gcgggtaccaa ttgctattgt aaaaagtgtt gcttcattg ccaagttgt ttcataaca 120
```

aagccttagg catctctat ggaggaaga agcgagaca ggcaggaaga cctctcaag 180  
gcagtcagac tcatcaagt tctctatcaa agcagccac ctccaatcc cgaggggacc 240  
cgacaggccc gaaggaatag .260

<210> 4

<211> 261

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 4

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
gcttgatcca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
aacgccttag gcatctccta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctctcaa 180  
ggcagtcaga ctcatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc ccgaggggac 240  
ccgacaggcc cgaaggaata g .261

<210> 5

<211> 252

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 5

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
gcttgatcca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
aaagccttag gcatctccta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctctcaa 180  
ggcagtcaga ctcatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc cccgacaggc 240  
ccgaaggaat ag .252

<210> 6

<211> 252

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 6

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
gcttgatcca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
aacgccttag gcatctccta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctctcaa 180  
ggcagtcaga ctcatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc cccgacaggc 240  
ccgaaggaat ag .252

<210> 7

<211> 86

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 7

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Gly Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
65 70 75 80

Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu

85

&lt;210&gt; 8

&lt;211&gt; 86

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 8

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Thr Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
65 70 75 80

Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu  
85

&lt;210&gt; 9

&lt;211&gt; 83

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 9

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Pro Thr Gly  
65 70 75 80

Pro Lys Glu

&lt;210&gt; 10

&lt;211&gt; 83

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 10

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Thr Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Pro Thr Gly  
65 70 75 80

Pro Lys Glu

<210> 11

<211> 20

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 11

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr  
20

<210> 12

<211> 20

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 12

Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe His Cys Gln Val  
1 5 10 15

Cys Phe Ile Thr  
20

<210> 13

<211> 16

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 13

Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys  
1 5 10 15

<210> 14

<211> 15

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 14

Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln  
1 5 10 15



<210> 15  
<211> 16  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 15  
Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln  
1 5 10 15

<210> 16  
<211> 16  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 16  
His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
1 5 10 15

<210> 17  
<211> 14  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 17  
Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu  
1 5 10

<210> 18  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 18  
atggcaggaa gaagc 15

<210> 19  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 19  
ctattcttta gtcc 15

<210> 20  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 20  
atgggtggca agtgg 15

<210> 21  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 21  
tcagcagtc ttga 15

<210> 22  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 22  
atgggtgcga gagcg 15

<210> 23  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 23  
ttattgtgac gaggg 15

<210> 24  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 24  
atgtggcccc ctggg 15

<210> 25  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 25  
ttaggaagca ttacg 15

<210> 26  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 26  
atgagaattt cgaaa 15

<210> 27  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 27  
tcaagaagtg ttgat 15

<210> 28  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 28  
atggagccag tagat 15

<210> 29  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 29

ctattcttc gggcc

15

&lt;210&gt; 30

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 30

ggcccgaagg aaatggcagg aagaagc

.27

&lt;210&gt; 31

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 31

ggcccgaagg aaatgggtgg caagtgg

.27

&lt;210&gt; 32

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 32

ggcccgaagg aaatgggtgc gagagcg

.27

&lt;210&gt; 33

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 33

ggcccgaagg aaatgtggcc ccctggg

.27

&lt;210&gt; 34

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 34

ggcccgaagg aaatgagaat ttcgaaa

27





## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>A61K 39/21, C12N 15/49, 5/10, C07K 14/16, C12N 15/86</b>	<b>A3</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/27958</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/EP98/07721 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 30 November 1998 (30.11.98) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> RM97A000743 1 December 1997 (01.12.97) IT <b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> ISTITUTO SUPERIORE DI SANITA' [IT/IT]; Viale Regina Elena, 299, I-00161 Rome (IT). <b>(72) Inventor; and</b> <b>(75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only):</b> ENSOLI, Barbara [IT/IT]; Via Pollino, 2, I-00141 Rome (IT). <b>(74) Agent:</b> GERVASI, Gemma; Notarbartolo & Gervasi S.p.A., Corso di Porta Vittoria, 9, I-20122 Milan (IT).		<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>  <b>(88) Date of publication of the international search report:</b> 22 July 1999 (22.07.99)
<b>(54) Title:</b> HIV-1 TAT, OR DERIVATIVES THEREOF FOR PROPHYLACTIC AND THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION  <b>(57) Abstract</b>  <p>The present invention refers to Tat as the active principale for a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat is in biologically active form either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT 98/07721

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 A61K39/21 C07K14/16 C12N15/49 C12N15/86 C12N5/10

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A61K C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X A	WO 95 31999 A (IMMUNOBIOLOGY RESEARCH INSTITUTE) 30 November 1995 see the whole document	1,42,43 2-41, 44-61
X A	KIM D T ET AL: "Introduction of soluble proteins into the MHC class I pathway by conjugation to an HIV tat peptide." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 AUG 15) 159 (4) 1666-8, XP002083064 see the whole document	1,42,43 2-41, 44-61

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

21 May 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

04/06/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Moreau, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Patent Application No.

PCT/98/07721

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	HINKULA J ET AL: "Nucleic acid vaccination with HIV regulatory genes: a combination of HIV-1 genes in separate plasmids induces strong immune responses" VACCINE, vol. 15, no. 8, June 1997, page 874-878 XP004075674 see the whole document	1,42,43
X	HINKULA J ET AL: "Recognition of prominent viral epitopes induced by immunization with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 regulatory genes." JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY, (1997 JUL) 71 (7) 5528-39, XP002083065 cited in the application see the whole document	1,42,43
X	WO 94 15634 A (RATH M.) 21 July 1994 see the whole document	1,42,43
A	WO 94 03596 A (UNIVERSITY OF HAWAII) 17 February 1994 see the whole document	161
P,X	WO 98 17309 A (ERASMUS UNIVERSITY ROTTERDAM) 30 April 1998 see the whole document	1,42,43
A		2-41, 44-61
A	SAMANIEGO F ET AL: "Inflammatory cytokines induce endothelial cells to produce and release basic fibroblast growth factor and to promote Kaposi's sarcoma-like lesions in nude mice." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 FEB 15) 158 (4) 1887-94, XP002103367 see the whole document	1-61



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/EP 98/07721

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claim 61 is directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

Intc Application No

PCT/98/07721

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9531999	A	30-11-1995	AU 2638295 A CA 2190972 A EP 0767678 A	18-12-1995 30-11-1995 16-04-1997
WO 9415634	A	21-07-1994	NONE	
WO 9403596	A	17-02-1994	AU 4794593 A	03-03-1994
WO 9817309	A	30-04-1998	AU 4719597 A	15-05-1998



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>A61K 39/21, C12N 15/49, 5/10, C07K 14/16, C12N 15/86</b>	<b>A3</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/27958</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/EP98/07721 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 30 November 1998 (30.11.98) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> RM97A000743 1 December 1997 (01.12.97) IT <b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> ISTITUTO SUPERIORE DI SANITA' [IT/IT]; Viale Regina Elena, 299, I-00161 Rome (IT). <b>(72) Inventor; and</b> <b>(75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only):</b> ENSOLI, Barbara [IT/IT]; Via Pollino, 2, I-00141 Rome (IT). <b>(74) Agent:</b> GERVASI, Gemma; Notarbartolo & Gervasi S.p.A., Corso di Porta Vittoria, 9, I-20122 Milan (IT).		<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>  <b>(88) Date of publication of the international search report:</b> 22 July 1999 (22.07.99)
<b>(54) Title:</b> HIV-1 TAT, OR DERIVATIVES THEREOF FOR PROPHYLACTIC AND THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION  <b>(57) Abstract</b>  <p>The present invention refers to Tat as the active principale for a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat is in biologically active form either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.</p>		

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## HIV-1 TAT, OR DERIVATIVES THEREOF FOR PROPHYLACTIC AND THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION

Field of the invention

The present invention refers to a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine anti-HIV, anti-AIDS and against tumors and syndromes associated with HIV infection, that utilizes as immunogens wild-type or mutated proteins, peptides or DNA of HIV Tat, alone or associated with proteins, peptides or DNA of other viral products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or cytokines potentiating the antiviral immune response.

The invention refers also to the immunization with Tat or its derivatives by using autologous dendritic cells, mucosal immunization, or ex-vivo immunization of peripheral blood cells expanded by co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies and to the delivery of the above mentioned immunogens using erythrocytes or nanoparticles.

Background of the invention

AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) is caused by HIV (Human Immunodeficiency Virus) and is characterized by immunodeficiency, tumors, such as Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) and B-cell lymphomas, opportunistic infections and central nervous system disorders. Since AIDS is spread world-wide and has a high mortality, one of the most important Public Health goal is to develop a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV or AIDS. Most of the past and current strategies have used the viral envelope or its sub-units as immunogens, but with unsatisfactory results due to the high variability of the viral envelope (ref. 162, 112 - throughout this specification, various references are referred to in parenthesis to more fully describe the state of the art to which the present invention pertains. Full bibliographic information for each citation is found at the end of the specification, immediately preceding the claims). Therefore, as an alternative to sterilizing immunity, it is a common opinion that it could be sufficient to block progression of infection and disease onset. Moreover, immuno-protective responses can be obtained utilizing DNA regions of HIV as immunogens (ref. 91, 17). Owing to the published experimental data, the inventor believes that it is necessary to produce a vaccine that utilizes viral products other than env. In

particular, the viral proteins to be used as immunogens must be more conserved among HIV isolates, capable of inducing an effective immune response, both humoral and cellular, and must have a vital function for the virus. Such products must be experimented in the model of non human primates (because their immune system is more similar to that of humans as compared to phylogenetically more distant animals) and in which AIDS can develop after virus infection.

The HIV-1 Tat protein has all the characteristics to be a good immunogen for vaccine purposes: it is conserved, immunogenic and essential in the early phases of the viral infection. Moreover, Tat has a key role not only in viral replication, transmission and progression of the infection, but also in the onset and progression of AIDS-associated tumors, for instance KS, which is the most frequent AIDS-associated tumor, and of other syndromes and symptoms developing after HIV infection.

Tat is a protein of 86-102 amino acids, depending on the viral strain, coded by two exons. Tat is produced soon after the infection, localizes in the nucleus and transactivates the expression of all viral genes by interacting with the "Tat-responsive element" (TAR) present in the LTR (Ref. 25). Tat has also a role in HIV virulence (Ref. 63, 113, 60, 84). The product of the first exon (amino acids 1-72) is conserved among different viral isolates (Ref. 112) and is sufficient for the transactivation of the HIV-1 products (Ref. 25). It contains 4 domains. The acidic domain (amino acids 1-21) is important for the Tat interaction with cellular proteins; the cysteine rich region (amino acids 22-37) represents the transactivation domain. This region is the most conserved among the primary isolates (Ref. 108) of cysteine 22 with a glycine abolishes the capacity of Tat to transactivate the HIV-LTR (Ref. 166) the core domain (amino acids 38-48) is also conserved and it is important for function. Substitution of lysine 41 with a threonine inactivates the transactivating activity of Tat on the HIV LTR (Ref. 70); the basic domain (amino acids 49-57), rich in arginine and lysine, is necessary for the nuclear localization of Tat and binds specifically its RNA target (TAR) (Ref. 25). Moreover, the basic region is responsible for the binding of extracellular Tat to heparin and to heparansulphate proteoglycans (HSPG) (Ref. 26). Mutations in the

basic region abolish such interactions. The carboxy-terminal portion of Tat is not necessary for the LTR transactivation, but contains an arginine-glycine-aspartic acid sequence (RGD), usually present in the extracellular matrix proteins (ECM), that is responsible for the binding of Tat to the integrin receptors  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  e  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ .

5 These interactions mediate the Tat effects on AIDS-associated tumors and on the immune, vascular and nervous system (Ref. 11, 42, 170, 25). During the acute infection of T-cells with HIV-1, or after transfection of the tat gene in COS-1 cells, the Tat protein is released in the absence of cellular death in the extracellular environment (Ref. 40, 41, 25). Tat release from infected cells occurs also in vivo  
10 since extracellular Tat is present in the serum of infected subjects (Ref. 164) and in AIDS-KS lesions (Ref. 42). After release, part of the protein remains in a soluble form, and part binds to the HSPG of the ECM. Tat bound to the HSPG can be recovered in a soluble form by the addition of heparin. The binding with heparin is due to the Tat basic region; it prevents the effects of extracellular Tat and protects  
15 the protein from oxidation. This feature has been used by us to purify Tat with a high biological activity (Ref. 26). Extracellular Tat can be internalized by cells, can migrate into the nucleus and transactivate viral gene expression (Ref. 49, 98, 100, 41). The internalization of Tat occurs by endocytosis mediated by the binding of RGD region of Tat to  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Ref. 10, 42, Ensoli et al., unpublished data)  
20 and/or by the basic region which binds to HSPG.

Tat can activate viral replication and virus transmission also through indirect mechanisms involving the modulation of the expression of cellular genes which play a key role in the control of cell survival, and on the expression of inflammatory cytokines (IC) with an effect on viral replication (Ref. 25).

25 Beyond its importance in viral replication, Tat plays an important role in AIDS pathogenesis. Tat is able to modulate the survival and proliferation of infected and non-infected cells by causing activation or repression of cytokines, such as IL-2 (Ref. 123, 163, 31), or of genes with a key role in the cell cycle (Ref. 145, 169, 164, 173). The anti- or pro-apoptotic effects of Tat depend on a number of factors  
30 such as the cell type, the fact that Tat is expressed by the cell or added to the cell and on its concentration (Ref. 40, 41, 171).

Tat is the factor responsible for the enhanced frequency and aggressiveness of KS in HIV-1 infected subjects (Ref. 43, 33). KS is a tumor of vascular origin and it is the most frequent neoplasia in HIV-infected individuals. Tat induces KS cells and endothelial cells activated by IC to migrate, to express type IV collagenase, to  
5 invade the ECM and to proliferate, such mechanisms being necessary for angiogenesis and tumor invasion (Ref. 40, 41, 42, 2, 46). Such effects of Tat are induced by IC, since they stimulate the expression of the Tat receptors,  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Ref. 10). Tat mimics the effect of ECM proteins, such as fibronectin and vitronectin and both the RGD region and the basic region are necessary for the  
10 effects of the extracellular Tat on KS cells, on angiogenesis and on progression of KS. The capability of extracellular Tat of binding in vivo its receptors in the AIDS-KS lesions (Ref. 40) support the idea that Tat is involved in the onset and the maintenance of AIDS-associated KS. Moreover mice transgenic for the tat gene develop KS or other phenotypes depending on the level of expression of the  
15 transgene (Ref. 160, 34).

It has been suggested that Tat plays a role in the hyperproliferative phenomena and in the pathogenesis of the B lymphomas, frequently observed in seropositive subjects and in tat-transgenic mice (Ref. 157), through mechanisms involving the enhancement of bcl-2 and cytokines expression (Ref. 122). Other evidence  
20 confirms a probable role of Tat in oncogenesis (Ref. 72).

Tat can also activate the expression of viral promoters, such as those of herpesviruses and of other viruses which reactivate in AIDS individuals, promoting the onset and progression of opportunistic infections (Ref. 25).

Tat seems also able to exert neurotoxic effects both direct (through the basic and  
25 the RGD regions) and indirect through induction of IC having a toxic effect on the neurons of the central nervous system or on the hematoencephalic barrier (Ref. 25). Regarding the immune response to Tat, a number of studies suggest that anti-Tat antibodies play a protective role in the control of the evolution of the disease in vivo (Ref. 130, 135, 136, 149, 127). Moreover, in vitro, anti-Tat antibodies not only  
30 suppress the internalization, the transcellular activation of Tat and viral infection (Ref. 41, 127), but they also inhibit the proliferation and Tat-induced migration of



KS cells and the formation of KS-like lesions in mice (Ref. 40, 41, 42). Finally, our preliminary results demonstrate that anti-Tat antibodies are absent in AIDS-KS subjects, suggesting that such subjects cannot block the activity of extracellular Tat.

- 5 The development of an anti-Tat cell-mediated response in the initial phase of infection is important for the control of the infection itself (Ref. 161, 133, 59) and there exists an inverse correlation between the presence of specific anti-Tat CTL and disease progression (Ref. 156). Such results were obtained in studies on macaques inoculated with SIVmac (Ref. 91, 158). Moreover, recent data in mice
- 10 of different species in which Tat was inoculated either as a plasmid or as protein showed that it is possible to induce both a humoral and cellular response to the protein (Ref. 61). However, it has been observed variability among several mouse species and such results have not been reproduced with the same immunogens in non-human primates (Ref. 124). The lack of reproducibility in non
- 15 human primate model of the results from vaccine experiments performed in mice is frequent and possibly due to the different immune system of these two species which can raise different immune responses with the same immunogen, as demonstrated for the HIV Env protein. Thus, candidate vaccines for humans must be tested in non-human primates and not only in inferior species.
- 20 The inventor believes that other viral proteins, or parts thereof, could be associated with Tat to enhance a specific immune response against HIV and could be of benefit also in the vaccination against the onset of tumors and of other pathologies and symptoms associated with HIV infection. Such products are the Nef, Rev and Gag proteins of HIV.
- 25 Nef is another viral regulatory protein important for the development of disease (Ref.3, 48, 58). Nef is produced early after infection and it is released in the extracellular environment (Ensoli, unpublished data). In the SIVmac/maaque system the presence of Nef correlates with high viral replication and with progression to AIDS (Ref. 71). Nef is more variable than Tat (Ref. 112). Nef is an
- 30 immunogenic protein (Ref. 53, 32, 35, 151) and it is capable of inducing CTL (Ref. 16, 36). In particular, it has been identified an immunodominant region of Nef

(region 73-144) which is recognized by CTLs in most HIV-infected patients.

Rev is a viral regulatory protein produced early during infection (Ref. 51, 119) and released in the extracellular environment (Ensoli et al., unpublished data). Rev is essential for HIV replication and for disease progression, and is coded by two  
5 exons, partially overlapping Tat-coding regions. Rev is a nuclear protein (Ref. 44) necessary for the expression of the viral messenger RNAs coding for the late proteins (Ref. 97). Rev is a highly conserved protein among the various viral isolates of HIV-1 (Ref. 111) and it is immunogenic. In fact, it induces the production of specific antibodies directed against the two functional domains of the  
10 protein (Ref. 120) during the natural infection in man (Ref. 131) and after inoculation in mice (Ref. 61). Lower levels of anti-Rev antibodies in the sera of infected individuals seem to correlate with the progression to AIDS (Ref. 131). Rev can induce CTL both in man and in monkey (Ref. 156, 158) and it has been reported that a specific anti-Rev CTL response, early during the infection, is  
15 inversely correlated with disease progression (Ref. 156, 158).

Another viral target is the gag gene, which is expressed late during infection and codes for a group of highly immunogenic structural proteins of the capsid (Ref. 18, 147). The anti-Gag antibody titers are high and stable during the asymptomatic phase of infection, and reach very low levels when the infection progresses to full-  
20 blown AIDS, in combination with the drop of CD4+ lymphocytes and the presence of the virus in the peripheral blood (Ref. 174, 73). Gag proteins induce CTL activity early during infection, both in man and in primates (Ref. 103, 168), and their presence is significantly related with the control of the initial viremia and with disease progression (Ref. 175, 6, 134, 167, 92). Finally, p17 and p24 proteins  
25 contain immunodominant epitopes which are maintained in different HIV-1 and HIV-2 isolates and are recognized by CTL (Ref. 89, 19, 114, 155, 115).

The inventor believes that cytokines or parts thereof, such as IL-12 and IL-15, or other immuno modulant cytokines such as IFN $\alpha$  or IFN $\beta$  or other proteins enhancing the immunogenic effect of Tat, can be utilized as adjuvants in the  
30 formulation of the anti-Tat vaccine. IL-12 is a strong immunoregulatory cytokine produced by antigen-presenting cells (APC) such as B and dendritic cells (~~Ref.~~

154). IL-12 is produced early after HIV infection and has a pro-inflammatory action inducing NK cells and T-lymphocytes to produce IFN $\gamma$  which activates phagocytes and promotes the induction of Th1 lymphocytes. IL-12 plays a fundamental role in the resistance to a number of infections caused by bacteria, fungi, viruses and  
5 shows a high anti-tumor activity. Several evidences suggest that viruses which induce immunosuppression, such as HIV and measles virus, act also through mechanisms which suppress IL-12 production (Ref. 57, 50, 144).

IL-15 is a pleiotropic cytokine expressed by non-lymphoid tissues, by activated monocytes/macrophages and by dendritic cells (DC) (Ref. 125, 66). IL-15 plays an  
10 important role in regulating the NK activity, in the proliferation of T lymphocytes and in the CTL activity (Ref. 67, 24). IL-15 induces the expression of CTLs against HIV antigens, in the absence of IL-2 and functional CD4+ T-lymphocytes (Ref. 68, 1). Moreover, similarly to IL-2, IL-15 induces the expansion of lymphocytes with cytotoxic activity ("lymphokine-activated killer", LAK) and stimulates production of  
15 IFN $\gamma$  in PBMCs of seropositive patients (Ref. 93). IL-15 activates monocytes to produce chemokines, playing a role in the onset of inflammatory processes (Ref. 8).

Recent studies have shown that the co-stimulation of CD4+ lymphocytes with paramagnetic beads, coated with anti-CD3 e anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies  
20 determines a logarithmic and polyclonal expansion of lymphocytes from HIV-infected subjects (Ref. 82) without activating virus replication and transmission. Such antiviral activity is a consequence of both the negative modulation of the expression of CCR5, the co-receptor of HIV-1 monocyctotropic strains (Ref. 23) and, to a lesser extent, of the high levels of chemokines induced by the co-  
25 stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies (Ref. 132). The inventor believes that the possibility to expand autologous lymphocytes from HIV infected subjects in the absence of viral replication/transmission, permits to obtain an effective ex vivo immunization, described in the examples, which can be highly helpful in developing an anti-Tat vaccine.

30 Within the different systems aimed at the generation of effective antiviral and anti-tumor vaccines, the inventor believes that the utilization of dendritic cells could be

key in the induction of an immune response to Tat. This is due to the fact that these cells are the most efficient in presenting the antigen and the sole able to stimulate naive lymphocytes, in the absence of adjuvants (Ref. 150). The use of dendritic cells replaces the function of several adjuvants consisting in the induction  
5 of a non specific immune response (natural immunity) which, in turns, generates a strong primary specific response in the presence of the antigen.

Since the transmission of HIV infection primarily occurs at the mucosal level (genital and rectal in the adult, oral in the new-born), the inventor believes that the induction of protective immunity at the mucosal level is a primary  
10 goal. Many studies have recently shown the possibility to induce mucosal immunization, local and systemic. Particularly, the nasal and oral routes have shown to be the most efficient in inducing an effective mucosal immune response, even at distant sites, such as the genital mucosa (Ref. 138, 118). In particular, the inventor believes that the use of *S. Gordonii* and *Lactobacillus* bacteria, modified  
15 to express the above mentioned viral antigens, might be a valid strategy to induce or potentiate a specific immune response at the mucosa level in monkeys and in man. These bacteria are, in fact, able to colonize the mouse oral and vaginal mucosa, and to induce a specific, local and systemic, antibody response against heterologous antigens expressed on the surface of recombinant bacteria (Ref.  
20 116, 104, 106, 121, 117, 139, 105, 107). Finally, these bacteria act as live vectors and can induce a prolonged stimulation of the immune system. Moreover, the inventor believes that non-replicating and non-pathogenic recombinant viral vectors, such as herpes simplex type-1 viruses (HSV-1) (Ref. 99), can be used to express viral proteins for systemic (intradermic) and mucosal (oral, vaginal and  
25 nasal routes) immunization. In fact, these vectors can accommodate large exogenous sequences (Ref. 52, 64), such as several HIV genes (regulatory, accessory and structural). Moreover, herpes vectors can also be administered via the oral, nasal or vaginal route (Ref. 176, 75).

The inventor believes that Tat (either as protein or DNA), alone or in combination  
30 with the other immunogens described above, can be inoculated also by using new delivery systems, such as erythrocytes or nanoparticles. In particular, the inventor

believes that it is possible to deliver antigens bound to the membrane of autologous erythrocytes (Ref. 95, 96). Since these erythrocytes are removed from the blood by macrophages, professional antigen presenting cells, only after 120 days, this feature can be used for vaccine purposes. Finally, another delivery  
5 strategy is the use of nanoparticles that can carry proteins and DNA (Ref. 27, 172). Nanospheres are polymeric colloidal particles of diverse chemical composition, variable from 10-1000 nm. Different substances (oligonucleotides, drugs, proteins, peptides, DNA) can be loaded on their surface or absorbed in the particle and delivered into the cytoplasm or the nucleus of the cells from where  
10 they are slowly released. This allows the utilization of very small amounts of the substance to be delivered.

Based on the results described above, the inventor believes that the immunization with Tat, alone or in combination with other viral products or immuno modulant cytokines, or parts thereof, in the presence or not of adjuvants, could block viral  
15 replication in subjects exposed after vaccination and in the infected subjects, maintaining the infection in an abortive phase, which can be more easily controlled by the immune system. Therefore, the inventor believes that a Tat-based vaccine should be able to induce an immune response, both humoral and cellular, sufficient to block or reduce the replication or the transmission of the virus and  
20 therefore capable of controlling virus replication and of blocking productive infection, progression to disease and the onset of tumors and other AIDS-associated syndromes and symptoms. It is, therefore, possible to use the anti-Tat vaccine for both preventive and therapeutic purposes. In fact, a humoral response against Tat could neutralize the effects of extracellular Tat reducing and limiting  
25 the infection, whereas the cell-induced response against Tat as well as against other viral proteins enclosed in the vaccine formulation, could destroy the virus infected cells leading to the control the infection. This allows the necessary period of time to the immune system for developing a complete response towards all viral components of the infecting virus in the absence of irreversible damages due to  
30 viral replication.

It has been described the use of Tat as an immunogen (WO 95/31999). However,

it is disclosed the use of a biologically inactive protein; moreover, in the same patent application no evidence is shown of the biological activity of the "native" Tat protein.

In addition, there is a strong technical prejudice against the use of a biologically active Tat protein, in that it is believed to enhance viral replication in infected subjects and/or to give immunosuppression in seronegative or seropositive individuals (A.Tonelli: Aids, un vaccino per sperare. "La Repubblica", pag. 10, 24 Oct. 1998)

As evident from the above, despite the efforts made, an efficacious anti-HIV vaccine based on Tat has not been developed yet.

#### Summary of the invention

It is an object of the present invention a Tat protein or peptides of Tat or the Tat DNA for use as a vaccine, being intended that Tat must be in its biologically active form.

Another object of the invention is a protein or a peptide vaccine to be used in humans, prophylactic or therapeutic against AIDS, AIDS-associated tumors and HIV-associated syndromes and symptoms and comprised of recombinant wild-type Tat protein or its mutants (Seq. 1-5), expressed and purified as described, or wild-type or mutated Tat peptides (Seq. 1-7), administered alone or conjugated with T-helper tetanus toxoid epitope or other T-helper epitopes.

Another object of the invention is a vaccine as described above, in combination with recombinant HIV Nef, Rev and/or Gag proteins or peptides of Nef, Rev and Gag administered as Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag fusion proteins or as parts of these proteins.

Another object of the invention is a vaccine as described above, in combination with recombinant proteins of immuno modulant cytokines like IL-12, IL-15 or others molecules or part of these, capable of increasing the antiviral immune response, or a vaccine constituted by Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15 or Tat/other fusion proteins, or part of these, capable of increasing the antiviral immune response.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine, to be administered in humans, prophylactic or therapeutic, against AIDS, AIDS-associated tumors and HIV-

related syndromes and symptoms, constituted by vectors coding for wild-type Tat or its mutants (Seq. 1-5), or part of these, inserted in the expression plasmid vector pCV0 or other vectors.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine, as described in 4, in combination with HIV rev, nef or gag genes, or part of these, inserted in the pCV0 vector, or a DNA vaccine administered as a vector co-expressing tat/rev, tat/nef, tat/gag genes or part of these.

Another object of the invention is a DNA vaccine as described above, in combination with the DNA coding for IL-12 and IL-15 or other genes coding for immuno modulant cytokines or part of these, inserted in pCV0 or other vectors, or a DNA vaccine administered as a vector co-expressing Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15 or Tat/other molecules, or part of these, capable of increasing the anti-viral immune response.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, as a protein, peptide and/or DNA, alone or combined as described above for immunization with autologous dendritic cells by *ex vivo* treatment.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as a protein, peptide and/or DNA, alone or combined as described above, for mucosal immunization (nasal, oral, vaginal or rectal).

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as a protein, peptide and/or DNA, alone or combined as described above, for ex vivo immunization of peripheral blood cells from infected subjects expanded through co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies conjugated to paramagnetic beads and re-infused in the host.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, as a protein, peptide and/or DNA as described above, combined with inhibitors of viral replication.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine as already described, in combination with adjuvants which increase the immune response.

Another object of the invention is an anti-Tat vaccine, alone or in combination as already described, administered by specific delivery systems, such as nanoparticles, herpes vectors, red blood cells, bacteria or any other delivery

system by which the above described vaccine, in all its combinations, can be administered.

Further objects will be evident from the detailed description of the invention.

**Brief description of the figures**

5 **FIG. 1A.** Inhibition of uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat protein by pre-incubation of cytokine-activated endothelial cells with anti-integrin antibodies.

**FIG. 1A. Panel A,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with BSA.

**FIG. 1A. Panel B,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with Tat.

10 **FIG. 1A. Panel C,** cells pre-incubated with monoclonal antibodies CDw49e and CD29, incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1A. Panel D,** cells pre-incubated with monoclonal antibodies CD51 and CD61, incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1A. Panel E,** cells pre-incubated with anti-human factor VIII antibodies (control antibodies), incubated with Tat.

15 **FIG. 1B.** Capability of purified Tat-cys22 (Tat22) protein to compete the transactivating activity of wild type Tat protein monitored by cat assays.

**FIG. 2A.** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). Results obtained in two monkeys inoculated sub-cute with 10 or 100 µg of recombinant Tat protein re-

20 suspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI.

**FIG. 2B.** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). Results for the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 3.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkeys inoculated with

25 100 (M1) and 10 (M2) µg recombinant Tat protein, described in Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B.

**FIG. 4A.** Mapping of the Tat epitopes recognized by the anti-Tat IgG from monkeys injected with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2) µg of recombinant Tat protein, described in fig. 2A and Fig. 2B. The average results of plasma diluted 1:50 for

30 each peptide tested in duplicate are shown.



**FIG. 4B.** Mapping according to Fig. 4A. The antibody titers in plasma are shown, expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 5.** Analysis of the specific anti-Tat humoral IgM response in monkeys inoculated with Tat protein determined by ELISA.

**FIG. 6.** Analysis of specific anti-Tat IgG production in monkeys inoculated with Tat protein, tested by ELISA.

**FIG. 7.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from the monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat (10 µg) in the presence of RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) described in Figure 6.

**FIG. 8A.** Epitopes of Tat recognized by anti-Tat IgG from monkeys inoculated as described in figure 6. The results refer to samples diluted 1:50 and are the average from duplicate wells.

**FIG. 8B.** Epitopes of Tat according to Fig. 8A. The results refer to the titration of plasma shown in Fig. 8A and are expressed as the highest reciprocal dilution of plasma at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 9.** Analysis of Tat specific CTL.

**FIG. 10.** Analysis of the response of delayed hypersensitivity to Tat by skin test.

**FIG. 11A.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in monkeys vaccinated with Tat DNA.

There are shown the results obtained from two monkeys vaccinated with 200 (M1) and 500 (M2) µg of pCV-Tat plasmid.

**FIG. 11B.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in monkeys vaccinated with Tat DNA. Results for the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 12.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkey M2 inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of pCV-Tat.

**FIG. 13.** Analysis of anti-Tat IgG production in three monkeys (M9 to M11) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV-Tat and in one control monkey (M12), inoculated with 1 mg of control vector pCV-0.

**FIG. 14.** Kinetics of the proliferative response of PBMC from *Macaca fascicularis* to the co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies on paramagnetic beads (anti-CD3/28 beads).

FIG. 15A. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 193.

FIG. 15B. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK D91.

5 FIG. 15C. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 9301.

FIG. 15D. Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. Monkey MK 9401.

10 FIG. 16A. Functional characterization of dendritic cells (DC) obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. <sup>3</sup>H-Thymidine incorporation at day 4 of allogeneic mixed leukocyte culture (AMLR).

FIG. 16B. Functional characterization of dendritic cells obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. APCs, such as DC and Mø, obtained as reported in figure 16A, were challenged with T lymphocytes from another monkey.

15 Detailed description of the invention

The present invention refers to Tat as the active principle for a prophylactic and/or therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by HIV. Tat, or wild-type Tat, is in its active form or, more correctly, in its biologically active form (as explained herein below) either as recombinant protein or peptide or as DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.

25 In the present description "wild-type Tat" and "Tat in its active form" have to be considered synonymous of "biologically active Tat".

According to the present invention, as "biologically active Tat" it is intended the

protein that, at picomolar to nanomolar concentrations (from 10 ng/ml or less to 1 µg/ml, preferably 0.1 ng/ml to 100 ng/ml) is capable of:

(i) entering and localizing in the nuclei of activated endothelial cells or dendritic cells, as measured in Example 1A;

5 (ii) activating the proliferation, migration and invasion of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) cells and cytokine-activated endothelial cells protein (Ref. 40, 2);

(iii) activating virus replication when added to infected cells as measured a) by the rescue of Tat-defective proviruses in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous protein (Ref. 41); b) by the transactivation of HIV-1 gene expression in cells

10 transfected with a HIV-1 promoter-reporter plasmid protein (Ref. 41);

(iv) inducing in mice the development of KS-like lesions in the presence of angiogenic factors or inflammatory cytokines (Ref. 42).

The inventor considers to be fundamental for biologically active Tat that one of the points (i) or (ii) be verified, preferably both should be verified, more preferably  
15 point (i) or point (ii) or both in combination with point (iii)a) and/or (iii)b) should be verified. The best results will be obtained when all (i) to (iv) points are verified. A Tat protein or fragments of Tat with these characteristics are capable of inducing *in vivo* a cytotoxic and antiviral immune response. In fact, a biologically active Tat with the characteristics mentioned above is capable of binding specific cell surface  
20 receptors and is taken up via these receptors. Tat uptake is essential for inducing a cytotoxic response.

Previous or ongoing studies, related to the development of a vaccine based on Tat, have not utilized a biologically active Tat protein with the characteristics mentioned above.

25 A method to obtain and to handle a biologically active Tat according to the present invention is described in Example 1.

It is also described an immunization method utilizing autologous dendritic cells treated *ex vivo* with recombinant Tat protein, or peptides thereof, alone or with a mixture of recombinant proteins or peptides (Tat, Nef, Rev, Gag) or with the Tat  
30 protein and one or more immuno modulant cytokines, or parts thereof, or transduced with eukariotic vectors containing the *tat* gene alone or in combination

with viral genes coding for Nef, Gag or Rev, or tat and the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof.

Strategies to induce an immune response at the mucosal level are also described.

Tat or its peptides, alone or in combination with viral proteins and/or cytokines is  
5 inoculated at the mucosal level to enhance and induce the local immune  
response. The HIV-1 Tat protein or sub-units thereof will also be utilized for the ex  
vivo immunization of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes isolated from the peripheral  
blood of infected subjects. The Tat antigen specific cells will be then expanded in  
vitro through co-stimulation with monoclonal antibodies directed against CD3 and  
10 CD28 and re-infused. Finally, it is also described the use of Tat mutants, identified  
in the examples, to be utilized as immunogens, as an alternative to Tat wild type.  
The Tat mutants are i) in the cysteine region (cys22) and ii) in the core region  
(lys41), iii) the mutant deleted in the RGD sequence; iv) the double mutant deleted  
at lysine 41 and the RGD. Alternatively to the use of Tat mutants or Tat peptides  
15 (wild type or mutated as the protein) in case of therapeutic vaccination, inhibitors  
of viral replication will be utilized along with the immunogen.

In this regard, for "inhibitors of viral replication" it is intended all molecules known at  
the present, or those which will be discovered later on (nucleoside and non-  
nucleoside inhibitors of reverse transcriptase, protease inhibitors, antisense RNA  
20 and, in general, all molecules able to block HIV gene expression) able to reduce  
or block the HIV replication. As previously said, different methods of immunization  
are described, which utilize Tat protein, peptides and Tat DNA in association with  
other viral genes or proteins, or part thereof, or immuno modulant cytokines or  
genes coding for immuno modulant cytokines, or part thereof. For "part thereof" it  
25 is intended segments of genes or of proteins, above described, whose efficacy of  
inducing the same immunogenic effects of the entire gene or protein is  
demonstrated. Moreover, since the efficacy of adjuvants in vaccine strategies is  
known, the present invention refers to the use of known adjuvants and of those  
which will be discovered later on, administered together with Tat (protein or DNA)  
30 and with combinations of Tat and other genes or viral or cellular proteins.  
Similarly, it is hypothesized the efficacy of different delivery systems of Tat (protein

or DNA) and combinations of Tat and other genes or viral or cellular proteins in inducing both a systemic and local immune response to Tat (mucosal immunization).

Results obtained from the inventor (not published), indicate that only the Tat protein, in its biologically active form, is able to bind specific cellular receptors and enter the cell. This characteristic is at the base of the immune response of accessory cells and of the immune cells more in general and, according to the inventor, it is of a fundamental importance in inducing a much stronger immune response than the inactivated protein is able to elicit. In conclusion, unlike the use of inactivated Tat as immunogen, proposed by some scientists, the inventor intends to utilize HIV-1 Tat, or its mutants, in its biologically active form, in order to induce a very strong immune response against HIV, able to prevent infection or the development of the disease and to permit efficient therapeutic strategies in HIV-1-infected individuals. According to the inventor, the vaccine can be delivered through systemic (intramuscular, i.d., subcute, etc.) or local (mucosal) routes. The last route is preferred when bacteria (see below) are utilized as delivery systems. The vaccine can be produced as follows. Tat can be prepared according to Example 1, it can be lyophilized and stored. At the moment of use, it can be resuspended in a biologically acceptable fluid, such as serum, plasma, or their fractions.

Transformed cells, comprising a Tat-expressing vector, or Tat mutant-expressing vector, or parts thereof, as previously described, and cells which are cultured to express Tat protein, which will be isolated for the use, are all included in the scope of the present patent.

It is intended that all Tat variants (including all types and subtypes of HIV strains), with analogous or greater activity than that above described, are included in this invention.

The present invention will be now described by means of its illustrative and not restrictive specific examples, in which reference will be made to the enclosed figures.

Detailed description of the figures

**FIG. 1A.** Inhibition of uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat protein by pre-incubation of cytokine-activated endothelial cells with anti-integrin antibodies. Cytokine-activated human umbilical vein (HUVE) cells, treated as described in the legend to Table 2A, were pre-incubated in serum free medium containing buffer or antibodies and then incubated for 15 minutes at 37°C with 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat or rhodaminated BSA.

**Panel A,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with BSA.

**Panel B,** cells pre-incubated with buffer, incubated with Tat.

**Panel C,** cells pre-incubated with the monoclonal antibodies CDw49e (anti- $\alpha 5$ ) and CD29 (anti- $\beta 1$ ), incubated with Tat.

**Panel D,** cells pre-incubated with the monoclonal antibodies CD51 (anti- $\alpha v$ ) and CD61 (anti- $\beta 3$ ), incubated with Tat.

**Panel E,** cells pre-incubated with anti-human factor VIII antibodies (control antibodies), incubated with Tat.

**FIG. 1B.** Shown is the capability of purified Tat-cys22 (Tat22) protein to compete the transactivating activity of wild type Tat protein monitored by cat assays. H3T1 cells, containing the HIV-1 LTR-CAT reporter gene (Ref. 148), were incubated with wild type Tat protein (100 ng), alone or in the presence of a molar excess of Tat-cys22 protein (1  $\mu$ g). The HIV-1 LTR transactivating activity of Tat and the capability of the Tat-cys22 protein of competing with wild type Tat have been determined at 48 h after transfection by determining the cat activity in cytoplasmic extracts (corresponding to 200  $\mu$ g of protein), as described (Ref. 41). The percentages (%) in acetylation of  $^{14}$ C-chloramphenicol are indicated.

**FIG. 2 .** Anti-Tat specific IgG production in monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein, determined by immuno-enzymatic assay (ELISA). (A) shows the results obtained in two monkeys inoculated subcutaneous with 10 or 100  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI; (B) shows the results for the control monkey (M3). Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Anti-Tat antibodies were evaluated also at week 41 in monkey M2, inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat protein, and for monkey M3.

The presence of the anti-Tat antibodies in the plasma of the vaccinated animals was evaluated by ELISA prepared and characterized as follows. The Tat protein was adsorbed in PVC- 96-well plates (100 ng/well in 200  $\mu$ l carbonate buffer 0.05 M pH 9.6) for 12 h at 4°C. After 3 washings with PBS 1x without Ca<sup>++</sup> and Mg<sup>++</sup> (PBS-A) containing Tween 20 (0.05%), plasma diluted 1:50 in 200  $\mu$ l carbonate buffer were added (in duplicate) and plates incubated at 37°C for 90'. Wells were then washed with PBS-A 1x/Tween 0.05%, followed by the addition of 100  $\mu$ l of the secondary antibody (diluted 1:1000 in PBS-A 1x/Tween 0.1%/BSA 1%) conjugated with horseradish peroxidase, for 90' at room temperature. After 5 washings of the wells, 100  $\mu$ l of substrate (ABTS 1 mM, Amersham) were added for 30-45' at room temperature. Reading was performed at the spectrophotometer (405 nm). Each ELISA included an anti-Tat rabbit polyclonal serum (positive control) diluted 1:200 to 1:6400, and the preimmune plasma (negative control) diluted 1:50. The cut-off value was calculated as the mean of the optical densities (O.D.) of negative monkey plasma +3 standard deviations (S.D.), obtained in all the experiments with the preimmune plasma. The results shown are the average of duplicate wells. >2,7 indicates that optical density values were out of scale.

**FIG. 3.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkeys inoculated with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2)  $\mu$ g recombinant Tat protein, described in Fig. 2.

Elisa were carried out as described in figure 2 and plasma assayed (in duplicate) at scalar dilutions from 1:50 to 1:25.600.

The values in the ordinate represent the inverse of the highest plasma dilution at which the test was still positive. The cut-off value was calculated for each dilution and corresponded to the average O.D. of preimmune plasma from all monkeys in all experiments, + 3 S.D.

**FIG. 4.** Mapping of the Tat epitopes recognized by the anti-Tat IgG from monkeys injected with 100 (M1) and 10 (M2)  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein, described in fig. 2. For epitope mapping Elisa were carried out using 8 synthetic peptides corresponding to Tat amino acids (aa) 1-20, 21-40, 36-50, 46-60, 52-72, 56-70, 65-80, 73-86. One hundred microlitres of each peptide (10  $\mu$ g/ml in PBS-A/0.1% BSA) were absorbed onto a PVC 96-well plate for 12 hours at 4°C. Plates were

then washed and incubated with 100  $\mu$ l of PBS-A/3% BSA for 2 hours at 37°C. After incubation, plates were washed with PBS-A/0.05% Tween 20 and then 50  $\mu$ l of plasma, diluted in PBS-A and 3% BSA, were added to each well. Elisa were then continued as described in figure 2. Plasma were obtained at week 37 after the primary immunization. Cut-off values, calculated for each peptide and for each plasma dilution, correspond to the average O.D. of the preimmune plasma in all experiments + 3 S.D. (A) shows the average results of plasma diluted 1:50 for each peptide tested in duplicate; (B) shows the antibody titers of plasma shown in (A), expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution, at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 5.** Analysis of the specific anti-Tat IgM response in monkeys inoculated with Tat and determined by ELISA. Three monkeys (M1-3) were inoculated subcute with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l RIBI; 3 monkeys (M4-6) were inoculated subcute with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l Alum; 2 control monkeys were inoculated subcute with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11 and 15 weeks. The presence of antibodies was investigated at 2, 6, 11 and 15 weeks. The ELISA method is described in fig. 2. In this case the plasma of the animals were tested (in duplicate) at 1:100 dilution and an IgM goat anti-monkey serum (diluted at 1:1000) conjugated with horseradish peroxidase was used as the secondary antibody.

The cut-off value was calculated as the average (+2 S.D.) of the O.D. values of the preimmune plasma. Results are the average of the O.D. values (at 405 nm) of two wells subtracted of the cut-off value ( $\Delta$ O.D. 405).

**FIG. 6.** Analysis of specific anti-Tat IgG production in monkeys inoculated with Tat, tested by ELISA. Three monkeys (M1-3) were inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein re-suspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l RIBI; 3 monkeys (M4-6) were inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l Alum; two control monkeys



were inoculated with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At week 36, monkeys M1 to M6 were inoculated with 16  $\mu$ g of Tat protein resuspended in 200  $\mu$ l of ISCOMs and 300  $\mu$ l of PBS. Antibodies were evaluated also at week 40 and 44. The ELISA method and the cut-off value determination are described in fig. 2. The results shown refer to samples diluted 1:50. >2,7 indicates that the O.D. value was out of scale.

**FIG. 7.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from the monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat (10  $\mu$ g) in the presence of RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) described in Figure 6. The results are shown for each plasma as the inverse of the highest serum dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 8.** Epitopes of Tat recognized by anti-Tat IgG from monkeys inoculated with recombinant Tat protein (10  $\mu$ g) in the presence of RIBI (M1 to M3) or Alum (M4 to M6), described in figure 6. Plasma were obtained at week 21 after the primary immunization. The Elisa method and the cut-off determination are described in figure 4. Results in (A) refer to samples diluted 1:50 and are the average from duplicate wells. Results in (B) refer to the titration of plasma shown in (A) and are expressed as the highest reciprocal dilution of plasma at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 9.** Analysis of Tat specific CTL. The assay was carried out as described in Table 5. Shown is an example at the 36<sup>th</sup> week for monkey M1, injected subcutaneous with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat and RIBI as described in figure 6. Squares (control) correspond to the cells incubated with unpulsed BLCL target cells; rhombs correspond to the cells incubated with the BLCL target cells pulsed with Tat (1  $\mu$ g/250.000 cells).

**FIG. 10.** Analysis of the response of delayed hypersensitivity to Tat by skin test. Tat protein (5, 1 and 0.2  $\mu$ g), re-suspended in 150  $\mu$ l PBS containing 0.1% BSA or the buffer in which Tat was resuspended were inoculated intradermally (i.d.) in a shaved area on the animal back. The area was photographed at time 0 and after 24, 48 and 72 hours. The control monkeys were inoculated only with buffer. Shown is an example of monkey M2 (week 15), inoculated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat and

RIBI, described in Fig 6. The positive reaction to Tat was evident at 48 hours after the skin test.

**FIG. 11.** Humoral IgG response to Tat in one monkey (M1) inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of the pCV-Tat plasmid resuspended in 150 µl of PBS-A, in two sites close to the axillary lymph-nodes; one monkey (M2) was injected with 500 µg of pCV-Tat, resuspended in 250 µl of PBS-A, intramuscular in two sites of the back; the control monkey (M3) was not inoculated with Tat DNA but received, as a control of specificity, repeated skin tests with Tat. Monkeys were injected with pCV-Tat at time 0 and after 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Finally, after 42 weeks, monkeys were boosted with recombinant Tat protein (16 µg) resuspended in 200 µl of ISCOMs and 300 µl of PBS. Antibodies were evaluated at weeks 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32, 37, 42, 48 and 58. Anti-Tat antibody response in plasma (diluted 1:50) was analyzed by Elisa as described in figure 2. Results are the average ODs of duplicate wells. (A) shows the results obtained from the two monkeys vaccinated with 200 (M1) and 500 (M2) µg of pCV-Tat plasmid. (B) shows the results of the control monkey (M3).

**FIG. 12.** Titration of anti-Tat antibodies in plasma from monkey M2 inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of pCV-Tat. The Elisa is described in figure 2. Results in ordinate are expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution at which the test was still positive.

**FIG. 13.** Analysis of anti-Tat IgG production in three monkeys (M9 to M11) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV-Tat and in one control monkey (M12), inoculated with 1 mg of control vector pCV-0. DNA was resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A and injected intramuscularly in two sites of the back. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At the 36<sup>th</sup> week monkeys M9 to M11 received a boost with 16 µg of recombinant Tat protein resuspended in 200 µl of ISCOMs and 300 µl of PBS. The presence of anti-Tat antibodies was evaluated at weeks 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36, 40 and 44. Elisa and cut-off determination are described in figure 2.

**FIG. 14.** Kinetics of the proliferative response of PBMC from *Macaca fascicularis* to the co-stimulation with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 monoclonal antibodies on

paramagnetic beads (anti-CD3/28 beads). The PBMC were depleted of the CD8-positive sub-population by immuno-magnetic methods. Afterwards, half of anti-CD8-depleted lymphocytes was stimulated with PHA and IL-2 (40U/ml) starting from day 3; the remaining part was left to adhere on the anti-CD3/28-coated beads antibodies, thus obtaining a CD8-depleted and CD3/28 positive lymphocyte population. IL-2 (40U/ml) was added to this cell fraction starting from day 10 of culture. The cells were counted and their viability was determined each 2-3 days. The beads:cells ratio was maintained constant. The number of cells at different time-points is reported.

10 **FIG. 15.** Antiviral effect of the co-stimulation with anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis*. The CD8-depleted and CD8-depleted CD3+/CD28+ lymphocytes, obtained from 4 monkeys (Figures 15A to 15B) by the methods described in Figure 14, were stimulated as described in example 7. The two fractions were infected *in vitro* at the day 0 with 0.1 M.O.I. of SIVmac251/63M. 15 The stimulation was performed with PHA and IL-2, added since day 3, and with the anti-CD3/28 beads without the addition of exogenous IL-2. Viral production was evaluated by determining the p27 levels (ng/ml) in the cell supernatants at days 6 and 12 after infection as described in example 7. (In light grey PHA+IL2, in dark grey Anti-CD3/28 beads on PBMC CD8-/CD3+/CD28\*).

20 **FIG. 16.** Functional characterization of dendritic cells (DC) obtained from monkey's peripheral blood. (A) <sup>3</sup>H-Thymidine incorporation at day 4 of allogeneic mixed leukocyte culture (AMLR) to compare the antigen-presenting-function (APC, determined as the induction of proliferation of allogeneic T cells) of DC and macrophages (Mø) obtained from PBMC of *Macaca fascicularis* after separation 25 on Percoll gradient and adherence on plastic. Non-adherent cells were removed and adherent cells were induced to mature into DC by adding GMCSF (200 ng/ml) and IL-4 (200 units/ml) every 3 days. Half of the culture medium (RPMI, 10% FCS) was removed and substituted with fresh medium every 3 days. After 6-7 days a morphological change of cytokine-induced cells was observed, which acquired a 30 typical DC phenotype (loss of adherence, clustering, fingers), also verified by determining typical membrane markers (data not shown). Monocytes were not

cytokine-induced and were cultured in the same medium, that was replaced every 3 days. The cells maintained the monocyte-macrophage characteristics, such as the adherence. At day 7 both cell populations were challenged with T-lymphocytes from a human blood donor, purified by Ficoll and Percoll gradient and by adherence and then frozen. Cell proliferation assays were carried out in a 48-well plate. Five hundred thousand T lymphocytes were stimulated with 5000 DC or Mø (T:APC ratio = 100:1). The culture was maintained for 4 days and fixed aliquots of the cell suspension were transferred in 96-well plates, in triplicate. 1  $\mu$ Ci of  $^3$ H-Thymidine was then added for 16 hours, and the counts per minute (cpm) of the incorporated precursor were determined with a  $\beta$ -counter.

(B) APCs, such as DC and Mø, obtained as reported in figure 16A, were challenged with T lymphocytes from another monkey, obtained as reported above for the human donor. The greater ability to present the antigen is a typical characteristic of the DC as compared to Mø. APCs were added at scalar concentrations to T lymphocytes in order to evaluate the proliferative responses obtained at different T:APCs (DC or Mø) ratios.

The following examples should be considered illustrative and not limitative of the scope of the invention.

**Example 1. Expression, purification and characterization of the wild type Tat protein (IIIB isolate), mutated Tat proteins and wild type Tat peptides.**

Many difficulties have been encountered in the past to purify and maintain the biological activity of the Tat protein owing to the easiness to oxidate, aggregate and lose activity. This is due to the high amounts of cysteine residues which can form intra- and inter-molecular bonds, thus modifying the conformation of the native protein (Ref. 159, 41). The cDNA or the tat gene (Seq. 1, example 2), which has been cloned in the pL-syn vector, provided by Dr. J. F. DeLamarter and B. Allet (Glaxo Institute for Molecular Biology S.A., Ginevra, Svizzera), has been used for the expression of the protein in E.Coli.

In order to achieve an efficient immunization with Tat for vaccine purposes, the inventor considers fundamental to obtain a biologically active Tat protein as described in the section "Detailed description of the invention". Therefore, the

methods of production and purification of Tat, described in this example and in the next examples 1B, 2 and 3, describe necessary procedures and controls to obtain a biologically active Tat protein, which is an effective immunogen to protect from HIV infection, AIDS or from the development of HIV-related diseases.

5 A first method which we used to obtain an active protein, was based on successive steps of high pressure liquid chromatography and liquid and ion-exchange chromatography (Ref: 15, 41). The protein obtained by these methods is more than 95 % pure and it is active (Ref. 41, 42).

However a good reproducibility was not obtained from batch to batch, owing to the

10 protein oxidation, which is the main problem in the commercial Tat preparations. Owing to our observations that the basic region of Tat protein has a strong affinity for heparin and that heparin prevents its oxidation, we used the heparin affinity chromatography and defined a new Tat purification protocol, as described by Chang et al., (Ref. 26). Cells (10 gr. in weight) of *E.coli* expressing Tat were  
15 sonicated in 40 ml of lysis buffer (disodium phosphate 20mM, pH 7.8; glycerol at 2.5%; PMSF 0.2 mM; DTT 5 mM; mannitol 50 mM; ascorbic acid 10 mM; NaCl 500 mM) by using an Ultrasonic Liquid Processor (Model XL2020, Heat System Inc) with three discharges, each one of 20 sec. The lysate was centrifuged at 12,000 g for 30 min. and the supernatant was incubated for one hour at room  
20 temperature with 2 ml of heparin sepharose resin, pre-washed with the lysis buffer. The resin was loaded on a glass column and washed with the lysis buffer until the protein was undetectable in the washing medium. The bound material was eluted with lysis buffer containing 2M NaCl and the eluate was collected in fractions of 1 ml. The homogeneity of the eluted protein was analyzed by gel  
25 electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE). The purified protein was stored lyophilized at -70°C and resuspended in a degassed buffer before use.

The biological activity of purified Tat protein, according to the above protocol, was evaluated by a "rescue" assay of viral infection in HLM-1 cells, derived from HeLa-CD4+ cells, containing proviruses defective in the tat gene, obtained and  
30 described by Sadaie et al.. (Ref. 140). The "rescue" assay of viral infection, described by Ensoli et al.. (Ref. 41), consisted in complementing the lack of Tat

expression in HLM-1 cells ( $2 \times 10^5$ ) with the addition of exogenous Tat protein (2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) and by evaluating viral replication by the determination of the p24 antigen released in the culture medium 48 hours after the addition of the exogenous Tat protein by commercial kits. The results of the "rescue" experiments, described by  
5 Chang et al. (Ref. 26), demonstrate that the Tat protein, purified with this method, is active and that this purification method is better, easier and less expensive for both the purity and the biological activity of Tat when compared to the previously described methods (Ref. 40, 41, 42).

Different preparations of recombinant Tat, purified as described above, were  
10 inoculated in the presence of Freund's adjuvant in mice and rabbits, according to standard protocols (Ref. 4). The results of the antibody response induced by the immunization are shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1.

*Analysis of the anti-Tat specific antibody response in sera from mice and rabbits immunized with the recombinant Tat protein.*

anti-Tat	OD-ELISA/Tat			Western
Antibody	1:500	1:1000	1:2000	Blot
Rabbit	0.651	0.400	0.175	+
Mouse	0.502	0.240	0.150	+

The recombinant Tat protein produced in *E. coli* was utilized to immunize mice and rabbits according to standard immunization protocols (Ref. 4). The sera of the immunized animals were analyzed by ELISA for the presence of anti-Tat antibodies by using three serum dilutions (1:500 to 1:2000). The results are the mean of the readings at 405 nm of two rabbits and three mice. Moreover, the sera were tested by Western blot with the recombinant Tat protein (100 ng).

- 10 The results of Table 1 demonstrate that the recombinant Tat, prepared by us, was able to induce an antibody response in both animal species, as tested with ELISA and Western blot which utilizes the recombinant Tat protein. Such antibodies were able to inhibit the internalization and the biological activities of Tat (Ref. 40, 41, 42). The pL-syn vector and the purification protocol of Tat protein are used to
- 15 express and purify the mutants of Tat described in Example 2. The biological activity of the mutated and purified Tat proteins is measured by "rescue" assays of viral infection in HLM-1 cells, assays of proliferation of KS cells and *in vivo* in mice, as described above for the wild-type Tat protein. Moreover, the mutated Tat proteins are tested in the presence of wild-type Tat (at serial concentrations) to
- 20 verify the negative transdominant effect on viral replication. The pL-syn vector and the purification protocol are used to express and purify fusion proteins of this type: Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/IL-12 or Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/IL-15 or parts of the same or Tat (wild type or mutants thereof)/other molecules (or parts thereof) able to enhance the immune response to Tat alone or associated with
- 25 other viral products. Fusion recombinant molecules are made by utilizing the sequences and the primers described in examples 2 and 3. As an alternative, synthetic peptides, corresponding to regions of Tat or of other viral products or of

cytokines to be used in combination with Tat are utilized as immunogens. The peptide sequences of Tat are:

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

5 Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

10 The Tat mutant peptides will contain the same amino acid substitutions of the mutated Tat proteins, described in the Example 2. The peptides will be utilized in combination with the peptide representing the universal T-helper epitope of the tetanus toxoid or with other peptides representing T-helper epitopes (Ref. 77).

**Example 1A. Uptake of picomolar concentrations (10 to 100 ng/ml) of biologically active Tat by activated endothelial cells is mediated by integrin receptors.**

15

When normal endothelial cells are activated in vitro with inflammatory cytokines, they become responsive to the effects of extracellular Tat and this is due to the induction of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  integrins (Ref. 9, 10). Similarly, inflammatory

20 cytokines (IC) or bFGF increase integrin expression on endothelial cells in vivo and this leads to a synergistic KS-promoting effect when a biologically-active Tat is inoculated in mice simultaneously or after bFGF (Ref. 42). In addition, IC-activated endothelial cells acquire APC function.

In this example it is shown that endothelial cells activated with IC take up

25 rhodaminated biologically-active Tat protein more efficiently and that this is mediated by the integrin receptors.

Because of the difficulty in observing the internalization of very low concentrations of cold Tat, the protein was labeled with rhodamin (Ref. 98). The rhodaminated Tat still showed activation of KS cell proliferation in the same concentration range

30 as unlabelled Tat, indicating that the labeling procedure did not compromise its biological function. Tat uptake experiments were performed as follows: human



umbilical vein (HUVE) cells were grown and treated for 5 days with IC as described (Ref. 9, 46). The cells were then trypsinized, plated on 8 well slides (Nunc Inc., Naperville, IL) at  $0.5 \times 10^5$  cells per well and incubated for 18 hours in medium containing 15% fetal bovine serum (FBS), in the presence of IC. Serum free (SF, RPMI, 1% BSA, 0.1% antibiotics, fungizon) media were added and slides were pre-incubated for 2 h at  $4^\circ\text{C}$ . Fresh medium, containing serial dilution of rhodaminated Tat, was added to the cells and the cells were incubated at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  for the time indicated. Negative controls were rhodaminated BSA in the same buffer as Tat. Cells were fixed in ice-cold acetone-methanol (1:1) and uptake and localization of Tat visualized and photographed using fluorescence microscopy. Results were evaluated by comparing the fluorescence of samples with the negative control and scored from 0 to ++++ on the amount of uptake without prior knowledge of sample code.

To investigate the pathways by which Tat is taken up by activated endothelial cells, experiments were carried out using activated HUVE cells with a wide range of concentrations of exogenous Tat, such as those previously used to induce HUVE or KS cell growth (10-50 ng/ml), or HIV-1 transactivation by adding the protein to cells carrying the HIV-1 promoter or the provirus (0.5 to 1 ug/ml).

In these experiments, for consistency with uptake inhibition experiments (see below), cells were pre-incubated at  $4^\circ\text{C}$  for 2 hours with medium lacking fetal calf serum. This pre-incubation does not affect the subsequent uptake of rhodaminated Tat.

With rhodaminated Tat, the uptake and translocation of the protein to the nucleus or nucleoli of activated HUVE cells began to be evident within 15 minute incubation with as low as 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat. The density of uptaken Tat in the cells was increased in a dose-dependent and time-dependent manner. Rhodaminated BSA or buffer showed no signals and were used routinely as negative controls.

To determine whether uptake of Tat by activated HUVE cells was mediated by the same integrins found expressed on KS cells, inhibition experiments were performed by pre-incubating IC-activated endothelial cells with cold Tat

(competitor), the physiological ligands for these receptors such as fibronectin (FN) or vitronectin (VN), or by pre-incubating the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding regions of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptors. The experimental procedure is briefly reported. After plating on 8 well slides, HUVE  
5 cells were incubated with medium containing 15% FBS for 18 h and then incubated with SF medium containing unlabelled Tat (cold competitor) (Table 1A), FN, VN (Table 1B), or monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding sequence of the FN or VN receptors ( $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ , respectively), or monoclonal antibodies directed against human factor VIII (control antibodies) (Fig. 1A) for 2 h  
10 at 4° C. The cells were then incubated with rhodaminated Tat for the periods of time indicated. The control consisted of cells treated with SF medium alone for 2h at 4° C and incubated with rhodaminated BSA. The cells were fixed, visualized, photographed and results scored as indicated above.

TABLE 1A.

*Inhibition of uptake of 100 ng/ml and 1 µg/ml rhodaminated Tat by cytokine-activated HUVE by pre-incubation of the cells with 1 µg/ml of unlabelled Tat.<sup>a</sup>*

Pre-incubation	Rhodaminated Tat	Uptake of Tat
Serum Free Medium	100 ng/ml	+++
1 µg/ml Unlabelled Tat	100 ng/ml	+/-
Serum Free Medium	1 µg/ml	++++
1 µg/ml Unlabelled Tat	1 µg/ml	+/-

<sup>a</sup> HUVE cells were cultured as previously described (Ref. 40). IC were obtained from human T-lymphotrophic virus-type-II (HTLV-II) transformed CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells or phytohemagglutinin-stimulated T cells and the supernatants used (1:8) to activate HUVE cells (passage 8-14) for 5 days as previously described (Ref. 9, 46). This supernatant contains interleukin-1 $\alpha$  (IL-1 $\alpha$ ) and - $\beta$  (IL-1 $\beta$ ), tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$  (TNF- $\alpha$ ) and - $\beta$  (TNF- $\beta$ ), and interferon- $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), (Ref. 9).

Tat protein was rhodaminated at lysine residues essentially as described (Ref. 98). Briefly, 50 µg recombinant Tat (2 mg/ml), was brought to pH 9.0 by the addition of 2.5 µl of 1M Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. Two point five µl of 1 mg/ml TRITC in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) was added and the reaction allowed to proceed for 8 hr at 4°C. Unreacted TRITC was quenched by the addition of 2.5 µl of 0.5M NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, the pH was lowered to 7.0, using 1M HCl, and the rhodaminated Tat was dialyzed against two changes of 50mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.0, 1 mM dithiothreitol (DTT) to remove the quenched TRITC. BSA or PBS, rhodaminated in the same way, were used as negative controls. Rhodaminated Tat was tested for AIDS-KS cells growth activity as described to insure that biological activity was maintained (Ref. 40).

HUVE cells were pre-incubated for 2 hours with serum free medium or 1 µg/ml unlabelled Tat in serum free medium, incubated with 100 ng/ml or 1 µg/ml rhodaminated Tat for 60 minutes and Tat uptake visualized by fluorescence microscopy. Negative controls (+/- uptake) were preincubation with serum free medium, followed by incubation with rhodaminated BSA.

TABLE 1B:

*Inhibition of the uptake of 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat by cytokine-activated HUVE by pre-incubation of the cells with an excess of FN or VN<sup>a</sup>.*

Pre-incubation	Uptake of Rhodaminated Tat
Serum Free Medium	++++
100ng/ml FN	+/-
100ng/ml VN	+/-

<sup>a</sup> HUVE cells were pre-incubated for 2 hours with serum free medium or FN or VN in serum free medium, incubated with 10 ng/ml rhodaminated Tat for 60 minutes and Tat uptake visualized by fluorescence microscopy. Negative controls (+/- uptake) were pre-incubation with serum-free medium, followed by incubation with rhodaminated BSA.

Uptake of Tat was inhibited by cold Tat (Table 1A), by FN or VN (Table 1B) or by prior treatment of the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding regions of both the FN receptor,  $\alpha_5\beta_1$ , and the VN receptor,  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  (Fig. 1A). The intensity of fluorescence in cells was reduced to levels seen with the negative control and no inhibition was observed by prior incubation of the cells with monoclonal antibodies directed against human factor VIII, used as negative control, indicating that inhibition was specific (Fig. 1A).

Uptake and nuclear localization of 100 ng/ml Tat was inhibited by pre-incubation of the cells with the monoclonal antibodies directed against the RGD binding region of the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  receptor and the  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptor. However, in both instances inhibition was not complete. These results indicate that uptake of picomolar concentrations of Tat is mediated by the same integrins involved in cell adhesion to Tat (Ref. 10). However, at higher concentration of extracellular Tat (such as  $\geq 100$  ng/ml), a non-integrin mediated pathway is responsible for the uptake of some of the protein.

In contrast with these results, the uptake of iodinated Tat with lymphocyte and epithelial cell lines was shown to be linear and in function of the concentration of Tat in the medium and was not or poorly competed by an excess of cold Tat, indicative of the lack of receptor involvement (Ref. 98). However, the concentration range of Tat in the medium in that study was approximately 1-100  $\mu$ g/ml (Ref. 98), much higher than those needed to observe uptake of Tat by cells responsive to its biological activity, such as activated primary endothelial cells. In addition, iodination of Tat may hamper its structure and its uptake by the cells and no results of biological activity of iodinated Tat were shown by those authors.

These results, that are unpublished, demonstrate that the uptake of Tat occurs by at least two pathways depending upon the concentration of the protein. At low (10-100 ng/ml) Tat concentrations, uptake of Tat is mediated by the  $\alpha_5\beta_1$  and  $\alpha_v\beta_3$  receptors through the interaction with the RGD sequence of the protein, whereas at higher concentration of extracellular Tat an integrin-independent pathway is more important. The integrin-mediated uptake of picomolar concentrations of Tat by IC-activated endothelial cells indicates a fully active protein capable of entering

antigen presenting cells, such as activated endothelial cells and dendritic cells, that initiate the immune response.

**Example 2. Construction and characterization of mutated tat genes.**

We produced 19 mutants in different Tat regions by means of site specific  
5 mutagenesis or by deletion. The sequence of each mutated DNA was controlled  
by sequencing. The cDNAs of the tat mutated genes were cloned in the PstI site  
of the pCV0 vector, described in the Example 3. Each mutant was co-transfected,  
as described by Ensoli et.al. (Ref. 41) in COS-1 cells or in the Jurkat T-cell line  
with the HIV-1 LTR-CAT plasmid, in which the CAT reporter gene is driven by the  
10 HIV-1 LTR. The results of these experiments, not published, are reported in Table  
2.

TABLE 2

*Effect of Tat mutants on the HIV-1 LTR-CAT transactivation and blocking effect (negative transdominant) on the Tat wild-type activity*

MUTANTS	Transactivating activity <sup>a</sup>		Transdominant activity <sup>b</sup>
	Mean (fold)	(min-max values)	(% inhibition) Mean
CYS 22	0.09	(0.021-0.22)	21
THR 23	0.36	(0.16-1)	
THR 23A	0.30	(0.16-0.78)	
ASN 24	0.34	(0.34-0.82)	
ASN 24A	0.42	(0.45-0.95)	46
TYR 26	0.14	(0.08-0.19)	
LYS 28/29	0.52	(0.19-1.04)	
CYS 30	0.30	(0.045-0.65)	
CYS 31	0.60	(0.27-1.09)	98
PHE 32	0.31	(0.077-0.097)	
LYS 33	0.04	(0.0027-0.068)	
GLU 35	0.31	(0.19-0.43)	
PHE 38	0.05	(0.043-.057)	97
LYS 41	0.04	(0.025-0.061)	
TYR 47	0.58	(0.31-0.8)	
57 A	0.35	(0.26-0.44)	
TAT-RGD	0.94	(0.73-1.15)	1
TAT-KGE	1.11	(0.67-1.49)	
TAT wild-type	1	1	

5

<sup>a</sup>The results are given as the increment of activation of CAT activity values induced by the wild-type Tat (Fold=1). <sup>b</sup>The results are expressed as percent (%) inhibition of the wild-type Tat activity.

From the results presented in Table 2 it is evident that for the majority of the mutants the transactivating effect of the HIV-1 LTR was reduced or absent, with the exception of the RGD mutant, which had an activity similar to wild-type Tat. We selected the 4 mutants (cys22, lys33, phe38, lys41) having the lowest (almost zero) transactivating activity and determined the negative transdominating effect on the transactivating activity of wild-type Tat. To this end, COS-1 cells were co-transfected with each vector containing a Tat mutant and the pCV-Tat vector (in a molar ratio of 10:1) in the presence of the HIV-1 LTR-CAT vector. As shown in Table 2, the lys41 and tyr47 mutants inhibited almost completely Tat activity, while

the lys33 and cys22 mutants partially inhibited the Tat activity. However, the cys22 recombinant protein (described in following Example 3) competed the wild-type Tat protein in transactivating the HIV-1 LTR-CAT (fig. 1B). A mutant in the cysteine region (cys22), one in the core region (lys41), one deleted of the RGD sequence (RGD $\Delta$ ) and a double mutant containing the mutation in lys41 and the deletion of the RGD sequence (lys41-RGD $\Delta$ ) were selected.

The sequence of the tat insert and of the mutants selected for the vaccination is reported hereinafter. A series of tat mutants is described prepared by 1) substitution of a base to obtain an amino acidic substitution and 2) deletion of a base to obtain a deletion of the correspondent amino acids. The substitutions and deletions were obtained by site direct mutagenesis. The sequences of the wild-type tat gene and of the tat gene mutants, hereinafter reported, were inserted in the pCV0 plasmid vector as described above.

With Seq. 1 it is intended the HIV-1 tat gene sequence, from BH-10 clone and its derived protein. With Seq. 2 it is intended the cys22 mutant sequence (and its derived protein), represented by a substitution of Timine (T) nucleotide in position 66 starting from the 5' end with the Guanine (G) nucleotide. This substitution originates, in the derived amino acidic sequence, a substitution of a Cysteine (C in one letter code) in position 22 at the amino-terminal end, with a Glycine (G in one letter code). With Seq. 3 it is intended the lys41 mutant sequence (and its derived protein), represented by a substitution of the Timine (T) nucleotide in position 123 from the 5' end with the Cytosine (C) nucleotide. This substitution originates, in the derived amino acidic sequence, a substitution of a Lysine (K in one letter code) in position 41 from the amino-terminal end, with a Threonine (T in one letter code). With Seq. 4 it is intended a sequence of the RGD mutant (and its derived protein), represented by the deletion of the nucleotide sequence CGAGGGGAC, from nucleotide 232 to nucleotide 240, starting from the 5' end of the wild-type tat gene. This gives a deletion of the amino acids Arginine-Glycine-Aspartic acid (RGD in one letter code) in the positions 78-80 from the amino-terminal end. With Seq. 5 it is intended a sequence of the double lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (and its derived protein), originated by the combination of the above described mutants.



**Wild-type *fat* nucleotide sequence (Seq. 1)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
5 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acid sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKALG  
10 ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**Cys22 mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 2)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
15 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
20 LGISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**Lys41 nucleotide sequence (Seq. 3)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
25 AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAAT  
AG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTALG  
30 ISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

**RGDΔ mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 4)**

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
5 CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

**Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKALG  
ISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

**Lys41-RGDΔ mutant nucleotide sequence (Seq. 5)**

10 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTCA  
GCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTGCCA  
AGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAAGCGG  
AGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTTCTCTAT  
CAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

15 **Amino acidic sequence**

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTALG  
ISYGRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

**Example 3. Construction and characterization of the DNA immunogens.**

The DNA molecules for the inoculation of animals are inserted in the 6.4 kb pCV0  
20 plasmid vector (Ref. 5). This plasmid comprises two SV40 replication origins, the  
major late promoter of the adenovirus (AdMLP) and the splicing sequences of the  
adenovirus and of the mice immunoglobulin genes, the cDNA of mice  
dihydrofolate-reductase gene (dhfr) and the SV40 polyadenylation signal. The site  
for the PstI restriction enzyme is located at the 3' of the AdMLP, and represents  
25 the site in which the exogenous gene of interest is cloned. The *tat* gene cDNA  
(261 base pairs) (Seq. 1, example 2) of HIV-1 was derived from the HIV-1 BH10  
clone (Ref. 126) and coded for a 86 amino acid-long protein. The pCV-Tat vector  
(Ref. 5) was obtained by cloning the *tat* cDNA in the pCV0 PstI site, driven by the  
AdMLP. The choice of this vector is based on that the AdMLP induced a higher  
30 expression and release of Tat, with respect to other eukariotic promoters, such as,  
for instance, the immediate early region promoter of the cytomegalovirus (CMV)

as demonstrated by Ensoli et al. (Ref. 41), and reported in Table 3.

TABLE 3. *Expression, subcellular localization, release and activity of Tat in COS-1 cells transfected with pCV-Tat and CMV-Tat<sup>a</sup>.*

Vectors	Tat expression			Tat <sup>b</sup> content			Tat activity	
	Nucleus <sup>c</sup>	Cytoplasm (%)		Total	Intracell. (%)	Extracell. (%)	Intracell. <sup>d</sup> (fold)	Extracell. <sup>e</sup> (cpm)
Positive Cells								
PCV-Tat	5-10	++	++	25	63,5	36,5	50	2.478
CMV-Tat	3-5	++	+	14,6	92,2	7,8	72	2.254
Controllo	0	-	-	0	0	0	1	1.400

<sup>a</sup>COS-1 cells ( $5 \times 10^6$ ) were transfected by electroporation with 30  $\mu$ g of pCV-Tat, CMV-Tat or a control DNA. 48 hours after transfection, Tat expression was evaluated by immunoistochemistry with anti-Tat monoclonal antibodies (given values are the mean of the percentage values of positive cells) and by localisation of nuclear and cytoplasmic Tat. The presence of intra- and extra-cellular Tat was analyzed by radioimmunoprecipitation on the cellular extracts (500  $\mu$ l) and in the culture media (4 ml) and subsequent densitometric reading (Gelscan XL; Pharmacia) of the precipitated Tat bands. The activity of intracellular Tat was measured on cellular extracts of COS-1 cells co-transfected with Tat expressing vectors, or the control vector, and the LTR-CAT HIV-1 plasmid; the extracellular Tat activity on the AIDS-KS cells proliferation (determined by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation assay) was measured in the culture medium (diluted 1:2 and 1:4) of the cells transfected with plasmids expressing Tat or the control plasmid. The results are the average of five independent experiments.

<sup>b</sup>Densitometric analysis of the immunoprecipitated Tat protein band. Values are expressed in an arbitrary scale, the total detected minimum value (intra- and extracellular Tat) being 10.

<sup>c</sup>-, negative; +, 50% of Tat-positive cells; ++, 50-100% of Tat-positive cells.

<sup>d</sup>CAT activity after 20 minutes incubation with respect to the control vector, the activation value of which being considered 1.

<sup>e</sup>AIDS-KS cell growth was measured by a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation assay (standard deviation, SD: 12%). The supernatants of the cells transfected with the control DNA had a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation of 1,400 cpm (SD: 11.5%). The

*culture medium derived from activated T lymphocytes (positive control) had a <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation of 2,400 cpm (SD: 10%).*

Table 3 shows that in the pCV-Tat transfected cells, compared with the CMV-Tat transfected cells, the percentage of Tat-positive cells and the total Tat content are higher, the amount of released Tat is much higher and is related to the total and cytoplasmatic content of Tat, and the biological activity of the extracellular Tat on AIDS-KS cell growth is therefore higher. Such results show that the pCV-Tat vector codes for a biologically active protein, induces high expression levels of the tat gene and can release from the cells much higher Tat amounts than the CMV-Tat vector.

The pCV0 vector is utilized also for the expression of HIV-1 nef, rev and gag genes and of the genes coding for IL-12 and IL-15 cytokines. The cDNAs of nef (618 base pairs, NL43 strain) (Ref. 112) rev (348 base pairs, strain NL43) (Ref. 95) and the gag genes (1500 base pairs, strain NL43) (Ref. 95), or the cDNAs of IL-12 (Ref. 165) or IL-15 genes (Ref. 56) are amplified by polymerase chain reaction technique (PCR) by using specific primers complementary to the first 15 nucleotides of 5' region (primer forward) (Seq. P1, P3, P5, P7, P9) or to the last 15 nucleotides of 3' region of the gene (primer reverse) (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). Moreover, each primer, both forward and reverse, comprises the sequence for the restriction PstI enzyme to consent the cloning of the amplified product into the pCV0 vector. After cloning, the sequence of the inserted genes is controlled by DNA sequencing. The pCV0 vector is used also for the Tat co-expression with other viral genes of HIV-1 (rev, nef or gag) or with the IL-12 or IL-15 cytokine-coding genes. To this end the cDNA of the HIV-1 tat gene of 261 base pairs (Seq. 1, example 2) is amplified by PCR with a primer forward including the sequence for the PstI restriction enzyme (Seq. P11) and a primer reverse complementary to the last 15 nucleotides of the tat gene (Seq. P12). The viral genes (nef, rev or gag) or the genes coding for the IL-12 or IL-15 cytokines are amplified by a primer forward which includes also a sequence of 15 bases complementary to the tat 3' region, permitting the gene being in frame with the tat gene (Seq. P13, P14, P15, P16, P17), and a primer reverse including the sequence for the PstI restriction

enzyme (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). Afterwards, a third PCR reaction is performed in which the DNA template is represented by the amplified products of the tat gene and of the gene of interest. The primer forward is represented by the primer utilized to amplify tat (Seq. P11) and the primer reverse by the one utilized in  
5 amplifying the gene of interest (Seq. P2, P4, P6, P8, P10). The amplified tat/gene of interest is purified with agarose gel, digested with PstI and cloned in pCV0. After cloning, the sequence of the inserted genes is controlled by DNA sequencing, while the protein expression is determined by means of transfection as described above (Ref. 41).

10 The sequences of the above mentioned primers are:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

15 Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTGAAA3'

20 Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA  
GGAAGAAGC3'

25 Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5'  
GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGTGCG  
AGAGCG3'

30 Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC  
CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT  
TTCGAAA3'

**Example 4. Inoculation in healthy *Macaca fascicularis* of an anti-Tat protein vaccine: evaluation of safety, tolerability, specific immune response and protective efficacy against virus challenge.**

The tolerability, safety and the ability to elicit a specific immune response (humoral and cellular) and protection against virus challenge of the recombinant Tat protein vaccine, produced by the described method and purified through heparin-affinity columns, was assessed in the experimental model of cynomolgus monkey (*Macaca fascicularis*). In order to induce a broad immune response we used aluminium phosphate (Alum) that has been tested in numerous models and it is the sole approved for human use. Among particulate adjuvants we used RIBI (belonging to the group of emulsifiers or composed by monophosphorylic lipid A, dimycolic trehasole and skeleton of the bacterial wall of Calmette-Guerin bacillus) (Ref. 7, 109).

In the first pilot experiment we evaluated the tolerability, the safety and the ability to elicit a specific immune response (humoral and cellular). Thus, 3 monkeys were inoculated according to the following schedule: monkey 1 (M1) was inoculated with the recombinant Tat protein (100 µg), resuspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, by the subcute route in one site; monkey 2 (M2) was inoculated with the recombinant Tat protein (10 µg), resuspended in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, by the subcute route in one site; and monkey 3 (M3) was the control monkey not inoculated. Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from all monkeys at days -42 and -35 preceding the first vaccine inoculation in order to determine the basal parameters. Serum and plasma samples were frozen at -20°C or -80°C and used later to resuspend the protein inoculum. Monkeys 1 and 2 were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. The immunization schedule was interrupted at week 37 for monkey M1 and at week 41 for monkey M2. Animals were sacrificed to study the immunological parameters in several organs and tissues (spleen and lymph nodes), such as the evaluation of the presence of a proliferative response to Tat,

and of CAF and CTL activities against Tat. CAF activity is the antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ lymphocytes, neither MHC-restricted nor cytolytic. In the same days of the inoculation of the immunogen, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn from each animal to perform laboratory tests (chemo-physic analyses, electrolytes, leukocytes, platelet counts and haemoglobin quantitation), the evaluation of the immunological parameters, such as the presence of specific immunoglobulins (IgM, IgG, IgA), the levels of Th1 type- (IL-2, IFN $\gamma$ ) and Th2 type-cytokines (IL-4, IL-10), the production of chemokines (RANTES, MIP-1 $\alpha$  and MIP-1 $\beta$ ), the lymphocytic phenotype (CD4, CD8, CD3, CD14, CD20, CD25, CD56, HLA-DR, CD45RA), the proliferative response to Tat, the presence of specific cytotoxic activity (CTL), the presence of antiviral activity (CAF), and the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) mediated by PBMC and by autologous serum. Moreover, to evaluate the in vivo presence of a cell-mediated immune response, all vaccinated and control monkeys were subjected to a skin-test to Tat.

The results of this experiment are as follows. No alterations of the chemo-physic, haematologic and behavioristic parameters were observed. In vaccinated and control monkeys, signs of inflammation and neo-vascularization were not detected at the sites of inoculation. These results indicate that the Tat protein was well tolerated by the animals and that was non-toxic at the administered doses and at the given inoculation route. In monkeys M1 and M2 the presence of antibodies of the IgG type specific to Tat were detected at week 5 after the first inoculation. At week 37, anti-Tat IgG were detectable up to 1:6400 plasma dilution in both monkeys, and, at week 41, up to 1:12.800 plasma dilution in monkey M2. The results are shown in figures 2 and 3. In the control monkey M3, anti-Tat antibodies with low titers were detected, likely elicited by the repeated inoculations of low amount of Tat that was injected in this monkey to control the specificity of the skin test reactions. In monkeys M1 and M2, anti-Tat antibodies were mainly directed against the amino-terminal region (aa 1-20) of Tat, with a titer of 1:3200 (figure 4). In monkey M2, vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat, antibodies directed against aa 36-50 and 46-60 of Tat were also detected, with titers of 1:50 and 1:100, respectively (figure 4). The ability of monkeys' serum to neutralize Tat was determined by

means of in vitro assays that measured the inhibition of the rescue of HIV-1 replication in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous Tat protein, as previously described (Ref. 41). These assays demonstrated that plasma from monkeys M1 and M2, at week 27 after the first inoculation, blocked virus replication induced by exogenous Tat, as determined by quantification of p24 antigen in the culture supernatants. Conversely, preimmune plasma from the same monkeys did not block Tat activity (Table 4).

TABLE 4

*Neutralizing activity of monkeys' plasma on the rescue of virus replication induced by extracellular Tat <sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Preimmune M1	0
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Preimmune M2	0
Tat (39 ng/ml) + Immune M1	79.12
Tat (30 ng/ml) + Immune M2	100

<sup>a</sup>The neutralizing activity of plasma was determined in HLM-1 cells (HeLa-CD4<sup>+</sup> cells containing an integrated copy of an HIV-1 provirus defective in the tat gene). HLM-1 cells were seeded at  $6 \times 10^5$  cells/well in 24-well plates and incubated at 37°C for 16 hours. Cells were washed twice with PBS, containing 0.1 % of bovine serum albumine (BSA), and cultured for 48 hours with fresh medium (0.3 ml) in the presence of recombinant Tat protein and an equal volume of the animal plasma, withdrawn at time 0 (preimmune plasma) or at week 27 (immune plasma). Negative controls were represented by cells treated only with the preimmune plasma pooled together, with the immune plasma pooled together or with PBS containing 0.1% BSA (PBS + 0.1%BSA), without Tat. In all control samples no effects were observed on the rescue of virus replication. Each plasma was tested in duplicate. The presence of virus released by the cells was assayed by quantitation of p24 Gag antigen, using a commercial p24 antigen capture ELISA kit (NEN-Dupont). The results are expressed as the percentage of inhibition of virus rescue [measured for each plasma as the average value of p24 (pg/ml) in two wells] by the immune plasma as compared to the preimmune plasma (0% inhibition). Monkeys M1 and M2 were vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein



(100  $\mu$ g and 10  $\mu$ g, respectively) resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI, and injected by the subcute route in one site.

The results indicate the presence of a proliferative response to Tat at week 22 (Table 5) in monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein, being higher in monkey M2 that received 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein at each boost.

Table 5

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from the primary immunization				
		15	22	27	32	37
M1	PHA	15.3	13.9	19.9	40.6	3.2
	TT	1.2	4.7	2.1	3.8	.2
	Tat	0.8	2.4	1.1	1.3	0.6
M2	PHA	8.1	11.6	17.1	16.8	1.7
	TT	.2	3.8	1.7	1	0.6
	Tat	0.9	3	1.4	1.2	0.6
M3	PHA	5.1	19.9	18.2	6.6	8.1
	TT	7.2	6.2	5.5	2.8	5.6
	Tat	2.1	1.4	1.3	0.7	0.9

<sup>a</sup>PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density gradient were plated at a concentration of  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/well in triplicates in a flat bottomed 96-well plate, cultured in RPMI-1640 supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (FCS) and stimulated with Tat (1 or 5  $\mu$ g/ml), PHA (4  $\mu$ g/ml) or Tetanus Toxoid (TT) to which monkeys were vaccinated. Unstimulated controls were incubated in RPMI, 10% FCS medium. The increase of cellular proliferation was measured at day 5 by <sup>3</sup>[H]-thymidine incorporation as previously described (Ref. 39, 22). Results are expressed as stimulation index and were calculated as follows: average of the test sample (cpm)/average of control (cpm). Values greater than 2.5 were considered positive. Monkeys M1 and M2 were immunized subcute with 100  $\mu$ g or 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI. M3 represents a control monkey. As shown in Table 6 no cytotoxic activity to Tat was detected in monkeys M1 and M2 immunized with recombinant Tat.

TABLE 6

*Analysis of cytotoxic activity to Tat (CTL)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M1	41	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M2	41*	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
M3	41	0	0	0	0	0	0	-

- 5 <sup>a</sup>PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density centrifugation were resuspended at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^7$  cells/ml in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% heat inactivated FCS and seeded in a 24-well plate (500  $\mu$ l per well) for 12 hours at 37°C in the presence of 1  $\mu$ g of Tat. One day later, the cells incubated without Tat were centrifuged at 1500 rpm and resuspended in 50  $\mu$ l of RPMI 1640
- 10 supplemented with 10% FCS, incubated for 3 hours at 37°C with 1  $\mu$ g of Tat, washed, resuspended in 500  $\mu$ l of fresh medium and added to the well containing the PBMCs previously stimulated. On day 2 the cells were diluted with 1 ml of medium containing IL-2 (2 IU/ml) and cultured for 14 days. Autologous B lymphocytes isolated from each monkey before the vaccine protocol were used
- 15 as target cells (BLCL). To this aim, PBMCs isolated by Ficoll density centrifugation at day 35 were seeded at a concentration of  $3 \times 10^5$  cells/well in a 96-well plate and cultured for 2 or 3 weeks in the presence of 50% of a medium collected from a cell line that produces Papiovirus as previously described (Ref. 28). Ten B cell lines obtained for each animal were expanded and frozen. To test the toxicity, the
- 20 Delfia Cytotoxic Test (Wallac, Turku, Finland) based on the time resolved fluorescence was used (Ref. 12, 13, 14). To this aim, BLCL were cultured at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/200  $\mu$ l of RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% FCS containing 4  $\mu$ g of Tat for 12 hours at 37°C. As the control, another aliquot of autologous BLCL was incubated with the same medium without Tat. BLCL were
- 25 washed and resuspended in 1 ml of RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% FCS containing 5  $\mu$ l of fluorescence enhancing ligand and incubated for 15 min at 37°C according to the manufacturer's instruction. After 5 washings, BLCL were resuspended at a concentration of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/ml and promptly centrifuged in

order to harvest the supernatant that was used to measure the background level. PBMCs (Effectors) were seeded in duplicate at a concentration of  $2.5 \times 10^4$  cells/100  $\mu$ l in medium containing IL-2 and properly diluted in a 96-well plate.  $5 \times 10^3$  of target cells/100  $\mu$ l (cultured with or without Tat) were added to each well. Target:Effector ratios were 1:50, 1:25, 1:12.5, 1:6.25, 1:3.125. PBMCs and target cells (Tat-pulsed or unpulsed) were incubated for 2 hours at 37°C with i) 20  $\mu$ l of 5% Triton to measure the maximum release, ii) 100  $\mu$ l of growth medium to detect the spontaneous release, iii) 200  $\mu$ l of supernatant from target cells to detect the background level. At the end of the incubation period the plates were centrifuged, 20  $\mu$ l of each supernatant were transferred into a new plate and incubated in the presence of 200  $\mu$ l of an Europium solution included in the kit. The fluorescence was measured after 20 min incubation with a time resolved fluorescence reader (Victor, Wallac, Turku, Finland). Specific CTL activity was measured as following: % specific release =  $\frac{[(\text{average of sample detection} - \text{background}) - (\text{spontaneous release} - \text{background})]}{[(\text{Maximum release} - \text{background}) - (\text{spontaneous release} - \text{background})]} \times 100$ . The test was considered positive when the Tat specific-release was higher than 4% at most of the Effector : Target ratios tested. 4% is an arbitrary value established on the basis of previous control experiments. ND, not determined. Monkey M2 was immunized subcute with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinat Tat resuspended in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI. M3 represents a control monkey.

ND: not done.

\* PBMCs were isolated from peripheral lymph nodes when M2 had been sacrificed. Moreover, the results demonstrate, at weeks 22, 27 and 37, the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF), measured as the ability of cell supernatants from monkeys CD8+ T lymphocytes to inhibit acute infection of the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P in CEMx174 cells, or to control reactivation of HIV-1 chronic infection in OM-10-1 cells (Table 7). CAF activity was generally observed in vaccinated monkeys as compared to control animals.

TABLE 7

*Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Week after the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	22	89.5	ND
	27	62	61.7
	37	ND	ND
M2	22	44	ND
	27	54	27
	37	48	53
M3	22	24	ND
	27	37	22
	37	75	23

- 5 <sup>a</sup> PBMC from monkeys vaccinated with 100  $\mu$ g (M1) and 10  $\mu$ g (M2) of recombinant Tat protein and from a control monkey (M3), that was not vaccinated, but had repeated skin tests with Tat were isolated by Ficoll density gradient. CD8+ T lymphocytes enriched cultures were isolated from PBMC by anti-CD8 magnetic beads (Dynabeads, Dynal, Norway) according to manufacturer's instructions. The
- 10 purity of the cultures was controlled by FACS analysis using a series of antibodies directed against specific cellular markers (CD3, CD4, CD8). CD8+ enriched cultures were seeded (in duplicate) at  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/500  $\mu$ l per well in 48-well plates, previously coated with an anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody (2.5  $\mu$ g/ml, BioSource International, Camarillo, CA) for 12 hours at 4°C, and grown in RPMI
- 15 1640, containing 10% fetal bovine serum and IL-2 (20 U/ml). 250  $\mu$ l of medium were collected every three days, for two weeks, and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium. Cell supernatants were centrifuged, filtered (0.45  $\mu$ m) and stored at -80°C. Cell supernatants derived from all time points, with the exception of the first one, were pooled and the presence of antiviral activity was
- 20 tested as their ability to inhibit viral replication in two systems, represented by acute and chronic infection, respectively. For the acute infection system, the CEM x 174 cell line was used, which derives from the human B cell line 721.174 fused with the human T cell line CEM (Ref. 143). Cells ( $2 \times 10^5$ ) were incubated in

polypropylene tubes with or without 200  $\mu$ l of CD8+ supernatants, prepared as described above, for 2 hours at 37°C. Cells were washed 3 times with fresh medium, seeded at  $2 \times 10^4$  cells per well, in 96-well plates, and incubated in 200  $\mu$ l with (treated cells) or without (untreated cells) of different volumes (50  $\mu$ l, 5  $\mu$ l and 0.5  $\mu$ l) of culture supernatants derived from CD8+ T lymphocytes of monkeys injected with the vaccine or the control monkey. After infection, aliquots of culture supernatants were collected every three days and substituted with an equal volume of complete medium previously added with the CD8+ culture supernatant from vaccinated and control monkeys. The results shown in the Table correspond to day 7 after infection and are expressed as percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication of cells treated with CD8+ culture supernatants derived from vaccinated monkeys as compared to untreated cells. Viral replication was determined by measuring the RT values, as described (Ref. 54), or the p27 Gag values by ELISA, in the cell supernatants collected at each time point. For the chronic infection system OM-10-1 cell line was used (Ref. 20, 21), which represents a human T lymphocytic line chronically infected by HIV-1. Cells were seeded (in duplicate) at  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/200  $\mu$ l per well, in 96-well plates, in the presence of anti-TNF $\beta$  antibodies (40  $\mu$ g/ml), with or without different volumes (50  $\mu$ l, 5  $\mu$ l, 0.5  $\mu$ l) of cell supernatant from CD8+ T lymphocytes derived from vaccinated or control monkeys. Cells were activated to proliferate by PMA ( $10^{-7}$  M). After 24 hours, aliquots of culture medium were collected to determine viral replication by measuring RT or p24 Gag levels by ELISA. The results are represented as % of inhibition of reactivation of infection in treated cells as compared to untreated cells. The results of acute and chronic infection shown in the Table refer to cells treated with 5  $\mu$ l of supernatant derived from CD8+ cell cultures. ND: not done.

Analysis of the delayed hypersensitivity (DTH) by means of a skin test showed that both the vaccinated (M1 and M2) and control (M3) monkeys were negative (Table 8).

TABLE 8  
Skin-test to Tat<sup>a</sup>

Weeks after the primary immunization	Monkeys		
	M1	M2	M3
10	--	--	--
15	--	--	--
22	--	--	--
27	--	--	--
32	--	--	--
37	--	--	--

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µl of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone were inoculated by the intradermal route in a dorsal area previously shaved of the vaccinated and control (control of specificity of the response) monkeys, at weeks 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 following the first immunization. Monkeys M1 and M2 were vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein (100 µg and 10 µg, respectively) in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI, injected by the subcute route in one site. Monkey M3 is a control monkey that has not been vaccinated. The appearance of a nodular erythema after 48-72 hours was suggestive of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction (DTH): ++, Ø ≥ 5 mm; +, Ø ≥ 1-4 mm; +/-, erythema without hardening; -, Ø < 1 mm.

The results of this pilot experiment indicate that Tat recombinant protein, produced and purified according to a protocol described by us, was not toxic at the doses of 100 and 10 µg administered by the subcute route. In addition, Tat protein elicited a specific and broad immune response with antiviral activities, both humoral and cell-mediated. A stronger and specific anti-Tat immune response was observed in monkey M2, vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant protein. Moreover, the RIBI adjuvant did not show any apparent sign of toxicity in the vaccinated monkeys.

Based on these results, a second pilot experiment was designed in order to determine the effects of immunization with 10 µg of Tat combined with RIBI or Alum adjuvants. Monkeys were injected by the subcute route in one site according to the following schedule. Monkey M1-3: 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI. Monkeys M4-6: 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum. Monkey M7: RIBI

250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum (control monkey). Monkey M8: Alum 250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum (control monkey). Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from each monkey at day -9 preceding the first immunization in order to carry out the exams described in the previous pilot experiment and to determine the basal parameters of each animal. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 2, 6, 11, 15, 21, 28 and 32 weeks. At week 36 monkeys M1-6 received the last boost with recombinant Tat protein (16  $\mu$ g) in 200  $\mu$ l of ISCOM (immune stimulating complex) and 300  $\mu$ l of PBS. ISCOM is an adjuvant consisting of quil A saponin, cholesterol and phospholipids which increases humoral and cell-mediated immune response (Ref. 109, 90). Monkeys M7 and M8 were injected at the same time points only with adjuvants. At each vaccination point and at weeks 40, 44 and 50, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn from the animals to analyze the clinical and immunological parameters described in the previous pilot experiment. Moreover, urine samples and vaginal swabs were collected to analyze the presence of Tat specific secretory IgA. In order to evaluate the protective effect of Tat immunization against the infection, vaccinated and control monkeys were challenged with the chimeric "simian/human immunodeficiency virus" (SHIV), strain 89.6P, containing the HIV-1 tat gene, previously grown and titered in *Macaca fascicularis* (Ref. 128, 129, 69). After challenge, animals were monitored (every two weeks for the first month, every four weeks for the next three months and every 8 weeks up to 6-12 months) for virological parameters, such as plasma p27 antigenemia and plasma and cellular viral load. To confirm that infection had occurred, anti-SIV antibodies were also searched by means of a commercial kit used for the detection of anti-HIV-2 antibodies which recognizes also anti-SIV antibodies (Elavia Ac-Ab-Ak II kit, Diagnostic Pasteur, Paris, France).

At present, the results of the second pilot experiments are as follows. No alterations of the chemo-physical, haematological and behavioristic parameters were observed. Monkeys did not show any inflammatory or neovascularization sign at the site of inoculation. A specific antibody response (IgM, IgG) was observed. At week 15 anti-Tat antibody (IgG) titers reached high levels, ranging from 1:6400 to 1:25600 (figures 5-7). The antibodies essentially reacted with the

amino-terminal region (aa 1-20) of Tat, with titers ranging from 1:1600 to 1:3200 (figure 8) as shown at week 22. Moreover, antibodies directed against aa 46-60 of Tat, with titers ranging from 1:100 to 1:200, were also detected (figure 8). The ability of the monkeys' plasma to neutralize Tat activity was tested by assaying the inhibition of viral rescue in HLM-1 cells incubated with serial amounts of exogenous Tat, as previously described in the first pilot experiment. The results of these experiments have shown that immune plasma (diluted 1:2) from monkeys M1-6 at week 15 blocked viral replication induced by 30 ng/ml of exogenous Tat, as determined by the measurement of p24 antigen released into the culture medium. Conversely, the preimmune plasma of monkeys M1-6 or plasma from control monkeys (M7, M8) did not block Tat activity (Table 9). Moreover, immune plasma (diluted 1:2) of monkeys M1-6, withdrawn at week 21, blocked virus replication induced by 60 ng/ml, 120 ng/ml, 240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml of exogenous Tat. In particular, these plasma determined a 10-fold reduction of virus replication induced by very high doses of extracellular Tat (240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml) (Table 9).



TABLE 9

*Neutralizing activity of immune plasma on the rescue of virus replication induced by extracellular Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M1	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M2	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M3	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M4	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M5	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M6	0
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 15)	89.8
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 15)	78.7
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 15)	100
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 15)	100
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 15)	70.8
Tat (30 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 15)	94.2
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M1	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M2	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M3	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M4	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M5	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Preimmune M6	0
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	96.3
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	100
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	100
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	98.7
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	99
Tat (60 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	98.8
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	59.2
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	90.4
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	96.8
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	98.3
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	100
Tat (120 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	97.8
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	26.1
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	49.4
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	70.3
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	91.2
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	94.5
Tat (240 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	86
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Pool preimmune M1-6	0

Samples	Inhibition (%)
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M1 (week 21)	32.7
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M2 (week 21)	38.9
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M3 (week 21)	57.5
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M4 (week 21)	89.4
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M5 (week 21)	72
Tat (500 ng/ml)+ Immune M6 (week 21)	71.8

<sup>a</sup> The ability of anti-Tat plasma to neutralize Tat activity was determined in HLM-1 cells, as described in legend to Table 4. Recombinant Tat protein (30 ng/ml, 60 ng/ml, 120 ng/ml, 240 ng/ml and 500 ng/ml) was added alone or together with an equal volume of monkey preimmune plasma or at week 15 or 21 (immune plasma). Monkeys M1-3 were vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of Tat in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of Alum; two control monkeys were injected with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or with Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The results are represented as described in legend to Table 4.

The ability of monkey plasma to neutralize the activity of extracellular Tat released by the cells during acute infection was tested in CEM x 174 cells infected with the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P. At day 7 after infection virus replication was observed in 50% of control cells infected with SHIV and cultivated with the preimmune plasma of monkeys M1-6. Conversely, virus replication was not detected in infected cells that were grown in the presence of the immune plasma from monkeys M1-6 withdrawn at week 44 (Table 10).

TABLE 10

*Neutralizing activity of immune plasma on transmission of virus infection <sup>a</sup>*

Sample	p27 (pg/ml)
SHIV + Preimmune M1	Neg
SHIV + Preimmune M2	Neg
SHIV + Preimmune M3	1.080
SHIV + Preimmune M4	0.602
SHIV + Preimmune M5	1.169
SHIV + Preimmune M6	Neg
SHIV + Immune M1	Neg
SHIV + Immune M2	Neg
SHIV + Immune M3	Neg
SHIV + Immune M4	Neg
SHIV + Immune M5	Neg
SHIV + Immune M6	Neg

<sup>a</sup> CEM x 174 cells ( $3 \times 10^4$  cells/150  $\mu$ l) in 96-well plates were infected with the chimeric SHIV 89.6P virus ( $5 \times 10^5$  TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) for 2 hours at 37°C in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS. Cells were washed twice with RPMI 1640 and resuspended in 150  $\mu$ l of complete medium added with 5% of the monkey preimmune plasma or immune plasma (week 44) from animals vaccinated with recombinant Tat (10  $\mu$ g) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Animal plasma were previously heated at 56° for 30 min. and analyzed by ELISA to control anti-Tat antibody titers. Each serum was tested in duplicate. At days 3, 5 and 7 after infection 120  $\mu$ l of culture medium were collected and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium containing 5% of preimmune or immune plasma from monkeys M1-6. The ability of the plasma to neutralize extracellular Tat, released during acute infection, and to control the transmission of infection in vitro was determined by detecting the viral Gag p27 in the culture medium by ELISA (Coulter International, Miami, FL). The results, represented as p27 values (pg/ml), correspond to the mean value of two wells for each serum at day 7 after infection.

Moreover, a proliferative response to Tat was observed since week 11 (Table 11).

TABLE 11

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from primary immunization									
		0	11	15	21	28	32	36	40	44	50
M1	PHA	16.96	10.50	15.27	33.8	7.2	51.5	64.3	36.05	24	65.7
	TT	11.69	1.96	3.01	1.2	1.2	1.3	0.93	1.4	10.05	7.2
	Tat	1.12	1.55	0.52	1.7	0.8	0.8	0.6	0.7	9.27	4.7
M2	PHA	31.27	25.75	21.28	87.1	25.7	56	38.2	40.3	29.03	26
	TT	1.12	1.8	0.57	1.7	1.15	1.6	4.95	1.2	1.51	2.9
	Tat	1.08	3.65	6.22	14.14	3.5	1.8	4.1	1.9	7.67	13.2
M3	PHA	22.42	7.89	16.88	36.3	148.5	42	78.9	27	53.71	ND
	TT	11.43	0.95	1.71	1.25	1.2	1.1	1	1	1.81	ND
	Tat	1.65	2.69	18.82	23.51	12.03	0.9	1.3	0.5	23.85	ND
M4	PHA	3.88	20.77	15.22	83.7	18.6	35	38.2	45.2	57.47	15.8
	TT	2.85	4.49	9.07	6.9	15.8	3.7	3.8	5	19.77	6.6
	Tat	1.29	3.01	3.24	7.9	10.1	2.6	1.5	3.9	33.61	4.7
M5	PHA	6.25	5.74	16.74	72.2	7.45	41	56.5	32.9	33.85	12
	TT	2.31	1.07	4.84	3.9	0.9	0.83	1.4	1.24	10.22	1.95
	Tat	1.80	0.66	1.76	3.6	2.22	0.8	1.14	1.3	1.33	1.4
M6	PHA	11.96	17.94	2.77	29.4	7.3	25	8.3	6.85	18.01	5.2
	TT	4.14	1.71	0.13	1.7	10.34	1.3	1.8	1.1	2.49	0.9
	Tat	1.37	1.06	0.11	2.95	9.3	1.13	1.3	1	5.8	0.3
M7	PHA	21.65	20.30	37.93	17.6	17.9	75	12.9	34.8	41.81	27.5
	TT	0.97	0.80	0.88	1	0.6	1.04	0.6	0.4	1.11	1.1
	Tat	1.78	0.68	0.73	1	0.42	0.9	0.5	0.8	1.07	0.4
M8	PHA	26.51	67.09	16.38	14.9	17.2	28.2	18.95	20.6	28.61	13.6
	TT	1.20	10.78	0.20	1.6	0.62	0.8	1.2	0.9	1.11	2.1
	Tat	1.12	0.00	0.21	1.03	0.57	0.6	0.5	0.9	1.04	1

<sup>a</sup> Peripheral blood lymphocytes were isolated, activated with PHA (4 µg/ml), the tetanus toxoid (TT) (10 µg/ml) and Tat (5 µg/ml) and assayed as described in legend to Table 5. Monkeys M1-3 were inoculated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were inoculated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M7) and with Alum (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M8). ND, not done.

A strong cytotoxic T cell response (CTL) was detected in one monkey vaccinated with the Tat protein and RIBI (M1) and in two monkeys vaccinated with the Tat protein and Alum (M4 and M5), whereas a weaker CTL response was observed in monkey M6 immunized with Tat and Alum (figure 9 and Table 12).

TABLE 12

*Analysis of CTL response*

Monkey	Week	Target: Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Average	
M1	28	5.9	4.7	4.1	7.9	5.3	5.5	+
	36	ND	14.4	8.8	4.9	6.7	8.7	+
M2	28	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
	36	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M3	28	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	36	ND	0	0.6	0.5	2.0	0.7	-
M4	28	0	0	1.1	1.1	2.6	0.9	-
	36	ND	2.7	8.3	15	1.9	6.9	+
M5	28	4.9	3.9	4.7	5.5	1.7	4.1	+
	36	0	1	0	0	0	0.2	-
M6	28	0	2.6	1.1	7.2	7.2	3.6	+/-
	36	ND	0	0	0	0	0	-
M7	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
M8	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	-

<sup>a</sup> The assay was performed as described in Table 6. Monkeys M1-3 were immunized with 10 µg of recombinant Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were inoculated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat in 250 µl of autologous serum and 250 µl of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M7) and Alum (250 µl and 250 µl of autologous serum) (M8). ND, not done.

At week 44, the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) was determined. TAA was measured as the ability of PBMC from monkeys vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein, cultured in the presence of autologous serum, to be resistant to SHIV 89.6P infection (Table 13).

TABLE 13

*Analysis of the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Days after infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M1	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M2	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M3	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M4	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M5	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M6	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M7	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>
M8	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were collected at week 44 from monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant Tat protein (10 µg) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6) and from control monkeys inoculated with RIBI (M7) or Alum (M8). PBMC, purified by Ficoll gradient and seeded in triplicate at  $5 \times 10^5/200 \mu\text{l}$  per well in 48-well plates, were grown in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS and 5% of autologous plasma previously heated at 56°C for 30 min., in the presence of an anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody (5ng/ml) and IL-2 (2 U/ml), for 48-72 hours at 37°C. Cells were infected with serial dilutions of the chimeric virus SHIV 89.6P (10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-5</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) for 2 hours at 37°C, washed 3 times with PBS-A and resuspended in 50% of conditioned medium and 50% of fresh medium at  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml/well. At days 3, 7, 10, 14 and 17 after infection, aliquots of culture medium were collected and substituted with equal volumes of fresh medium. Virus replication was determined in cell supernatants by p27 Gag ELISA (Coulter International, Miami, FL). The results are shown as the minimum infectious dose of SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) at days 7 and 17 after infection able to infect monkey lymphocytes.

The results demonstrate the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) (Table 14). An overall increase of CAF activity was observed in vaccinated monkeys as compared to control animals.

TABLE 14

*Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey ID	Weeks after the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	0	8	30
	32	53	53
M2	0	36	0
	32	60	27
M3	0	0	37
	32	55	29
M4	0	45	0
	32	85	66
M5	0	41	0
	32	ND	ND
M6	0	49	18
	32	34	41.4
M7	0	39	39
	32	71	44
M8	0	37	0
	32	76	26.8

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity mediated by CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) from monkeys vaccinated with recombinant Tat protein (10 µg) and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6), and from control monkeys inoculated with RIBI (M7) or Alum (M8). Acute infection was tested on CEM x 174 cells infected with SHIV 89.6P. The assay was performed as described in Table 7 and the results refer to day 7 after infection. The presence of CAF on the chronic infection system was tested in the U1 cell line (Ref. 47), which is a promonocytic human cell line chronically infected by HIV-1. U1 cells, seeded at  $1 \times 10^4$  cells/200 µl per well in 96-well plates, were incubated with PMA ( $10^{-8}$  M) to induce reactivation of HIV-1 infection, with or without different volumes (50 µl, 5 µl, 0.5 µl) of culture supernatants from CD8+ T lymphocytes derived from vaccinated and control monkeys. Three days after PMA treatment, the presence of HIV-1 in the culture medium was determined by RT assay or p24 Gag ELISA. The results are shown as % of inhibition of HIV-1 replication in cells treated with CD8+ T cells supernatants compared to untreated cells. The results of inhibition of acute and chronic infection refer to cells treated with 5 µl of CD8+ supernatants.



The production of cytokines ( $\gamma$ IFN, IL-4,  $\text{TNF}\alpha$ ) and of the RANTES chemokine from PBMC of monkeys vaccinated with Tat and RIBI (M1-3) or Tat and Alum (M4-6) and control monkeys M7 and M8 was also determined (Table 15).

TABLE 15  
Analysis of cytokine and chemokine production

Analysis of cytokine and chemokine production												
Monkey	Control				PHA				TT			
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES
M1	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	988/1096	-/-	948/-	1788/2564	-/-	-3.8	-/-	Nd/Nd
M2	-/-	-/-	126/-	-/-	325/280	-/-	244/172	292/284	86/66	-/-	-/-	Nd/Nd
M3	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd
M4	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	426/66	-/-	98/-	-284	-/-	-/-	-224	Nd/Nd
M5	-/-	-/-	48/-	-/-	279/303	-/-	416/-	536/608	-/-	-/-	-/-	Nd/Nd
M6	-/-	-/-	-/-	246/-	255/137	-/-	-/-	1124/268	-/-	-/-	-266	Nd/Nd
M7	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	150/169	-/-	40/-	1228/976	-/-	-4	-nd	Nd/Nd
M8	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	0/0	20/32	60/-	2160/1588	-/-	-/-	-nd	Nd/Nd

Monkey	Tat (1 $\mu$ g)				Tat (5 $\mu$ g)			
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES
M1	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	16/-	-/-
M2	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
M3	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd	Nd/Nd
M4	-/-	-/-	378/430	-/-	-/-	-/-	344/352	-/-
M5	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
M6	-/-	-5	-/-	-/-	-78	-/-	150/-	-/-
M7	-40	-3.3	84/-	-/-	-/-	-3.2	-/-	-/-
M8	-/-	-4.8	-/-	-/-	-/-	-10	-/-	726/528

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the production of cytokines and chemokines after 48 and 96 hours of culture (48/96) from PBMC of monkeys vaccinated with 10 µg of Tat and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated with RIBI or Alum adjuvants, respectively. PBMC, withdrawn at week 44 and purified by Ficoll gradient, were seeded at  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml per well in 24-well plates and grown in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FCS. PBMC were unstimulated (control), to evaluate the spontaneous release of cytokines and chemokines, or stimulated with PHA (2 µg/ml), the tetanus toxoid (TT, 5 µg/ml) or Tat (1 or 5 µg/ml). Aliquots of culture supernatants were collected 48 and 96 hours following stimulation to determine the presence of cytokines and chemokines, by means of commercial ELISA kits from BioSource International (Camarillo, CA, USA) to assay cytokines production, and from R&D Systems (Abingdon, Oxon, UK) to evaluate RANTES production. The results are shown as pg/ml at 48 and 96 hours of culture (48/96), respectively. Cut-off values were (pg/ml):  $\gamma$ IFN, 31.2; IL-4, 3.12;  $\text{TNF}\alpha$ , 15.6; RANTES, 6.25. (-), values were lower than corresponding cut-off values. Nd: not done.

Moreover, at week 15 five monkeys vaccinated with the recombinant protein (M2-6), showed a positive reaction to the skin test to Tat, with a strong delayed hypersensitivity reaction (Table 16 and figure 19). In monkeys 4 and 5 the skin test reaction was even stronger in the following weeks (Table 16).

TABLE 16

*Skin-test to Tat <sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization						
	11	15	21	28	32	36	44
M1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M2	-	+	+	+/-	+/-	+	+/-
M3	+/-	+	+/-	+/-	-	-	-
M4	-	+	++	++	++	++	++
M5	+/-	+	++	+	++	++	+
M6	-	+	+/-	+/-	-	-	-
M7	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
M8	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5  $\mu$ g) in 150  $\mu$ l of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone were inoculated

by the intradermal route in a shaved area of the back of vaccinated monkeys. Control animals were not inoculated (ND, not done) at weeks 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36 and 44 after the first immunization. Monkeys M1-3 were vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous and 250  $\mu$ l of RIBI; monkeys M4-6 were vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein in 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum and 250  $\mu$ l of Alum; two control monkeys were inoculated with RIBI (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M7) or Alum (250  $\mu$ l and 250  $\mu$ l of autologous serum) (M8). The presence of an erythematous nodule after 48-72 hours was suggestive of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction (DTH): ++,  $\varnothing \geq 5$  mm; +,  $\varnothing \geq 1-4$  mm; +/-, erythema without hardening; -,  $\varnothing < 1$  mm.

The post-challenge results indicate that 4/6 (67%) vaccinated monkeys were protected against infection with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P, as shown by the results of the virological assays (Table 17). Particularly, p27 Gag antigen was not detected in plasma of monkeys M1, M2, M4 and M6, proviral DNA was not found by PCR in lymphocytes from these monkeys and cytoviremia was negative. Monkeys M3 and M5 were infected as shown by the presence of p27 Gag antigen in the plasma, by detection of proviral DNA in the cells and by a positive cytoviremia (Table 17). Both controls (M7 and M8) resulted infected, based on the same virological assays. To further control the infectivity of the viral dose used for the challenge, another naive monkey (M13) was added to the control animals and infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P (corresponding to a dose of virus 3.5-fold lower than the dose used for the challenge of the animals in the protocol). Monkey

M13 resulted to be infected based on all the virological assays. To confirm that the animals were exposed to the virus, the presence of antibodies against SIV antigens, encoded by the chimeric SHIV 89.6P virus (Gag, Pol, RT, Nef), was analyzed as already described in this Example. The presence of anti-SIV antibodies in the monkeys that were negative for the virological parameters (M1, M2, M4 and M6) confirm that these animals were exposed to the virus and indicates that an abortive infection of SHIV had occurred in these monkeys. Monkeys that showed low anti-SIV antibody titers were studied for in vitro production of specific antiviral IgG (IVAP) (Ref. 177, 178) according to the following method. PBMC ( $2 \times 10^6$ /well) were seeded in 24-well plates and stimulated with PWM ( $2 \mu\text{g/ml}$ , Sigma, St. Louis, USA). Following 7 days incubation (at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  in the presence of 5%  $\text{CO}_2$  and 95% humidity) culture supernatants were collected to assay for anti-HIV antibody production by an Elisa commercial kit for the detection of HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibodies (Abbott, HIV-1/HIV-2 EIA Third Generation Plus). All challenged monkeys resulted positive for the production of anti-HIV Env antibodies, since HIV-1 Env is present in the SHIV 89.6P.



Analysis of the virological parameters after challenge of monkeys vaccinated with 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant Tat protein and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated with RIBI or Alum, respectively. Monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P.

5     <sup>a</sup>The plasma antigenemia was evaluated by p27 Gag ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and it is expressed as p27 values (pg/ml). Neg, the value was lower than the corresponding cut-off value (18 pg/ml).

<sup>b</sup>DNA was purified by whole blood using the QIAamp blood kit (Angiogen GmbH and Qiagen Inc., Hilden, Germany). The quality of the DNA was controlled by PCR  
10     amplification of the  $\beta$ -globin gene, as previously described (Ref. 141). The presence of proviral DNA was analyzed by semiquantitative PCR amplification of SIV gag. PCR was performed on 1  $\mu$ g of cellular DNA using primers SG1096Ngag (corresponding at nucleotides 1096-1119 on SIVmac251 genome: 5'TTAGGCTACGACCCGGCGGAAAGA3') and SG1592CgagD (mapping at  
15     nucleotides 1569-1592 of SIVmac251 genome: 5'ATAGGGGGTGCAGCCTTCTGACAG3') which amplify a 496 base pair fragment of the SHIV gag gene, as described (Ref.153). To quantify the number of copies of proviral DNA, in each experiment a standard curve was prepared using the plasmid pCMRII- $\Delta$ gag (containing a 100 base pair deletion in the gag gene of  
20     SIVmac251) as a template DNA and the primers described above that amplify a 396 base pair DNA fragment. PCR products were analyzed by electrophoresis and quantified by densitometric analysis (Ultrascan LX Enhancer Laser, LKB, Bromma, Sweden). The relationship between the OD values and the number of molecules of the  $\Delta$ gag plasmid was correlated by means of linear regression  
25     analysis (Statgraphics, Manugistics, Inc. Cambridge, MA). The OD values were linear up to 1000 molecules (coefficient of correlation = 0.954 $\pm$  0.026). The number of copies of SHIV proviral DNA/ $\mu$ g of cellular DNA was determined interpolating the OD values of each sample to the standard curve. The sensitivity of the assay was 1 copy of provirus/ $\mu$ g of DNA.

<sup>c</sup>Cytoviremia was determined in co-cultivation assays. To this aim  $1 \times 10^4$  CEM x 174 cells were cultivated in the presence of serial dilutions of CD-8 depleted PBMC under study (a total of 12 dilutions, from  $1 \times 10^6$  to  $3.9 \times 10^3$  cells per well) in 96-well plates. At days 3, 7 and 10 after infection, 150  $\mu$ l were removed to assay the presence of p27 Gag by ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and substituted with an equal volume of fresh medium. The results were analyzed by means of the Reed and Muench formula to determine the number of productively infected PBMC per million of total cells.

<sup>d</sup>The presence of antibodies against SHIV was determined on serial dilutions of animal plasma tested in duplicate using the Elavia Ac-Ab-Ak II kit (Diagnostic Pasteur, Paris, France), according to the manufacturer's instructions. The highest dilution at which plasma values were higher than the cut-off value is shown.

<sup>e</sup>Virus isolation was performed, instead of cytoviremia, for monkey M13. To this aim PBMC ( $3 \times 10^6$ ) from monkeys infected with different doses of SHIV 89.6P, purified by Ficoll, were cultivated with CEM x 174 cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ) in 1 ml of medium containing 10% FCS. After 24 hours, cells were diluted at  $1 \times 10^6$ /ml and cultivated for three days. Two ml of medium were then collected and cells were re-seeded at  $3 \times 10^5$ /ml in 7 ml. The excess of cells was discarded. This procedure was repeated twice a week for 4 weeks. The presence of virus was determined by p27 Gag ELISA (Innogenetics, Belgium) and then by RT assay. Virus isolation was considered positive (+) when both assays (p27 and RT) were positive in 3 sequential samples.

Conversely, virus isolation was considered negative (-).

<sup>f</sup>A qualitative DNA-PCR was performed for monkey M13.

The virological data overlap the absolute number of CD4 lymphocytes that resulted dramatically reduced in infected monkeys (M3, M5, M7, M8) and high and stable in the virus-negative animals (M1, M2, M4, M6) as shown in Table 18.



TABLE 18  
FACS analysis of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes\*

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P											
	0			15			30			60		
	% (cells/ $\mu$ l)			% (cells/ $\mu$ l)			% (cells/ $\mu$ l)			% (cells/ $\mu$ l)		
	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/ CD8+
M1	32.1 (1490)	53 (2460)	0.6	ND	ND	ND	30.8 (2420)	57.3 (4500)	0.54	30.6 (2460)	57.9 (4670)	0.53
M2	27.7 (1550)	45.3 (2530)	0.6	ND	ND	ND	35.5 (2120)	43.7 (2610)	0.81	29.6 (2000)	42.4 (2870)	0.7
M3	33 (1120)	39.3 (1340)	0.84	ND	ND	ND	3.1 (190)	75.6 (4660)	0.04	6.2 (240)	70 (2750)	0.09
M4	16.6 (670)	68.3 (2740)	0.24	ND	ND	ND	17.25 (2050)	68.7 (8180)	0.25	15.5 (1520)	75 (7350)	0.21
M5	36.3 (2770)	43.9 (3350)	0.83	ND	ND	ND	1.1 (90)	82.3 (1300)	0.01	4.1 (480)	75.5 (8730)	0.05
M6	35.3 (1210)	43.4 (1490)	0.81	ND	ND	ND	35.9 (1240)	45.5 (1570)	0.79	37.8 (3700)	43.7 (4280)	0.86
M7	36.1 (1610)	31.3 (1400)	1.15	ND	ND	ND	7.4 (480)	66.1 (4260)	0.11	13.7 (860)	56.7 (3550)	0.24
M8	25.7 (850)	51.3 (1710)	0.5	ND	ND	ND	3.3 (210)	76.2 (4840)	0.04	8.1 (590)	64.9 (4670)	0.13
M13	40.5 (2590)	39.7 (2544)	1.01	38.4 (434)	33.6 (380)	1.14	35.1 (1721)	32.2 (1479)	1.16	3.1 (111)	62.3 (2225)	0.05

<sup>a</sup>FACS analysis of CD4<sup>+</sup> and CD8<sup>+</sup> lymphocytes from monkeys vaccinated with 10 µg of recombinant Tat protein and RIBI (M1-3) or Alum (M4-6). Control monkeys (M7 and M8) were inoculated only with RIBI or Alum adjuvants, respectively. Monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV 89.6P. Analysis was performed by fluorescence-activated-cell-sorter (FACS) as described (Ref. 137), using labeled-monoclonal antibodies (anti-CD4-FITC, BioSource; anti-CD8-PerCp, Becton-Dickinson). ND, not done.

The results before the challenge indicate that Tat as the immunogen, as well as RIBI and Alum as the adjuvants (or ISCOM that was used as adjuvant in the last boost), were well tolerated by the animals and were non-toxic, confirming the results of safety and tolerability of the immunization with Tat obtained in the first pilot experiment. Moreover, these data confirm the observations of the first pilot experiment, supporting additional evidence to the fact that the recombinant Tat protein elicits a strong humoral and cellular response specific to Tat with antiviral effects *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The post-challenge results (4/6 protected monkeys) confirm the expectation of the *in vitro* results and indicate that an anti-Tat vaccine induces protection against infection and therefore against the disease. The follow-up of the two vaccinated and infected monkeys will clarify the effects of the vaccination on disease progression.

**Example 5. Inoculation in *Macaca fascicularis* of an anti-Tat DNA vaccine: analysis of safety, tolerability, specific immune response and efficacy of protection against viral challenge.**

It is proposed the direct inoculation of DNA of the plasmid pCV-Tat, containing the cDNA of the *tat* gene, and of the plasmid pCV0 as control DNA. Plasmid DNAs to be administered to animals are amplified in *E. Coli* (strain DH5) according to standard procedures (Ref. 110) and to protocols established by the "European Agency for the evaluation of medical products; Human Medicine Evaluation Unit" (Technical Report Series No. 17 January 1997), purified by two CsCl gradients and dialyzed for 48-72 hours against 100 volumes of PBS. DNA are then checked by restriction enzyme digestion. The functionality of the plasmid DNA is controlled by transfection of 5-10 µg of DNA using calcium-phosphate techniques (Ref. 110)

in H3T1 cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ), which contain an integrated copy of the reporter plasmid HIV-1 LTR-CAT, and, 48 hours later, by the analysis of CAT activity (Ref. 55). The tolerability, the safety, the ability to elicit a specific immune response (both humoral and cellular) and the efficacy of protection against the virus challenge following immunization with pCV-Tat plasmid DNA were evaluated in cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*). In a first pilot experiment, three monkeys were immunized according to the following schedule: monkey M1 was inoculated with 200  $\mu$ g of pCV-Tat in 300  $\mu$ l of PBS by the i.d. route in 2 sites of the back, near the axillary lymph nodes (150  $\mu$ l/site); monkey M2 was inoculated with 500  $\mu$ g of pCV-Tat in 500  $\mu$ l of PBS by the i.m. route in 2 sites of the back (250  $\mu$ l/site). At days 1 or 5 before the i.m. inoculation, 250  $\mu$ l of physiological solution, containing 0.5% bupivacaine and 0.1% methylparaben, were injected in the two sites, previously marked, where plasmid DNA had to be inoculated. This was performed in order to increase the uptake and expression of DNA in the muscle (Ref. 37, 45). Monkey M3 was not inoculated and was used as a control animal. However, starting from week 10, this monkey was inoculated with 6  $\mu$ g (5 + 1  $\mu$ g) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. Ten ml of blood were withdrawn from all monkeys 42 and 35 days preceding the first inoculation for analysis of basal parameters. Monkeys were inoculated at time 0 and after 5, 10, 15, 22, 27, 32 and 37 weeks. Finally, at week 42, animals received the last boost with recombinant Tat protein (16  $\mu$ g) in 200  $\mu$ l of ISCOM and 300  $\mu$ l of PBS. Animals were observed daily for clinical parameters as described in Example 4. Moreover, 10 ml of blood were withdrawn the same day of inoculation as described in Example 4. The protective effect of vaccination was determined after challenge of the monkeys with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV89.6P, that was injected by the intravenous route at week 65. The post-challenge follow up, still ongoing, was performed as described in Example 4. The results of this experiment are as follows. In two vaccinated monkeys and in the control monkey no alterations of clinical, haematological and behavioristic parameters were observed. Inflammatory signs or neovascularization in the site of injection were not observed. These results indicate that the pCV-Tat DNA was well tolerated by the animals and was non-toxic at the doses and inoculation

routes used in the experiment. Monkey M1, vaccinated with 200  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.d. route, developed Tat-specific IgG antibodies since week 32 (Figure 11). The antibody titers (from week 32 to week 58) ranged between 1:100 and 1:800 (Figure 12). At week 37, epitope mapping analysis (performed as described in legend to Figure 4) showed that these antibodies were directed against specific regions of Tat, mapping at aa 1-20, aa 46-60 and aa 65-80, with titers of 1:200, 1:100 and 1:50, respectively (data not shown). In monkey M2, vaccinated with 500  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.m. route, anti-Tat antibodies were barely detected (with a 1:50 titer, not shown) for the entire period of the study. The results are shown in Figure 11. The ability of plasma from monkey M1, vaccinated with 200  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.d. route, to neutralize Tat activity was tested by assaying the inhibition of the rescue of viral replication in HLM1 cells incubated with exogenous Tat protein, as described in Example 4. This assay showed that the plasma of monkey M1, diluted 1:2, and obtained at week 37, reduced viral replication induced by 30 ng/ml of exogenous Tat. Conversely, the plasma of the same monkey obtained at time 0 (preimmune) did not block extracellular Tat (Table 19).

TABLE 19

*Neutralizing activity of plasma on rescue of viral infection induced by extracellular Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Samples	Inhibition
Tat + M1 preimmune	0
Tat + M1 immune	51

<sup>a</sup> The ability of anti-Tat antibodies to neutralize Tat activity was determined in HLM1 cells by adding 30 ng/ml of recombinant Tat protein, previously incubated with an equal volume of plasma obtained at time 0 (preimmune) or at week 37 (immune) from monkey M1, vaccinated with 200  $\mu$ g of pCV-Tat plasmid DNA by the i.d. route. The assay was performed and the results expressed as described in Table 4.

The results shown in Table 20 demonstrate the presence of a proliferative response to Tat at week 42 in monkey M1 immunized with 200  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.d., whereas in monkey M2 this type of cellular response was not detected.

TABLE 20

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks after the primary immunization							
		15	22	27	32	37	42	48	58
M1	PHA	32,9	45	89,3	40,5	3,1	13,3	ND	13,1
	TT	0,8	2,7	1,5	1,3	0,6	9	1,2	1,6
	Tat	0,9	1,7	1,2	1,1	1,1	5,9	1	1
M2	PHA	11,7	18,5	21,8	32,2	1,1	6,2	7	18,9
	TT	0,9	1,8	0,8	1,1	1	1,5	1,1	1
	Tat	0,8	1,4	0,9	1,1	1,1	1,3	1,1	1
M3	PHA	5,1	19,9	18,2	6,6	8,1	77,8	ND	2,1
	TT	7,2	6,2	5,5	2,8	5,6	36,8	1	2,1
	Tat	2,1	1,4	2,2	0,7	1,5	2,8	0,8	0,9

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were isolated, stimulated with PHA (4 µg/ml), tetanus toxoid (TT) and Tat (1 or 5 µg/ml) and tested as described in Table 5. Monkeys were vaccinated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not vaccinated but was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. ND: not done.

The anti-Tat cytotoxic activity (CTL) was detected in monkey M1 at week 42 and 48 and in monkey M2 at week 48. Furthermore, a positive CTL response was observed at week 48 in monkey M3 which was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg of Tat as a control for skin tests (Table 21).

TABLE 21

*Analysis of Tat-specific cytotoxic activity (CTL)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M1	42	27,4	27,8	17,1	9,8	3,9	17,2	+
	48	ND	ND	21,3	0	11,7	11	+
M2	42	1,2	5,9	2,4	1	0	2,1	-
	48	ND	ND	ND	57	25,1	41	+
M3	42	0	0	0	1,2	0	0,6	-
	48	ND	12,4	4,2	0	0	0	+

<sup>a</sup> The assay was carried as described in Table 6. Monkeys were vaccinated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not vaccinated but was inoculated since week 10 with 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. ND: not done.

The results shown in Table 22 indicate at week 52 the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA) in both monkeys vaccinated with 200 and 500 µg of DNA.

TABLE 22

*Analysis of total antiviral activity (TAA)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Days post infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M1	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M2	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>
M3	10 <sup>-8</sup>	10 <sup>-8</sup>

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 13. Monkeys were inoculated with 200 µg (M1) of pCV-Tat by the i.d. route or with 500 µg of pCV-Tat by the i.m. route. Monkey (M3) was not inoculated but since week 10 received 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. PBMC were collected at week 52 from the primary immunization and were infected with SHIV 89.6P (10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-6</sup>, 10<sup>-8</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell). The results are represented as the minimum infectious dose of SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) that was still able to infect the cells.

The results shown in Table 23 indicate the presence of soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes, at week 22 and 27, in both vaccinated monkeys. This activity was lower in the control monkey.

TABLE 23

*Analysis of the CD8<sup>+</sup> cell mediated soluble antiviral activity (CAF)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Weeks from primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M1	22	62	27
	27	56	25
M2	22	74	ND
	27	28	ND
M3	22	24	ND
	27	37	22

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the presence of soluble antiviral activity produced by CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes (CAF) derived from monkeys inoculated with 200 µg (M1) and 500 µg (M2) of pCV-Tat and from the monkey M3. The antiviral activity was assayed on acute and chronic infection in CEM x 174 cells infected with SHIV 89.6P and in

OM-10-1 cells chronically infected with HIV-1, as described in Table 7. The results are represented as the percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication in cells treated with supernatants from CD8+ T lymphocytes compared to untreated cells. The results of the acute and chronic infection shown in the table refer to samples  
5 treated with 5  $\mu$ l of CD8+ culture supernatants. ND, not done.

The results shown in Table 24 demonstrate that monkey M1, inoculated with 200  $\mu$ g of DNA by the i.d. route, had a positive skin test to Tat at week 22.

TABLE 24  
Skin test to Tat <sup>a</sup>

Weeks post immunization	Monkey		
	M1	M2	M3
10	-	--	-
15	-	-	-
22	+	-	-
27	-	--	--
32	--	-	-
37	--	-	--
42	-	-	-
48	-	-	--
52	-	--	--
58	--	--	--

- <sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µL of PBS-0.1% BSA or the buffer alone (control) were inoculated i.d. in a previously thrichotomized area of the upper back of the vaccinated animals and in the control monkey (control for the specificity of the response) at weeks 10, 15, 22, 27, 32, 37, 42, 48, 52, and 58 from the primary immunization. The monkey M1 was inoculated i.d. with 200 µg of DNA of the plasmid pCV-Tat, whereas the macaque M2 received 500 µg of the same plasmid, i.m.. Monkey M3 (control) was not vaccinated but since week 10 received 6 µg (5 + 1 µg) i.d. of Tat as a control for skin tests. The appearance of an erythematous nodule, 48 to 72 hours later, indicated the presence of delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH): ++,  $\phi \geq 5$  mm; +  $\phi$  1-4 mm; ±, erythema without hardening; -,  $\phi < 1$  mm.
- These results indicate that the plasmid pCVTat (pCVTat-DNA) was well tolerated and safe both intradermally and intramuscularly at the given doses. Moreover, these results demonstrate that the immunization with the pCVTat-DNA induces both a humoral (although lower than that induced by the immunization with the recombinant Tat protein) and cellular anti-Tat immune response with antiviral effects. Concerning the protective efficacy after challenge (performed at week 65 from the initial immunization), the virological data, including measurements of antigenemia and cytoviremia, and determination of number of proviral DNA copies (DNA-PCR) in PBMCs, indicate



that the monkey M2, immunized i.m. with Tat-DNA, resulted protected upon challenge with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV-89.6P, whereas the macaque M1, immunized i.d. with a smaller dose of Tat-DNA (200 µg) resulted infected, suggesting that, in regard to the immunization with DNA, the i.m. route is more effective than the i.d. inoculation. The control monkey M3 also resulted resistant to the infection. However, as previously described, this monkey, unlike the controls of the other experimental protocols, received repeated skin tests for Tat in order to control the test specificity (Table 24), and anti-Tat antibodies, although at low titers (1:100), were detected since week 32 from the beginning of the immunization (data not shown). Moreover, the proliferative response to Tat in this monkey showed a weak and sporadic reactivity to the antigen (Table 20). Finally, monkey M3 showed the presence of specific anti-Tat CTLs (Table 21). Although preliminary, these data indicate that the repeated i.d. injection of 6 µg of Tat could have resulted in the immunization of the animal and in the protection from challenge. Thus, the monkey M3 will be considered vaccinated i.d. with the Tat protein and studied as such.

TABLE 25

## Analysis of the virological parameters

Monkey	Days post-challenge with SHIV89.6P									
	15			30			60			
	p27 <sup>a</sup> (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ $\mu$ g) <sup>b</sup>	Cytoviremia <sup>c</sup>	Anti-SIV IgG <sup>d</sup>	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ $\mu$ g) <sup>b</sup>	Cytoviremia <sup>c</sup>	anti-SIV IgG	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ $\mu$ g) <sup>b</sup>
M1	1796	1278	>2818.3	1:10	68.6	1048	353.9	1:50	<20	8
M2	<20	<1	Neg	1:10	<20	<1	Neg	1:50	<20	<1
M3	<20	<1	Neg	>1:50	<20	<1	Neg	>1:50	<20	<1

The monkey M1 had been immunized i.d. with 200  $\mu$ g of pCVTat, the monkey M2 with 500  $\mu$ g of pCVTat, i.m.. The macaque M3 was injected several times with 6  $\mu$ g of Tat protein, intradermally, in order to control the skin test specificity. Therefore, from the time of challenge on, M3 monkey is considered as a vaccinated monkey. The virological parameters were evaluated as described in the legend to Table 17.

The FACS evaluation of the percentage and of the absolute number of the CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes confirmed the virological data, with a clear reduction (of approximately 4 folds) of the CD4 lymphocytes in the infected monkey, already  
5 at the first post-challenge analysis (day 30) and confirmed later on (day 60) (Table 26).

TABLE 26

FACS analysis of CD4 and CD8 subsets.

Monkey	Days post-challenge with SHIV89.6P virus											
	0			15			30			60		
	%			%			%			%		
	(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)			(cells/ $\mu$ l)		
	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+
M1	27.5 (940)	40.7 (1390)	0.68	ND	ND	ND	8.1 (250)	56.5 (1780)	0.14	9.5 (360)	69.7 (2650)	0.14
M2	22.2 (490)	36.8 (810)	0.6	ND	ND	ND	16.4 (580)	42.4 (1500)	0.39	10.9 (940)	52.7 (4560)	0.21
M3	28.7 (1170)	41.1 (1680)	0.7	ND	ND	ND	19.5 (970)	48.7 (2430)	0.4	17.9 (900)	52.2 (2620)	0.34

The analysis was performed as indicated in the legend to Table 18. The monkey M1 had been immunized i.d. with 200  $\mu$ g of pCVTat plasmid DNA, the monkey M2 with 500  $\mu$ g of pCVTat-DNA, i.m.. The macaque M3 was vaccinated with 6  $\mu$ g of Tat protein intradermally.

Based on these results a second experiment was designed in which the effects of the immunization with the pCVTat-DNA were evaluated in 3 monkeys (M9-M11) as compared to the control monkey (M12) that received the pCV0-DNA. All animals were inoculated i.m. in 2 sites on the back with a total of 1mg of pCVTat (M9-M11) or of pCV0 (M12). Either 1 or 5 days before the vaccination, 250 µl of saline solution containing 0.5% of bupivacaine and 0.1% of methylparaben were inoculated into the two marked sites in which successively the plasmid would have been injected. The macaques were vaccinated at time 0 and at week 6, 11, 15, 21, 28, and 32. A final booster was performed at week 36 with the recombinant Tat protein (16 µg) resuspended in 200 µl of ISCOM and 300 µl of PBS. The animals were controlled every day for clinical parameters as described in the Example 4. Moreover, 10 ml of blood were drawn 9 days before the primary immunization and at every immunization, as described in the Example 4. In order to evaluate the protective effects of the vaccination, the monkeys were challenged at week 50 from the beginning of the immunization by intravenous (i.v.) injection of 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV-89.6P. The post-challenge follow-up is still ongoing and is performed as described in the Example 4.

The results of this experiment are the following. No modifications in terms of behavior, clinical parameters, and blood chemistry were noted both in the vaccinated and in the control animals. No signs of inflammation or vascular neo-formations were detected at the injection sites. These results confirm that 1 mg of the plasmid pCVTat DNA, injected i.m., was well tolerated and non-toxic. Anti-Tat IgG were detected since week 15 (figure 13), with titers ranging from 1:50 to 1:100 (data not shown). Moreover, a proliferative response to Tat was detected as early as week 2 in one monkey (M11) (table 27).

TABLE 27

*Proliferative response to Tat<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Stimulus	Weeks from primary immunization										
		2	6	11	15	21	28	32	36	40	44	50
M9	PHA	8.9	9.2	17.1	58.2	18	47.1	43.4	3.1	72.6	64.6	7
	TT	2.9	1.7	0.9	1	1.8	0.7	1.1	0.8	1	7	2.7
	Tat	0.4	0.5	0.6	1.5	1.6	0.9	1	0.7	1.1	7	1.9
M10	PHA	8.5	18	19.8	ND	10.1	2.2	14.7	15.2	4.4	8.4	ND
	TT	2.4	0.3	0.8	ND	1.1	0.6	1	0.9	0.6	6.4	ND
	Tat	1	0.3	0.7	ND	1.1	0.5	1	0.9	0.7	4.2	ND
M11	PHA	25.7	43.3		12.1	27.8	3.4	21.3	14.1	15.9	25.8	ND
	TT	4.2	1.9	1.3	0.9	1.1	3.6	1.2	0.8	0.3	1.8	ND
	Tat	5.1	0.8	1.6	0.7	1.1	1.1	1.2	0.7	0.7	3	ND
M12	PHA	28.7	30.9	41	50.7	30.8	7.6	43	22.6	34.6	19.9	55.1
	TT	3.2	1.6	0.9	5.2	1.6	1.6	1.3	1.1	1	0.7	3.1
	Tat	3.2	1.4	0.8	1.3	1	1.6	1	0.8	1	1.6	1.3

<sup>a</sup> PBMC were isolated, stimulated with PHA (4µg/mL), or tetanus toxoid (TT, 10 µg/mL), or Tat (1 and 5 µg/mL) and assayed as described in table 5. The monkeys were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). ND, not determined.

Anti-Tat CTLs were detected at week 32 post-immunization (Table 28).

10 TABLE 28

*Analysis of the anti-Tat cytotoxic activity (CTLs)<sup>a</sup>*

Monkey	Week	Target : Effector ratio						CTL Activity
		1:50	1:25	1:12,5	1:6,25	1:3,125	Media	
M9	32	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	50	4,2	0	0	0	0,9	1	-
M10	32	0	0	9,9	2,7	0	2,5	-
	50	3,5	0	2,3	0	0	1,1	-
M11	32	0	10,5	8,9	3,5	0,9	4,7	+
	50	0	0	0	3,8	0,3	0,8	-
M12	32	0	0	0	0	0	0	-
	50	0	0	0	0	0	0	-

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 6. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control).

PBMCs obtained from the monkey M11 at week 44 resulted resistant to in vitro infection with serial dilutions of the chimeric SHIV-89.6P virus by an assay described previously that detects the presence of total antiviral activity (TAA). In fact, TAA is evaluated as the capability of PBMCs from monkeys vaccinated with pCVTat-DNA, grown in the presence of autologous serum, to resist to the infection with serial virus dilutions. (Table 29)

TABLE 29

Analysis of the total antiviral activity (TAA)

Monkey	Days post infection	
	7	17
	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)	Minimum infectious dose (TCID <sub>50</sub> /cell)
M9	10 <sup>-2</sup>	>10 <sup>-2</sup> **
M10	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>
M11	>10 <sup>-2</sup> *	>10 <sup>-2</sup> *
M12	10 <sup>-2</sup>	>10 <sup>-2</sup> ***

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 13. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). PBMCs were withdrawn at week 44 from the first immunization and infected in vitro with 10<sup>-2</sup>, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-5</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub> of the SHIV-89.6P. The results are expressed as the minimum infectious dose of the SHIV (TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell) still able to infect the cells.

\*No culture resulted infected at the highest SHIV concentration used in the assay (10<sup>-2</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell). \*\*The cultures became negative on day 17 post-infection.

The results shown in table 30 demonstrate the presence of the soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by the CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes in the vaccinated monkeys and in the control monkey (M12) injected with the empty vector (pCV0).

TABLE 30

Analysis of the soluble antiviral activity (CAF) mediated by the CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF) <sup>a</sup>

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization	% inhibition of viral replication	
		Acute infection	Chronic infection
M9	0	21	14.6
	36	77	2.6
M10	0	40	13.8
	36	67	25
M11	0	49	19
	36	42	14
M12	0	65	23
	36	62	14

<sup>a</sup> Analysis of the presence of the soluble antiviral activity mediated by the CD8+ T lymphocytes (CAF). PBMCs were obtained from the three monkeys (M9-M11) injected with 1 mg of pCVTat and from the control monkey (M12) inoculated with 1 mg of pCV0. The acute infection assay was carried out in CEMx174 cells infected with the SHIV-89.6P, as described in Table 14. The chronic infection assay was carried out in U1 cells chronically infected with the HIV-1, as described in Table 14. The results are expressed as the percentage (%) of inhibition of viral replication in cells cultured in the presence or in the absence (control) of 5  $\mu$ L of supernatants from CD8+ T cells.

The production of cytokines ( $\gamma$ IFN, IL-4, TNF $\alpha$ ) and of the chemokine RANTES was evaluated at week 44 in PBMCs from both the vaccinated and control monkeys (Table 31).



TABLE 31

Analysis of the production of cytokines and of RANTES a

Monkey	Control					PHA					TT				
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	
M9	-/-	-/3.5	-/-	-/-		312/204	-/-	250/-	536/2288		-/-	-/-	-/-	nd/nd	
M10	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	
M11	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		420/183	-/-	388/-	4336/3124		-/-	-/-	-/nd	nd/nd	
M12	-/-	-/3.2	-/-	-/-		430/932	-/-	-/-	1936/2576		-/-	-/-	218/nd	nd/nd	

Monkey	Tat (1 $\mu$ g)					Tat (5 $\mu$ g)					RANTES				
	$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES		$\gamma$ IFN	IL-4	TNF $\alpha$	RANTES	
M9	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	
M10	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd		nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	nd/nd	
M11	-/-	-/4	-/-	544/368		-/-	-/3.5	-/-	-/3.5		-/-	-/-	-/-	2124/-	
M12	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-		-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-	

*<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 15. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). PBMCs were withdrawn at week 44 after the first immunization. Results are shown as pg/ml of cytokines and RANTES detected at 48 and 96 hours (48/96) respectively.*

5 *(-), the values were below the cut-off value. The cut-off values (pg/ml) were:  $\gamma$ IFN: 31.2; IL-4: 3.12; TNF- $\alpha$ : 15.6; RANTES: 62.5. ND: not done.*

The results show the presence of a weak reactivity to the skin tests with Tat in one monkey (M9) at week 11 (Table 32)

TABLE 32

Skin test to Tat <sup>a</sup>

Monkey	Weeks from the primary immunization						
	11	15	21	28	32	36	44
M9	+/-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
M12	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND

<sup>a</sup>Tat (1 and 5 µg) in 150 µL of PBS-A, 0.1% BSA or the buffer alone (control) were inoculated i.d. in a previously thrichotomized area of the upper back of the vaccinated animals but not in the control monkeys at weeks 11, 15, 21, 28, 32, 36, and 44 from the initial immunization. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The appearance, 48 to 72 hours later, of an erythematous nodule indicated the presence of delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH): ++,  $\phi \geq 5$  mm; +  $\phi$  1-4 mm;  $\pm$ , erythema without hardening; -,  $\phi < 1$  mm.

The post-challenge results indicate that all the vaccinated animals were protected from the infection with 10 MID<sub>50</sub> of the SHIV-89.6P, as indicated by the virological tests (plasma antigenemia, determination of the proviral DNA copy number, cytoviremia) that were all negative (Table 33). Moreover, the presence of anti-SIV antibodies in the monkey M11 indicated the exposure to the virus or an abortive infection. On the contrary, they were not detected in the remaining monkeys, therefore we decided to carry out the *in vitro* antibody production assay (IVAP) as well as the lymphoproliferative response to SIV antigens. These assays are ongoing and preliminary data indicate the presence of anti-HIV Env antibodies in all the DNA-inoculated monkeys. The macaques will be inoculated with a higher dose of the virus, since even the control animal M12 resulted resistant to infection. This monkey had been vaccinated with the empty vector pCV0. Recent data from the literature have demonstrated the adjuvant role played by certain DNA sequences that are much more frequent in bacteria than in eukariotic cells, and that, similarly to LPS and mannose, represent a strong stimulus for the natural

immunity (Ref. 179). Thus, it is conceivable that the protection observed in the monkey M12 may be due to the induction of a non-specific antiviral immunity by these bacterial sequences, such as the production of IFN $\alpha$ , IFN $\beta$ , IL-12, and IL-18, known to exert immuno modulant and antiviral functions. This is strongly suggested by the presence in this macaque of TAA (Table 29) and CAF (Table 30) antiviral activities in the absence of anti-Tat specific humoral and cellular immunity. In fact, these assays also measure non-antigen specific antiviral activities. The naive monkey M13, inoculated with a 3.5 fold lower virus dose than that injected in the macaque M12, resulted infected. These results confirm that 10 MID<sub>50</sub> challenge dose with which M12 monkey was inoculated were infectious (Table 33). On the basis of this result the inventor plans to utilize the pCV0 vector or parts of it as an adjuvant.

TABLE 33

## Analysis of the virological parameters

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P virus											
	15				30				60			
	p27* (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg) <sup>b</sup>	cytoviremia <sup>c</sup>	Anti-SIV IgG <sup>d</sup>	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg)	cytoviremia	Anti-SIV IgG	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR (copies/ µg)	Cytoviremia	Anti-SIV IgG
M9	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M10	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M11	<20	<1	Neg	1:2	<20	<1	Neg	1:2	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M12	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg	<20	<1	Neg	Neg
M13	1876	+/	+ <sup>e</sup>	ND	<20	+/	ND	1:1600	<20	43	ND	1:3200

a,b,c,d The assays were performed as described in Table 17. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV89.6P. <sup>e</sup> Viral isolation was performed in place of cytoviremia and resulted positive.

<sup>f</sup> DNA PCR was not quantitative and resulted positive.

FACS analysis of the CD4 and CD8 (Table 34) subsets confirmed the virological data.

In fact, a significant decline of the percentage and absolute number of the CD4 lymphocytes was observed at 15 and 60 days post-challenge only for the  
5 naive monkey M13, resulted infected as indicated by the positiveness of plasma antigenemia, proviral DNA, and virus isolation. (Table 33).

TABLE 34

FACS analysis of CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes.

Monkey	Days post challenge with SHIV89.6P											
	0				15				30			
	% (cells/ $\mu$ l)				% (cells/ $\mu$ l)				% (cells/ $\mu$ l)			
	CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+		CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+		CD4+	CD8+	CD4+/CD8+	
M9	21.5 (1500)	37.6 (2630)	0.57	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	26.4 (1340)	51.6 (2610)	0.51	CD4+/CD8+ 30.6 (2000)
M10	39.5 (1050)	36.3 (960)	1.1	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	34.8 (1730)	41.8 (2080)	0.83	CD4+/CD8+ 31.6 (3760)
M11	35.8 (1080)	37.7 (1140)	0.95	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	28.7 (1330)	36.7 (1710)	0.78	CD4+/CD8+ 24.5 (890)
M12	30.9 (1860)	46 (2760)	0.67	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	26.7 (1300)	49.6 (2420)	0.54	CD4+/CD8+ 23.7 (2620)
M13	40.5 (2590)	39.7 (2544)	1.01	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	35.1 (1721)	32.2 (1479)	1.16	CD4+/CD8+ 3.1 (111)
												CD4+/CD8+ 45.5 (2980)
												CD4+/CD8+ 52.2 (6200)
												CD4+/CD8+ 48.7 (1770)
												CD4+/CD8+ 52.1 (5760)
												CD4+/CD8+ 62.3 (2225)

<sup>a</sup>The assay was performed as described in Table 18. The macaques were injected i.m. with 1 mg of either pCVTat (M9-M11) or pCV0 (M12, control). The monkey M13 was a naive animal infected with 2.85 MID<sub>50</sub> of SHIV89.6P.

These results demonstrate that the vaccination with the pCVTat plasmid was well tolerated and non-toxic and confirm those on the safety and tolerability of the DNA vaccination, obtained in the first pilot study. In addition, these data provide evidence that the pCVTat-DNA plasmid induces a specific humoral (although  
5 weaker than that induced by the Tat protein) and cellular immune response with antiviral effects, part of which may be due to particular DNA sequences present in the pCV0 vector that could function as adjuvants.

Immunization protocols that will include combinations of the DNA coding for other HIV-1 and cytokines genes described in the Example 3 will be evaluated. In these  
10 experiments SHIV containing the tat, rev, and nef genes of HIV will be used (Ref. 146, 85, 142, 65, 94, 129).

The pCV0 and pCVTat plasmids will be inoculated in the animals utilizing other delivery systems that may improve the immunization effectiveness, such as liposomes, nanoparticles, erythrocytes, gene gun delivery, or Tat DNA will be  
15 delivered through the utilization of herpes vectors as described in the prophetic Examples 9 and 10.

#### **Example 6. Therapeutic vaccine.**

A protocol of vaccination, based both on Tat-protein and Tat DNA, was made to evaluate the safety and toxicity of anti-Tat vaccine in already infected individuals.  
20 The experiment was performed on monkeys infected with decreasing doses of SHIV89.6P and with immunodeficiency disease (AIDS). The viral stock used for the infection was obtained from spleen and lymph nodes of a cynomolgus monkey infected 14 days before. Lymphocytes, purified by mechanical separation, were divided into two aliquots ( $1.5 \times 10^6$  cells/ml each). One aliquot was depleted of  
25 CD8+ T-cells by using immuno-magnetic beads (Dyna, Norway). Both cultures were stimulated with PHA (1  $\mu$ g/ml) for three days and seeded at the concentration of  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml in presence of 50U/ml of IL-2. Viral replication was detected by the presence of reverse transcriptase (RT) in the culture medium harvested after three days. Before testing, the supernatant was clarified and  
30 ultracentrifuged at 100,000 rpm, for 11 minutes at +4°C (Beckman TL-100 ultracentrifuge) and pellet was lysed. Thirty  $\mu$ l of the suspension were added to



the reaction mix (TRIS HCl 1M, pH 8; MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.5 M; KCl, 1M; Poly A 1mg/ml; oligo-dT 12-18 100 µg/ml; DTT 0.02 M; 1,2 <sup>3</sup>[H]-Methyl thymidine tri-phosphate 1mCi/ml) and incubated at 37°C for 60 minutes. The reaction was stopped by adding 500 µl of Na Pyrophosphate 0.1 M pH5 and 600 µl of tri-chloro-acetic acid (TCA) 20% and the sample was spotted on a 0.45 µm filter (Millipore) and then read with a β-counter after the addition of 5 ml of scintillation cocktail (Filter Count, Packard).

Culture media containing more than 20,000 cpm were centrifuged and supplemented with 10% human serum AB. The virus was concentrated by ultracentrifugation at 30,000 rpm (90 minutes at 4°C), resuspended in RPMI 1640 containing 10% of human serum (AB group) and then stored in small aliquots in liquid nitrogen. The viral stock was titred in vitro on the human cell lines CEMx174 and C8166 (3 x 10<sup>3</sup> TCID<sub>50</sub>/cell), and in vivo on cynomolgus monkeys (3.17 x 10<sup>5.69</sup> MID<sub>50</sub>/ml).

A first pilot experiment has been performed on 7 monkeys infected i.v. with SHIV89.6P prepared as described above. Each monkey received 1 ml of SHIV diluted in saline buffer supplemented with 2% of human serum (AB, Rh-) according to the following protocol. One monkey (IM1) was inoculated with 1:500 of viral dilution; two monkeys (IM2, IM3) received the dilution 1:5,000; two monkeys (IM4, IM5) were inoculated with 1:50,000; the monkey IM6 received the 1:500,000 dilution; the last monkey (IM7) received 1:5,000,000 dilution. Each monkey was bled at day 7 before infection with SHIV for determination of the basal parameters. Serum and plasma samples were frozen at -20°C or -80°C and then used to re-suspend the protein inoculum. At time 0 all monkeys were inoculated with SHIV89.6P. Monkeys were checked daily. Moreover, at day 0 and after 2 and 4 weeks they were bled and 10 ml of blood were used for hematochemical determinations (chemical-clinical analysis, electrolytes, white cells and platelets counts, hemoglobin) and virological and immunological analysis (i.e. plasma p27 Ag determination and viral load in plasma and cells). At week 4 post-infection, 6 monkeys (IM1-6) were infected. The monkey IM7, which received the lowest viral dilution (1:5,000,000) was SHIV-negative (Table 35).

TABLE 35

Detection of the presence of SHIV89.6P in monkeys infected with serial viral dilutions

Monkey	SHIV 89.6P dilution	Weeks post.infection					
		0		2		4	
		Viral isolation <sup>a</sup>	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>	Viral isolation	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>	Viral isolation	p27 (pg/ml) <sup>b</sup>
IM1	1:500	ND	ND	+	>450	+	47
IM2	1:5.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	161.8
IM3	1:5.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	6.67
IM4	1:50.000	ND	ND	+	<20	+	>450
IM5	1:50.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	166.7
IM6	1:500.000	ND	ND	+	>450	+	0
IM7	1:5.000.000	ND	ND	-	0	-	0

- 5 <sup>a</sup>Virus isolation and <sup>b</sup> plasma p27 Ag (pg/ml) were carried out as described in the legend to table 17. Monkeys were inoculated i.v. with serial dilutions of the virus stock, as described in text.

After 7 weeks from infection, all the animals showing serious immunodeficiency symptoms were vaccinated with both the Tat protein and DNA of the plasmid pCVTat according to the following protocol. Monkeys IM1, IM3, IM5 and IM6 received the Tat protein (20µg), dissolved in 250 µl of PBS-A supplemented with 0,1% BSA and 20% of autologous plasma and then added to 250µl of Alum adjuvant. The protein inoculum was performed sub-cutaneously on a single site of monkey's upper back, whether the plasmid pCVTat (1 mg), resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A, was injected i.m. in a different site in the back. Monkeys IM2 and IM4 (controls) were injected with 250 µl of Alum and 250 µl of PBS-A, 0.1% BSA 20% autologous plasma, s.c., in a site of the upper back and with pCV-0 (1 mg) resuspended in 1 ml of PBS-A, i.m., in a site in the upper back different from the previous one. The uninfected monkey IM7 was not vaccinated. The schedule of vaccination consisted of a time 0, corresponding to 7 weeks after SHIV infection, and 1, 4, 5, 10, 11, 13, 14, 17, 18 weeks on. To evaluate the effects of this vaccination on disease progression, each macaque was daily checked for the presence or signs of disease and at time 0 and after 3, 8, 12, 16 and 21 weeks, 10

ml of blood were withdrawn for laboratory tests (chemical-clinical analysis, electrolytes, white cells and platelets counts, hemoglobin), for the evaluation of immunological status (presence of specific immunoglobulins, measure of Th1 and Th2 cytokines, chemokines production), for characterization of lymphocytes by FACS analysis (CD4, CD8, CD28, CD40, CD86, CD20, CD2, CD26 and CD20), and finally for evaluation of virological parameters (proviral DNA detection by semi-quantitative PCR, plasma viral load by competitive RT-PCR, plasma p27 Gag antigen by ELISA and presence of anti-SHIV Ab, as described previously). Other boosts will be made on the basis of the immunological, virological and clinical results.

After the last inoculum, monitoring will be scheduled monthly and at the appearance of clinical modifications. PBMC, sera, plasma and urine samples will be frozen at every time point for future tests as previously described.

The results already available from this experiment, obtained at week 8 after immunization, are described. In both the vaccinated asymptomatic and control monkeys no signs of inflammation and neo-angiogenesis in the inoculation sites or general symptoms of disease were observed. No modifications of the clinical status were evident in the monkeys already symptomatic. Moreover, no activation of viral replication was detected. Taken together these results indicate the absence of toxicity or increased viral replication in the monkeys vaccinated with a biologically active Tat protein or DNA (Table 36).

TABLE 36

*Analysis of virological parameters*

Monkey	Weeks from the beginning of vaccination					
	0		3		8	
	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR copies/ $\mu$ g	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR Copies/ $\mu$ g	p27 (pg/ml)	DNA PCR Copies/ $\mu$ g
IM1	12.3	68	17.3	52	141	41
IM3	0	61	0	48	0	71
IM5	97.1	20	21.7	15	23.6	95
IM6	0	43	0	55	0	24
IM2	21.2	ND	36.6	53	27.4	78
IM4	81	195	22	288	15.4	135
IM7	ND	ND	ND	ND	0	>1

The tests were performed as described in Table 17. Monkeys IM1, IM3, IM5 and IM6 were injected with Tat protein (20 $\mu$ g) and Alum adjuvant s.c. and with pCVTat (1mg) i.m.. Monkeys IM2 and IM4 (infected controls) were injected with Alum adjuvant s.c. and pCV0 (1mg) i.m.. IM7 was an uninfected naive monkey.

FACS analyses indicate that no modifications were observed in CD4+ and CD8+ T-lymphocytes after vaccination (Table 37).

TABLE 37

FACS analysis of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes

Monkey	Time 0		Weeks from beginning of vaccination									
	0		3					8				
	% (cells/ $\mu$ l)		CD4+		CD8+		CD4/ CD8	CD4 (cells/ $\mu$ l)		CD8 (cells/ $\mu$ l)		CD4/CD8
IM1	25.39 (1264)	36.8 (1831)	3.3 (101)	64.16 (1963)	0.05	2.32 (52)	63.34 (1431)	0.04	3.41 (96)	55.41 (1559)	0.06	
IM3	19.26 (869)	26.45 (1193)	2.84 (74)	58.22 (1526)	0.05	3.21 (92)	58.16 (1663)	0.05	3.18 (91)	50.12 (1434)	0.06	
IM5	24.75 (580)	58.04 (1361)	2.28 (38)	57.3 (946)	0.04	2.89 (48)	55.6 (917)	0.05	2.15 (60)	54.3 (1527)	0.04	
IM6	40.46 (2590)	39.74 (2544)	3.12 (111)	62.3 (2225)	0.05	2.75 (138)	65.40 (3290)	0.04	2.3 (73)	52.18 (1659)	0.04	
IM2	42 (1787)	34.7 (1476)	2.41 (68)	58.12 (1632)	0.03	2.7 (121)	57.6 (2580)	0.05	1.89 (66)	50.6 (1763)	0.04	
IM4	30.72 (1589)	27.76 (1680)	2.12 (113)	61.13 (3248)	0.03	1.92 (90)	60.3 (2828)	0.03	3.12 (164)	53.12 (2790)	0.06	
IM7	17.02 (871)	55.8 (2857)	ND	ND	ND	20.26 (770)	51.40 (1957)	0.39	24.1 (868)	50.43 (1842)	0.48	

FACS analysis was performed as described in the legend to Table 18. Monkeys IM1, IM3, IM5 and IM6 were injected with Tat protein (20 $\mu$ g) and Alum adjuvant s.c. and with pCVTat (1mg) i.m.. Monkeys IM2 and IM4 (infected controls) were injected with Alum adjuvant s.c. and pCV0 (1mg) i.m.. IM7 was an uninfected naive monkey.

These data confirm that both Tat protein and pCVTat plasmid, at the used doses and inoculation routes, were well tolerated and without any toxic effect in the vaccinated monkeys and, moreover, they did not increase viral replication nor the CD4 T cell decline in infected animals.

5 **Example 7. Co-stimulation of purified CD4+ lymphocytes from SIV-infected monkeys, with anti-CD3/28 coated beads results in a logarithmic expansion of the cell number without significant viral replication and transmission.**

Peripheral blood mononuclear cells were depleted of CD8+ cell-population by using anti-CD8 immuno-magnetic beads (DynaI, Oslo; Dynabeads M-450 CD8).

- 10 The purification degree was evaluated by FACS analysis and considered as acceptable if higher than 95%. The CD8-depleted cells (named CD8-PBMC) were grown in the presence of PHA (2µg/ml) and IL-2 (40U/ml) or immuno-magnetic beads previously coated with two monoclonal antibodies against the CD3 (Clone FN18, BioSource) and the CD28 (Clone 9.3) antigens (anti-CD3/28 beads). To
- 15 improve the binding of anti-CD3/28 beads with target cells, the incubation was performed on a rotating wheel disposal. Then, the bound cells (named CD8-CD3+CD28+) were selected with a magnet and seeded in culture. Three times a week, cell concentrations were adjusted to the starting level and IL-2 was added where indicated; moreover, regarding the cells stimulated with anti-CD3/28 beads,
- 20 preliminary results suggest that the continuous stimulation regimen coupled with a constant control of the bead:cell ratio, adjusted at every time point, is highly effective in the induction of the proliferative response. Our previous studies have shown that in the absence of exogenous IL-2, the CD8-CD3+CD28+ cell population proliferates better than CD8-PBMC stimulated with anti-CD3/28 beads.
- 25 Moreover, the addition of exogenous IL-2 (40U/ml, three times per week) significantly increases the kinetic of proliferation both in terms of number of cells and duration of effect (Figure 14).

- To evaluate the antiviral activity of this stimulation, CD8-CD3+CD28+ purified cells from 4 uninfected monkeys were infected at day 0 with 0.1 M.O.I. of SIV and then
- 30 cultivated under continuous stimulation. CD8-PBMC stimulated with PHA and IL-2 were the control of the experiment. Viral infection was followed through detection

of p27 Gag antigen in culture supernatant by a commercial ELISA (Coulter, Hialeah, FL). The p27 Gag antigen levels (ng/ml) were measured on day 6 and 12 after infection. As shown in figure 15, there is a significant difference in the infection in the two stimulation regimens. In fact, at day 6 after infection, the p27 antigen in the CD3/28 beads-stimulated cultures was 40% to 87% lower than cultures stimulated with PHA plus IL-2, and at day 12 this difference was increased in 2 out of 4 monkeys. This suggests a reduction of viral infection susceptibility. In only one case (MK 9401) we observed a viral propagation in both stimulation regimens.

The results here described demonstrate that *Macaca fascicularis* is a good model for the ex vivo expansion of lymphocyte sub-population by anti-CD3/28 beads co-stimulation, without viral replication. This represents the rationale for the therapeutic vaccine we propose, based on expansion and re-infusion of autologous anti-viral specific lymphocytes, in HIV-infected individuals.

**Example 8. Use of dendritic cells for vaccination.**

The dendritic cells (DC) and macrophages, in a lesser extent, are able to efficaciously present antigens to the T lymphocytes and induce, in this cell subset, proliferation or acquisition of specific cytotoxic activities. These cells are named "antigen presenting cells"(APCs) and can start the immune response. Thus, DC may be utilized in *ex vivo* immunization protocols. For this reason, DC precursors were isolated from peripheral blood of *Macaca fascicularis* by culturing in vitro adherent cells after seven days of GM-CSF and IL-2 stimulation. Alternatively, CD34+ cells were purified with immuno-magnetic beads and then cultured in vitro with GM-CSF and TNF- $\alpha$  for 14 days. To confirm that DC were isolated, morphologic analysis and phenotypic characterization (FACS analysis and immuno-histochemistry) were performed. Functional analysis was based on the unique capability of DC to induce proliferation of allogeneic lymphocytes.

The results obtained fully confirm the effectiveness of the purification and the functional characterization of DC. In details, to isolate DC precursors, PBMCs, obtained by Ficoll density gradient centrifugation, were again stratified on Percoll discontinuous gradient (50% and 42.5%). The cellular fraction that, after

centrifugation at 500 g for 30 min, was between the two gradients was mainly constituted of monocytes (as confirmed by FACS analysis, data not shown). These cells were kept at 4°C to avoid cell adhesion to the plastic tubes, then collected, washed, counted and seeded in culture at 37°C. The day after, non adherent cells were washed away with 4 gentle washings. To induce differentiation into DC, a complete medium supplemented with GM-CSF (200 ng/ml, Leucomax, Sandoz, Milan, Italy) and IL-4 (200 U/ml, Pepro tech, London, England) was added to adherent cells. As control, a complete medium without cytokines was added to induce the normal differentiation of monocytes in the macrophage lineage. Twice a week, half of the supernatant was replaced with fresh medium identical as that one utilized at day 0. The maturation of DC in the wells treated with cytokines was detected by typical morphological changes, like clustering, loss of adherence and development of cellular offshoots. The monocyte/macrophages adherent cells grown without cytokines were detached by EDTA treatment (0.5 mM in PBS-A), washed twice, counted and resuspended in fresh medium at different concentrations depending on the experiment performed. For the allogeneic mixed leukocyte reactions (AMLR), the obtained APCs (DC or macrophages) were tested with a fixed amount of allogeneic T lymphocytes, purified by Ficoll and Percoll gradients and adhesion, and then frozen. The AMLR was performed in 48-well plates with  $0.5 \times 10^6$  T lymphocytes and serial dilutions of APCs. At day 4 of culture, a fixed amount of the cell suspension was seeded in a 96-well plate in triplicate. One  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine was added to each well and the plate was then incubated at 37°C for 16 hours. At the end of incubation, the amount of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine incorporated by the cells was measured with a  $\beta$ -counter and expressed as counts per minute (cpm). Results indicate that the DC obtained are potent APC as demonstrated by the higher induction of proliferation in allogeneic human lymphocytes compared to the macrophages stimulation, and by the capability to induce T lymphocyte proliferation in monkeys at all the concentrations used (Figure 16B).

For the use in vaccination, DC will be resuspended at the concentration of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/100  $\mu\text{l}$  in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 5% of autologous serum, 10 mM of



Hepes buffer, 100 U/ml of penicillin-streptomycin, 0.5 mg/ml of amphotericin B and 0.03% of glutamine, and then incubated for 2 hours at 37°C in presence of Tat protein or Tat-peptides or combination of Tat, Rev, Nef, Gag and/or cytokines. Then, this treated DC will be inoculated twice or more within 2-4 weeks from first injection, intravenously. Alternatively, DC will be transduced with tat-gene-containing vectors alone or associated with other vectors mentioned above and then injected intravenously.

#### Prophetic example 9

The described immunogens will be utilized in order to induce and/or potentiate a specific immune response at the mucosa level. One of the approaches is based on the use bacteria (*S. Gordonii* and *Lactobacillus*) "engineered" to express the viral antigens mentioned above. These bacteria colonize the oral and vaginal mucosa of mice and induce a specific both local and systemic antibody response against heterologous antigens expressed on surface of recombinant bacteria (Ref. 116, 104, 106, 121, 117, 139, 105, 107). These bacteria can work as live vectors of vaccines and take the advantage to cause a prolonged stimulation of the immune system. Moreover, we will evaluate the possibility to co-express, on the bacterial surface, viral antigens and molecules involved in the immune response, such as the B sub-unit of the temperature-sensitive toxin of *E. Coli* or cytokines.

The preparation of the recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* will be carried out as previously described (Ref. 116). Briefly, (i) chromosomal integration of recombinant DNA molecules; (ii) transcriptional fusions with strong chromosomal promoters; (iii) transcriptional fusions with the gene coding for the protein M6, a surface protein of Streptococcus. The recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* will be utilized to colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys. It has been demonstrated that the recombinant strains of *S. Gordonii* which express the V3 region of gp120 of HIV-1 and the E7 protein of HPV-16, permanently colonize the vaginal mucosa of the mouse after a single inoculum, inducing an antigen-specific antibody response both local and systemic. The systemic response is in prevalence composed of IgG2a antibodies, which suggests a Th1-type response (Ref. 105, 106). We will select human vaginal strains of *Lactobacillus*, which are able to

colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys. Thereafter, an already developed genetic system will be utilized, which permits the expression of heterologous antigens on the surface of *Lactobacillus* (Rush, 1997). This strategy is based on: (i) cloning of genetic fusions (*emm6*/heterologous gene) into insertion vectors which carry homologies with the conjugative transposon Tn916; (ii) transformation of the vectors in bacterial strains which work as intermediate host (*Bacillus Subtilis*); (iii) conjugative mobilization of the recombinant transposons from *B.subtilis* to *Lactobacillus*. The recombinant strains of *Lactobacillus* will be utilized to colonize the vaginal mucosa of the monkeys.

Vaginal samples will be obtained utilizing special absorbent filters (Ref. 38, 105, 106). Colonization will be evaluated by plating the vaginal samples on selective plates and expression of HIV antigens in vivo will be monitored by immunofluorescence on vaginal swaps (Ref: 105). By using already standardized methods (Ref. 38), the vaginal swaps will be utilized for i) Papanicolaou test, in the case of vaginal vaccination; ii) presence of vaccine antigens in the cells; iii) phenotypic characterization of cells by cytofluorometric analysis (CD1, CD2, CD4, CD5, CD8, CD11c, CD14, CD20, CD28, CD40, CD25, HLA-DR); iv) evaluation of cytokine production (IL-2, IFN $\gamma$ , TNF $\alpha$ , IL-4, IL-10, IL-15, semi-quantitative RT-PCR), determination of the presence of cytokines and  $\beta$ -chemokines in the mucosal fluids, by Elisa assays; v) dosage of total and specific immunoglobulins (IgA and IgG) in the mucosal fluid by Elisa [Di Fabio et al., Vaccine 15: 1 (1997)]. One month after the last inoculum of the immunogen, the monkeys will be infected intravenously or through the mucosal route with the SHIV 89.6P. The follow-up of the monkeys will be carried out as described in the Example 4. Blood samples will be obtained in order to execute the routine laboratory exams, the evaluation of immunological parameters, both humoral and cellular, as described in the Example 4. The inventor believes that this method can be utilized successfully to induce specific immunization in monkeys, using the vaginal route. Alternatively, the mucosal immunity can be induced by administering the protein immunogens, above described, directly through the mucosal route in the presence of adjuvants, such as the thermo sensitive toxin of *E. Coli* and the choleric toxin, or utilizing

other bacterial and non bacterial delivery systems, such as cytofectins and liposomes or through the inoculation by other routes which are able to induce the most efficient and protective immune response (Ref. 83, 81, 62).

Moreover, the inventor believes that recombinant herpes vectors, expressing the  
5 above described viral proteins, can be excellent systems to induce an effective mucosal immune response. Recombinant viral vectors from the herpes simplex type 1 virus (HSV-1) will be utilized to express viral proteins for the induction, of a systemic (through cutaneous immunization, i.d.) and mucosal (through the oral, vaginal or nasal route) responses. Non pathogenic, non replicative herpes vectors  
10 will be utilized (Ref. 99) for their ability to include large exogenous sequences, without interfering with the efficacy of the infection (Ref. 52, 64). Therefore, vectors able to contain more than one HIV gene (accessory, regulatory and structural) will be constructed. The mucosal immunity could be induced by an oral, vaginal or nasal vaccine. The herpes vectors can be used in these vaccinal  
15 approaches, since HSV-1 can be administered directly by the mucosal route (Ref. 176, 75). The recombinant viruses will be constructed utilizing a two-steps method which facilitates the insertion of exogenous sequences into the viral genome. The first step requires the insertion of an expression cassette with a reporter gene ( $\beta$ -galactosidase, LacZ) cloned in the restriction site *PacI*, which is not present in the  
20 HSV-1 genome, flanked by the wanted target sequence of HSV-1, using the standard procedure for the homologous recombination, to interrupt the HSV-1 gene. The recombinant virus is selected by formation of plaques with a blue phenotype, using "x-gal staining". The digestion of viral DNA with *PacI* releases the marker gene and generates two large fragments of viral DNA, not able to  
25 produce infectious viral particles. The second step consists of a co-transfection of the viral DNA, digested with the same plasmid used to create the deletion, where the reporter gene is substituted by the wanted gene. The recombinant viruses will be identified through the selection of plaques with a white phenotype after "x-gal staining". This recombination will lead to the elimination of *PacI* sites allowing the  
30 use of this method to insert many genes in different loci of HSV-1 genome (Ref. 74). By crossing the different vectors containing the single genes, we might be

able to create all the different genetic combinations. The vector containing all the wanted genes will be isolated by screening with different markers, phenotypes and selective growth on competent cells. All the combinations will be created by alternating DNA transfections and viral recombinations.

- 5 Vectors expressing the single genes tat, rev, nef or gag, will be constructed utilizing, as basic vector, that one containing the mutations in the genes 4-/22-/27-/41, that is better for the low toxicity and the strong expression of the exogenous gene, compared to the other HSV-1 not replicative vectors. Constitutive promoters will be used, such as those from HCMV (human cytomegalovirus immediate early
- 10 promoter), or as ICP0 lep (infected cell protein immediate early promoter) and the Moloney Murine Leukemia virus LTR, for inducing the expression of the genes above mentioned. Non replicative HSV-1 vectors expressing HIV-proteins in different combinations will be constructed. The production of these viruses containing more different genes will be obtained by a genetic crossing over of the
- 15 vectors containing the single genes described in the previous point. Double, triple and quadruple vectors will be created. The vectors will be inoculated in the monkeys i.d. or through mucosal (oral, vaginal or nasal) route with particular attention to this last type of administration (Ref. 176, 101, 102). Vaccination schedule consists of multiple inocula at different time points, which must be
- 20 determined in relation to immunogen or the combination of immunogens. During immunization the animals will be monitored for the evaluation of hematochemical and immunological parameters as described in the Example 4. With methods already standardized vaginal samples will be obtained, that will be studied as previously described in this Example.

25 **Prophetic example 10**

**Delivery systems**

Tat (protein and/or DNA) alone or in combination (as described above) will be inoculated using new delivery systems, such as erythrocytes or nanoparticles.

- The delivery system involving the use of erythrocytes is based on the possibility
- 30 to deliver the antigen bound on autologous erythrocytes. In fact erythrocytes, at the end of their life span (around 120 days in humans), are removed from the

circulation by the macrophages, known to have the function of professional antigen presenting cells. This property can be used for vaccine strategies. Thus, antigens will be bound to the erythrocytes with a particular technique (Ref. 95, 96), that allows the preservation of the immunogenic properties of the antigen (Ref. 29,30). Through this procedure, biotinylation of erythrocytes can be performed in the absence of significative modification of their properties and life span (Ref. 95). Phagocytosis of old erythrocytes by macrophage cells will start an immune response. Antibodies opsonization of erythrocytes carrying the antigen will help antigen removal from circulation. The main advantages of this methodology are:

- 1) small quantity of antigen needed to induce a humoral and cellular immune response,
- 2) long lasting immunization due to the lasting presence of antigens carried by the erythrocytes in the periphery,
- 3) adjuvant functions provided by the system itself.

In fact, it has been shown in animal studies that the administration of antigens bound on the membrane of autologous erythrocytes induces a similar or higher immune response compared to the immune response obtained with the same antigen administered with Freund's adjuvant (Ref. 29). These properties are very useful to develop an anti-HIV vaccine, in particular when it is needed to increase the immunogenicity of the antigen and the antigen availability and when a low number of immunizations is required. In addition, this strategy can be used when no adjuvants are included in the vaccination protocol. In fact, it has been shown in the mouse model that antigens administered through autologous erythrocytes induce similar or higher immune responses compared to those obtained with the same antigen administered with Freund's adjuvant known as the most powerful adjuvant commercially available (Ref. 29), although not approved for human studies because of the important side effects. Thus, the adjuvant effect of erythrocytes carrying Tat protein, alone or in combination with other immunogens previously described, will be analyzed in non human primates. Comparison among these data and those obtained with the administration of Tat protein in the presence of Alum, RIBI or ISCOM will be performed.

The use of nanoparticles can represent an additional delivery strategy. Functional nanoparticles represent an important system for the transport and release of proteins and DNA (Ref. 27, 172). The nanospheres are colloid polymeric particles of different chemical composition, with a large range of diameter from 10 to 1000 nm. It is possible to adsorb different kind of substances on the surface or inside the nanospheres (oligonucleotides, drugs, proteins, peptides, DNA) that are then brought to the cytoplasm or to the nucleus of cells where they are slowly released. In addition, a small amount of the immunogen is needed to be delivered due to the characteristics of nanospheres. Nanoparticles are a good delivery system especially for molecules with low stability in the extracellular environment or when the delivery is directed to a specific target cell.

The inventor believes that nanospheres can be used to deliver the viral antigens above described. It is possible to prepare and characterize three types of nanospheres designed for the delivery and controlled release of DNA (nanospheres type 1 and 2) and proteins (nanospheres type 3).

For the DNA delivery, two types of nanospheres (nanospheres type 1 and 2) are available. The first type of nanospheres (nanospheres type 1) has a triple layers structure with an external layer of poly-oxy-ethylen-glicole (PEG). Recent reports based on stealth systems studies (Ref. 180, 78), show that PEG makes nanospheres invisible to Kupfer cells. In contrast, the more internal layer is made of monomers with tensioactive features containing quaternary ammonium groups that reversibly adsorb the DNA through a mechanism of ionic exchange and an internal core made of methyl-metacrylate as monomer. These nanospheres are obtained by polymerization in microemulsion involving the polymerization of a vinilic or vinilidenic monomer in the presence of a mix of tensioactive reagents. These reagents are thus able to polymerize the monomer. Of these, one has a quaternary ammonium group interacting with oligonucleotides and the other one has a long chain of PEG.

The second type of DNA delivery system is made of functional nano and microspheres (nanospheres type 2) with hydrogel characteristics. These nanospheres should be made in the presence of DNA to trap it inside the delivery

system. Nanospheres core-shell are needed to deliver proteins (nanospheres type 3). They are made by an internal core of poly-methyl-metacrylate and an external shell of hydrosoluble statistic copolymer of acrylic acid and methyl-metacrylate, known to have an high degree of affinity for proteins (Ref. 79, 80). This copolymer is commercially available (EUDRAGIT) and is obtained with different percentages of the two co-monomers. The preparation process leading to the manufacture of this second type of nanospheres involves the polymerization in dispersion. The synthesis involves the radical polymerization of a vinilic or vinilidenic monomer in the presence of EUDRAGIT having steric stabilizing functions. After nanospheres nucleation, the EUDRAGIT arranges outside the particles. Thus, modifying the concentration of the radical initiator, the ratio between the monomer and EUDRAGIT and the reaction time, numerous nanospheres samples are obtained with different morphologic and chemical characteristics.

Thus, it can be evaluated whether the delivery of Tat protein or Tat DNA by nanoparticles, alone or in combination with the immunogens mentioned above (either protein or DNA) will induce an immune response against HIV. In particular, the humoral or cellular-mediated immune responses will be evaluated and compared to those obtained with the not delivered immunogens in the monkey model.

The inventor believes that the information derived from these studies can be useful to develop an anti-HIV vaccine. In addition, the information derived from this experimental protocol will be transferred also to other vaccines studies, in particular to those studies dealing with low immunogenicity recombinant proteins or peptides. The possibility to develop a vaccine with only one administration will lead to enormous advantages in terms of efficacy of the vaccine and decrease of managing costs of vaccine programs.

References

1. Agostini et al., Blood 90:1115 (1997)
2. Albini et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:4838 (1995)
3. Allan et al., Science.230:813 (1985)
- 5 4. Antibodies - A laboratory manual, Eds. Harlow E., Lane D., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory (1988)
5. Arya et al., Science 229:69 (1985)
6. Aryoshi et al., AIDS 9:555 (1995)
7. Audibert et al., Immunol. Today 14:281 (1993)
- 10 8. Badolato et al., Blood 90:2804 (1997)
9. Barillari et al., J. Immunol. 149:3727 (1992)
10. Barillari et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:7941 (1993)
11. Barillari et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 149:3727 (1993)
12. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 160:27-34 (1993)
- 15 13. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 168:267-273 (1994)
14. Blomberg et al., J. Immunol. Methods 193: 199-206 (1996)
15. Bohan et al., Gene Expr. 2:391 (1992)
16. Bourgault et al., J. Virol. 66:75 (1992)
17. Boyer et al., Nature Med. 3:526 (1997)
- 20 18. Bruisten et al., J. Infect. Dis. 166:620 (1992)
19. Buseyne et al., J. Virol. 67:694 (1993)
20. Butera et al., J. Virol. 65:4645 (1991)
21. Butera et al., J. Virol. 68:2726 (1994)
22. Cafaro et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 7:204 (1991)
- 25 23. Carrol et al, Science. 276: 273-276, (1997)
24. Carson et al., J. Clin. Invest. 99:937 (1997)
25. Chang et al., J. Biomed. Sci. 2:189 (1995)
26. Chang et al., AIDS 11: 1421 (1997)
27. Chavany et al., Phar. Res. 9: 441 (1994)
- 30 28. Chen et al., J. Immunol. 149:4060 (1992)
29. Chiarantini et al., Vaccine 15: 276 (1997)



30. Chiarantini et al., Clin. Diag. Lab. Immunol. 5: 235 (1998)
31. Chirmule et al., J. Virol. 69:492 (1995)
32. Choppin et al., J. Immunol. 147:569 (1991)
33. Corallini et al., Cancer Res. 53: 1 (1993)
- 5 34. Corallini et al., Cancer Res, 53: 5569 (1993)
35. Culman et al., J. Immunol. 146:1560 (1991)
36. Couillin et al., J. Exp. Med. 180:1129 (1994)
37. Danko et al., Vaccine 12:1499 (1994)
38. Di Fabio et al., Vaccine 15: 1 (1997)
- 10 39. Ensoli et al., IV International Conference on AIDS, Stockholm, 1:241 (1988)
40. Ensoli et al., Nature 345:84 (1990)
41. Ensoli et al., J. Virol. 67:277 (1993)
42. Ensoli et al., Nature 371:674 (1994)
43. Ensoli et al., AIDS Updates, Eds. V. De Vita, Jr., Hellman S., Rosenberg S.A.,  
15 Lippincott J.B., Philadelphia; 7: 1 (1994)
44. Felber et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:1495 (1989)
45. Fine et al., Ann. Plast. Surg. 20:6 (1988)
46. Fiorelli et al., J. Clin. Invest. 95:1723 (1995)
47. Folks et al., Science 238:800 (1987)
- 20 48. Franchini et al., Virology 155:593 (1986)
49. Frankel et al., Cell 55:1189 (1988)
50. Fugier-Vivier et al, J. Exp. Med. 186: 813 (1997)
51. Gait et al., Trends Biochem. Sci. 18:255 (1993)
52. Glorioso et al., Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 49:675 ( 1995)
- 25 53. Gobert et al., Virology 176:458 (1990)
54. Goletti et al., J. Virol. 69:2540 (1995)
55. Gorman et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 2:1044 (1982)
56. Grabstein et al., Science 264:965 (1994)
57. Grosjean et al, J. Exp. Med. 186: 801 (1997)
- 30 58. Guy et al., Nature 330:266 (1987)
59. Harrer et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 12:585 (1996)

60. Harrich et al., EMBO J. 16:6 (1997)
61. Hinkula et al., J. Virol. 71:5528 (1997)
62. Honenbang et al., Infect. Immun. 62:15 (1994)
63. Huang et al., EMBO J. 13:2886 (1994)
- 5 64. Huard et al. Gene Ther. 2:385 (1995)
65. Igarashi et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 10:1021 (1994)
66. Jonuleit et al., J. Immunol. 158:2610 (1997)
67. Jullien et al., J. Immunol. 158:800 (1997)
68. Kanai et al., J. Immunol. 157:3681 (1996)
- 10 69. Karlosson et al., J. Virol. 71:4218 (1997)
70. Kashanchi et al., J. Virol. 70:5503 (1996)
71. Kestler et al., Science 248:1109 (1991)
72. Kim et al., Oncogene 7: 1525 (1992)
73. Koup et al., J. Virol. 68:4650 (1994)
- 15 74. Krisky et al., Gene Ther. 4:1120 (1997)
75. Kuklin et al., J. Virol. 240:245 (1998)
76. Landes, Austin, p. 107 (1997)
77. Lanzavecchia, Science 260: 937 (1993)
78. Lasic et al., Chemical Reviews 95: 2601 (1995)
- 20 79. Laus et al., Polymer 37: 343 (1996)
80. Laus et al., Polymers for Adv. Techn. 7: 548 (1996)
81. Lehnen et al., Vaccine Research 1:319 (1992)
82. Levine et al., Science. 272: 1939-1943 (1996)
83. Lewis et al., Vaccine Press, Ed. Robinson, Farrar, Wiblin; Human Press,  
25 Totowa, New Jersey (1996)
84. Li et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 94:8116 (1997)
85. Li et al., J. AIDS 5:639 (1992)
86. Li et al., Science 268:229 (1995)
87. Li et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 94:8116 (1997)
- 30 88. Lippincott J.B., Stockholm, Sweden, May 31-June 3 (1997)
89. Littaua et al., J. Virol. 65:40 (1991)

- 90.Lövgren et al., Vaccine 14:753 (1996)
- 91.Lu et al., J. Virol. 70:3978 (1996)
- 92.Lubaki et al., J. Infect. Dis. 175:1360 (1997)
- 93.Lucey et al., Clin. Diagn. Lab. Immunol. 4:43 (1997)
- 5 94.Luciw et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 92:7490 (1995)
- 95.Magnani et al., Biotech. Appl. Biochem. 16: 188 (1992)
- 96.Magnani et al., Biotech. Appl. Biochem. 20: 335 (1994)
- 97.Malim et al., Nature 338:254 (1989)
- 98.Mann et al., EMBO J. 10:1733 (1991)
- 10 99.Marconi et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 93:11319 (1996)
- 100.Marcuzzi et al., J. Virol. 66:4228 (1992)
- 101.McLean et al., J. Infect. Dis. 66:341 (1994)
- 102.McLean et al., Vaccine 14:987 (1996)
- 103.Mcfarland et al., J. Inf. Dis. 170:766 (1994)
- 15 104.Medaglini et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92: 6868 (1995)
- 105.Medaglini et al., Biotech. Annu. Rev. 3:297 (1997)
- 106.Medaglini et al., Vaccine 15:1330 (1997)
- 107.Medaglini et al., Am. J. Reprod. Immunol. 39:199 (1998)
- 108.Meyerhans et al., Cell 58:901 (1989)
- 20 109.Morein et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. S10:S109 (1994)
- 110.Molecular cloning – A laboratory manual; Eds. Maniatis T., Fritsch E.F., Sambrook J., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York (1992)
- 111.Myers et al., Human Retroviruses and AIDS: A compilation and analysis of  
25 nucleic acid and amino acid sequences, Los Alamos Laboratory, Los Alamos, NM p.1 (1993)
- 112.Myers et al., Human Retroviruses and AIDS. Theoretical Biology and Biophysics Group. Los Alamos, NH (1995)
- 113.Neuvel et al., J. Virol. 70:5572 (1996)
- 30 114.Nietfield et al., J. Immunol. 154:2189 (1995)
- 115.Nixon et al., Nature 336:484 (1988)

- 116.Oggioni et al., Vaccine 13:775 (1995)
- 117.Oggioni, et al., Gene 169:85 (1996)
- 118.O'Hagan et al., Novel Delivery Systems for Oral Vaccines, Eds. O'Hagan, D.T. CRC Press Boca Raton, FL, p. 176 (1994)
- 5 119.Parslow, Human Retroviruses, Ed. B.R. Cullen, IRL press, Oxford, England, p. 101 (1993)
- 120.Pilkington et al., Mol. Immunol. 33:439 (1996)
- 121.Pozzi et al., in "Gram-positive bacteria as vaccine vehicles for mucosal immunization", eds. Pozzi G. & Wells, J.M. – Landes, Austin, p. 35 (1997)
- 10 122.Puri et al., Cancer Res., 52:3787 (1992)
- 123.Puri et al., AIDS Res. 11:31 (1995)
- 124.Quesada-Rolander et al., ABS 6-S1, 2nd European Conference on Experimental AIDS Research, Stockholm, Sweeden, May 31-June3 (1997)
- 125.Quinn et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 239:6 (1997)
- 15 126.Ratner et al., Nature 313:277 (1985)
- 127.Re et al., J. Acquir. Immun. Defic. Syndr. 10:408 (1995)
- 128.Reimann et al., J. Virol. 70:3189 (1996)
- 129.Reimann et al., J. Virol. 70:6922 (1996)
- 130.Reiss et al., J. Med Virol. 30:163 (1990)
- 20 131.Reiss et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 5:621 (1989)
- 132.Riley et al, J.Immunol. 158: 5545-5553, (1997)
- 133.Rinaldo et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 11:481 (1995)
- 134.Rinaldo et al., J. Virol., 69:5838 (1995)
- 135.Rodman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:7719 (1993)
- 25 136.Rodman et al., J. Exp. Med. 175:1247 (1992)
- 137.Rosenberg et al., Int. Immunol. 9 (5):703 (1997)
- 138.Rosenthal et al., Seminars in Immunology 9:303 (1997)
- 139.Rush, et al., in "Gram-positive bacteria as vaccine vehicles for mucosal immunization", eds. Pozzi G. & Wells, J.M. – Landes, Austin, p. 107 (1997)
- 30 140.Sadaie et al., New Biol. 2:479 (1990)
- 141.Saiki et al., Science 230:1350 (1985)

- 142.Sakuragi et al., J. Gen. Virol. 73:2983 (1992)
- 143.Salter et al., Immunogenetics 21:235 (1985)
- 144.Schnorr et al, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. 94: 5326 (1997)
- 145.Sharma et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Co. 208:704 (1995)
- 5 146.Shibata et al., J. Virol.65:314 (1991)
- 147.Sipsas et al., J. Clin. Invest. 99:752 (1997)
- 148.Sodroski et al., Science.227:171, (1985)
- 149.Steinaa et al., Arch. Virol. 139:263 (1994)
- 150.Steinman R.M., Exp. Hematol. 24: 859 (1996)
- 10 151.Tahtinen et al., Virology 187:156 (1992)
- 152.Theoretical Biology and Biophysics, Los Alamos, NH, (1995)
- 153.Titti et al., Cell. Pharmacol. AIDS 3:123 (1996)
- 154.Trinchieri, Curr. Opin. Hematol. 4:59 (1997)
- 155.van Baalen et al., J. Gen. Virol., 77:1659 (1996)
- 15 156.van Baalen et al., J. Gen. Virol. 78:1913 (1997)
- 157.Vellutini et al., AIDS Res. Hum. Retrov. 11:21 (1995)
- 158.Venet et al., J. Immunol. 148:2899 (1992)
- 159.Viscidi et al., Science.246:1606 (1989)
- 160.Vogel et al., Nature 335: 601 (1988)
- 20 161.Voss et al., Virology 208:770 (1995)
- 162.Wain-Hobson, Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev. 3:878 (1993)
- 163.Westendorp et al., J. Virol. 68:4177 (1994)
- 164.Westendorp et al., Nature 375:497 (1995)
- 165.Wolf et al., J. Immunol. 146:3074 (1991)
- 25 166.Yang et al., J. Virol. 70:4576 (1996)
- 167.Yang et al., J. Virol. 70:5799 (1996)
- 168.Yasutomi et al., J. Virol. 70:678 (1996)
- 169.Zauli et al., Blood 86:3823 (1995)
- 170.Zauli et al., Blood 80:3036 (1996)
- 30 171.Zauli et al., J.Immunol. 157:2216 (1996)
- 172.Zobel et al., Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Dev. 7: 483 (1997)

- 173. Gibellini et al., Blood 89:1654 (1997)
- 174. Bauer et al., J. Infect. Dis. 165:419 (1992)
- 175. Klein et al., J. Exp. Med. 181:1365 (1995)
- 176. Bowen et al., Res. Virol. 143:269 (1992)
- 5 177. Zamarchi et al., AIDS Res. Human Retrov. 9:1139 (1993)
- 178. Fiore et al., AIDS 5:1034 (1991)
- 179. Roman et al., Nature Med. 3:849 (1997)
- 180. Allen et al., Biochim. Biophys. Acta 1237:99 (1995)

**CLAIMS**

1. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA for use as a vaccine, said Tat, at picomolar to nanomolar concentrations being capable of: (i) entering and localizing in the nuclei of  
5 activated endothelial cells or dendritic cells; and/or (ii) activating the proliferation, migration and invasion of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) cells and cytokine-activated endothelial cells protein.
2. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or DNA Tat according to claim 1 further capable of: (iii) activating virus  
10 replication when added to infected cells as measured a) by the rescue of Tat-defective proviruses in HLM-1 cells after the addition of exogenous protein; and/or b) by the transactivation of HIV-1 gene expression in cells transfected with a HIV-1 promoter-reporter plasmid.
3. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants  
15 and/or Tat DNA according to claim 2 further capable of: (iv) inducing in mice the development of KS-like lesions in the presence of angiogenic factors or inflammatory cytokines.
4. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA according to claims 1-3 at amounts ranging between 10  
20 ng/ml or less to 1 µg/ml.
5. Biologically active isolated Tat protein, fragments thereof and/or mutants and/or Tat DNA according to claims 1-4 for use in the prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatment of AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms associated with HIV infection.
- 25 6. Protein or peptide or DNA vaccine, prophylactic and/or therapeutic, against AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms associated with the HIV infection, comprising biologically active Tat and/or its mutants and/or portion of the protein or peptides or a DNA as defined in claims 1-4.
7. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which Tat has the following nucleotide  
30 sequence (Seq.1):

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGTC

AGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATTG  
CCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAGAA  
GCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAGTTT  
CTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGGCCC  
5 GAAGGAATAG 3'

and any other Tat variant of any HIV type and subtype.

8. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which Tat has the following amino acid sequence :

NH<sub>2</sub>-EPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAISY

10 GRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

and any other Tat variant of any HIV type and subtype.

9. Vaccine according to claim 6 in which mutants are selected among the ones having the following nucleotide sequences or part of them:

Nucleotide sequence of cys22 mutant (Seq.2)

15 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATT  
GCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG  
AAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAG  
TTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGG  
20 CCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of lys41 (Seq.3)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
25 GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
GCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.4)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
30 CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA



GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
AATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.5)

5 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
10 AATAG 3'

10.Vaccine according to claim 6 in which mutants are selected among the ones  
having the following amino acid sequence or part of them:

Amino acid sequence of cys22 mutant

NH2-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
15 LGISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41

NH2-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant

20 NH2-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant

NH2-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

25 11.Vaccine according to claim 6 in which the Tat portions are selected among the  
peptide sequences

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

30 Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

12. Vaccine according to claims 6-11 comprising proteins or peptides conjugated with the T-helper universal epitope of Tetanus toxoid or any T-helper peptides.
- 5 13. Vaccine according to claims 6-12 in combination with recombinant proteins or peptides of HIV Nef, Rev or Gag or part of them.
14. Vaccine according to claim 6 comprising fusion proteins Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Nef, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Rev, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/Gag or part of them.
- 10 15. Vaccine according to claim 6-14 in combination with recombinant immuno-modulant cytokines or other molecules, or part of them, augmenting antiviral immune response.
16. Vaccine according to claim 15 in which cytokines are IL-12 and/or IL-15 or IFN $\alpha$  or IFN $\beta$ .
- 15 17. Vaccine according to claim 6 comprising fusion proteins Tat(wild type or its mutants)/immuno-modulant cytokines, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/IL-12, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/IL-15, Tat (wild type or its mutants)/other molecules, or part of them, augmenting the antiviral immune response.
18. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 comprising DNA encoding for Tat wild-type or its mutants or part of them, inserted in expression vectors.
- 20 19. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 in combination with an expression vector including HIV rev, nef and gag genes, or part of them.
20. DNA vaccine according to claims 18 or 19 in which the vector is a plasmid co-expressing tat (wild-type or its mutants)/rev, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/nef, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/gag or part of them.
- 25 21. DNA vaccine according to claims 6, 7, 9 in combination with DNA molecules inserted in expression vectors encoding for immuno-modulant cytokines or other immuno-modulant molecules, or part of them, augmenting the antiviral immune response.
- 30 22. DNA vaccine according to claim 21 in which the cytokine is IL-12 and/or IL-15.
23. DNA vaccine according to claims 21 or 22 in which the vector is a plasmid co-

expressing tat (wild-type or its mutants)/IL-12, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/IL-15, tat (wild-type or its mutants)/other molecules, or part of them, able to augment the antiviral immune response.

24.Vaccine according to claims 18-23 in which the vector is pCV0.

5 25.Vaccine according to the previous claims including autologous dendritic cells treated and/or untreated according to the previous claims.

26.Vaccine according to the previous claims including adjuvants able to augment the antiviral immune response.

10 27.Vaccine according to claim 26 in which the adjuvant is selected among Alum, ISCOM, RIBI and related mixtures.

28.Vaccine according to previous claims comprising systems for delivery.

29.Vaccine according to claim 28 in which the systems for delivery are selected among nanoparticles, herpes vectors, red cells, bacteria and combinations thereof.

15 30.Vaccine according to claim 29 in which bacteria are selected among *Streptococcus gordonii* and *Lactobacillus*.

31.Vaccine according to claims 29 and 30 in which bacteria are modified to express viral antigens.

20 32.Vaccine according to the previous claims for the immunization of peripheral blood cells from infected individuals, expanded by co-stimulation with magnetic beads coated with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 antibodies.

33.Therapeutic vaccine according to the previous claims, combined with inhibitors of viral replication.

25 34.Vaccine according to claims 6-33 in which the active principle is delivered to the mucosa.

35. Vaccine according to claim 34, in which the active principle is administered nasally, orally, vaginally and/or rectally.

36.Vaccine according to claims 6-33 in which the active principle is administered through systemic or local route.

30 37.Vaccine according to claim 36 in which the active principle is administered through intramuscular, subcute or intradermal route.

38. Vaccine according to claim 37 in which the active principle is administered intradermally at 1-6  $\mu$ g amounts, without adjuvants.

39. Vaccine according to claims 34-38 in which the active principle is carried in a biologically acceptable fluid.

5 40. Vaccine according to claims 34-39 further comprising pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and excipients to maximize the principle activity.

41. Vaccine according to claims 34-40 comprising as active principle Tat according to claim 1 at preventive and/or therapeutic amounts.

42. Biologically active Tat nucleotide sequence (Seq. 1):

10 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
15 GCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

43. Biologically active Tat amino acid sequence

NH<sub>2</sub>-EPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAISY  
GRKKRRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

44. Biologically active Tat mutant protein having nucleotide sequence selected among:

Nucleotide sequence of the cys22 mutant (Seq.2)

20 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCGGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCATT  
GCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAAG  
25 AAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAAG  
TTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAGG  
CCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the lys41 mutant (Seq.3)

30 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA

GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGAGGGGACCCGACAG  
GCCCCGAAGGAATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.4)

5 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAAAGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
10 AATAG 3'

Nucleotide sequence of the lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant (Seq.5)

5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGATCCTAGACTAGAGCCCTGGAAGCATCCAGGAAGT  
CAGCCTAAAACTGCTTGTACCAATTGCTATTGTAAAAAGTGTTGCTTTTCAT  
TGCCAAGTTTGTTCATAACAAACGCCTTAGGCATCTCCTATGGCAGGAA  
15 GAAGCGGAGACAGCGACGAAGACCTCCTCAAGGCAGTCAGACTCATCAA  
GTTTCTCTATCAAAGCAGCCACCTCCCAATCCCGACAGGCCCGAAGG  
AATAG 3'

45. Biologically active Tat mutants amino acid sequence selected among:

Amino acid sequence of cys22 mutant

20 NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTAGTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKA  
LGISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41 mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSRGDPTGPKE-COOH

25 Amino acid sequence of RGD $\Delta$  mutant

NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITKAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

Amino acid sequence of lys41-RGD $\Delta$  mutant

30 NH<sub>2</sub>-MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKTACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFITTAL  
GISYGRKKRRQRRRPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQPTSQSPTGPKE-COOH

46. Biologically active Tat mutants with peptide sequence selected among :

Pep. 1. MEPVDPRLEPWKHPGSQPKT

Pep. 2. ACTNCYCKKCCFHCQVCFIT

Pep. 3. QVCFITKALGISYGRK

5 Pep. 4. SYGRKKRRQRRRPPQ

Pep. 5. RPPQGSQTHQVSLSKQ

Pep. 6. HQVSLSKQPTSQSRGD

Pep. 7. PTSQSRGDPTGPKE

10 47. Expression vector comprising a DNA sequence selected among the ones listed in claims 42 and 44 or parts thereof.

48. Expression vector pCV0 including a DNA sequence selected among the ones listed in claims 42-44 or parts thereof.

15 49. Expression vector pCV0 according to claim 48, comprising a DNA sequence codifying for a gene selected among tat, rev, nef, gag, IL-12, IL-15 and combinations thereof.

50. Transformed cells including the vector according to claims 47-49.

51. Dendritic cells treated with Tat protein or its peptides or mutants according to claims 42-46 or combinations with Rev, Nef, and Gag proteins and/or cytokines.

20 52. Dendritic cells according to claim 51 transduced with an expression vector comprising tat gene.

53. Process for producing biologically active Tat protein or its mutants or its recombinant forms or parts of them comprising to cultivate the cells according to claim 50 and to isolate and purify the thus obtained protein or parts of it.

25 54. Process for preparing the pCV0 vector according to claim 49, in which the corresponding cDNA is amplified by PCR technique using primers selected among:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

30 Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTGAAA3'

5 Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA  
GGAAGAAGC3'

10 Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT  
GCGAGAGCG3'

15 Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC  
CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT  
TTCGAAA3'

55. Primer selected among:

Seq. P1. Primer forward Rev: 5'ATGGCAGGAAGAAGC3'

20 Seq. P2. Primer reverse Rev: 5'CTATTCTTTAGTTCC3'

Seq. P3. Primer forward Nef: 5'ATGGGTGGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P4. Primer reverse Nef: 5'TCAGCAGTCCTTGTA3'

Seq. P5. Primer forward Gag: 5'ATGGGTGCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P6. Primer reverse Gag: 5'TTATTGTGACGAGGG3'

25 Seq. P7. Primer forward IL-12: 5'ATGTGGCCCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P8. Primer reverse IL-12: 5'TTAGGAAGCATTTCAG3'

Seq. P9. Primer forward IL-15: 5'ATGAGAATTTGAAA3'

Seq. P10. Primer reverse IL-15: 5'TCAAGAAGTGTTGAT3'

Seq. P11. Primer forward Tat: 5'ATGGAGCCAGTAGAT3'

30 Seq. P12. Primer reverse Tat: 5'CTATTCCTTCGGGCC3'

Seq. P13. Primer forward Tat/Rev: 5'GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGCA

GGAAGAAGC3'

Seq. P14. Primer forward Tat/Nef: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT

GGCAAGTGG3'

Seq. P15. Primer forward Tat/Gag: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGGGT

GCGAGAGCG3'

Seq. P16. Primer forward Tat/IL-12: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGTGGC

CCCCTGGG3'

Seq. P17. Primer forward Tat/IL-15: 5' GGCCCGAAGGAAATGAGAAT

TTCGAAA3'.

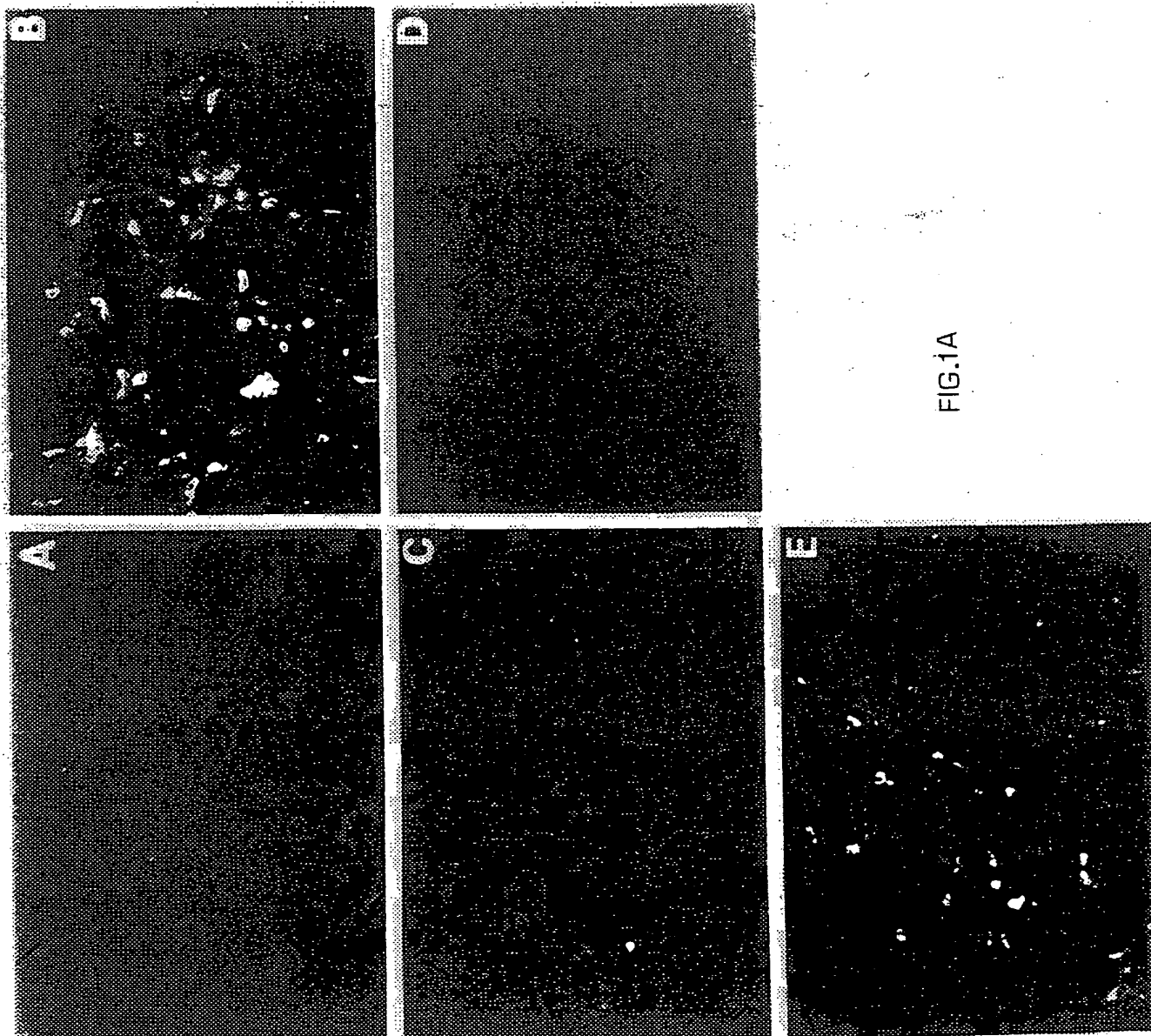
- 10 56. Process for preparing a vaccine according to claims 6-41, wherein Tat is in its non oxidated form.
57. Process for preparing a vaccine according to claims 6-41, wherein Tat, in its lyophilized form, is re-suspended in a biologically acceptable fluid for administration.
- 15 58. Use of Tat protein wild-type in its active form and/or its mutants and/or parts related to the protein or peptides or the DNA encoding for these proteins or parts of them or peptides to make a protein or peptide or DNA vaccine, preventive and/or therapeutic, against AIDS, tumors, the syndromes and symptoms associated to HIV infection.
- 20 59. Use of Alum, ISCOM, RIBI and other adjuvants, alone or in combination, to make a vaccine according to claim 6.
60. Use of paramagnetic beads coated with monoclonal antibodies anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 to make a vaccine according to claim 6.
- 25 61. Therapeutic method for treating AIDS, tumors, syndromes and symptoms associated with HIV infection characterized in that preventive or therapeutic amounts of biologically active Tat according to claims 1-5 are administered.



HIV-1 Tat, or derivatives thereof, alone or in combination, for prophylactic and therapeutic vaccination against AIDS, tumors and related syndromes

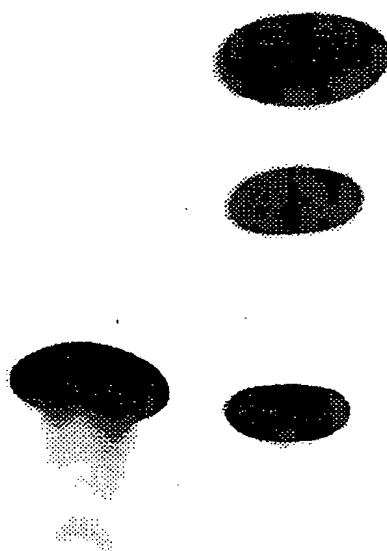
Abstract

The present invention refers to Tat as the active principle for a prophylactic and/or  
5 therapeutic vaccine against HIV infection, the progression towards AIDS and the  
development of tumors and other syndromes and symptoms in subjects infected by  
HIV. Tat is in biologically active form either as recombinant protein or peptide or as  
DNA. More particularly, the invention refers to a vaccine based on HIV-1 Tat as  
immunogen, inoculated as DNA and/or recombinant protein or as peptides, alone or  
10 in combination with other genes or viral gene products (Nef, Rev, Gag) or parts  
thereof, or in combination with various immuno modulant cytokines (IL-12, IL-15) or  
with the gene coding for an immuno modulant cytokine or part thereof. Tat, Nef, Rev,  
Gag and the immuno modulant cytokines are administrated both as a mixture of  
recombinant proteins, peptides or fusion proteins (Tat/Nef, Tat/Rev, Tat/Gag, Tat/IL-  
15 12, Tat/IL-15) or as plasmid DNA.



2/17

% Acetil	0.3	76
----------	-----	----



TAT	+	+
TAT22	+	

FIG. 1B

3/17

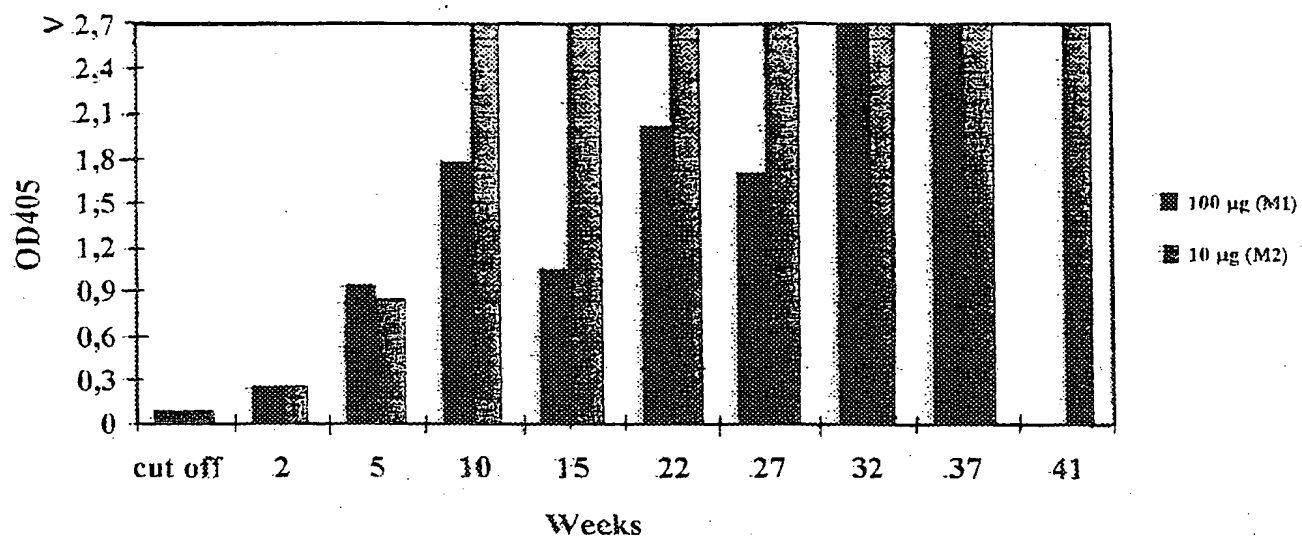


FIG. 2 A

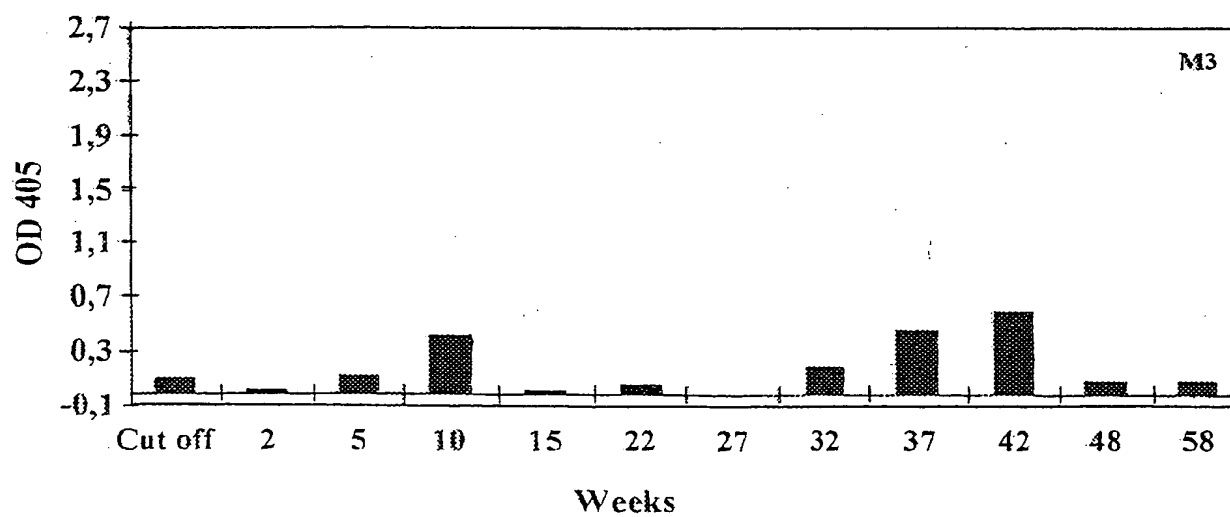


FIG. 2B

4/17

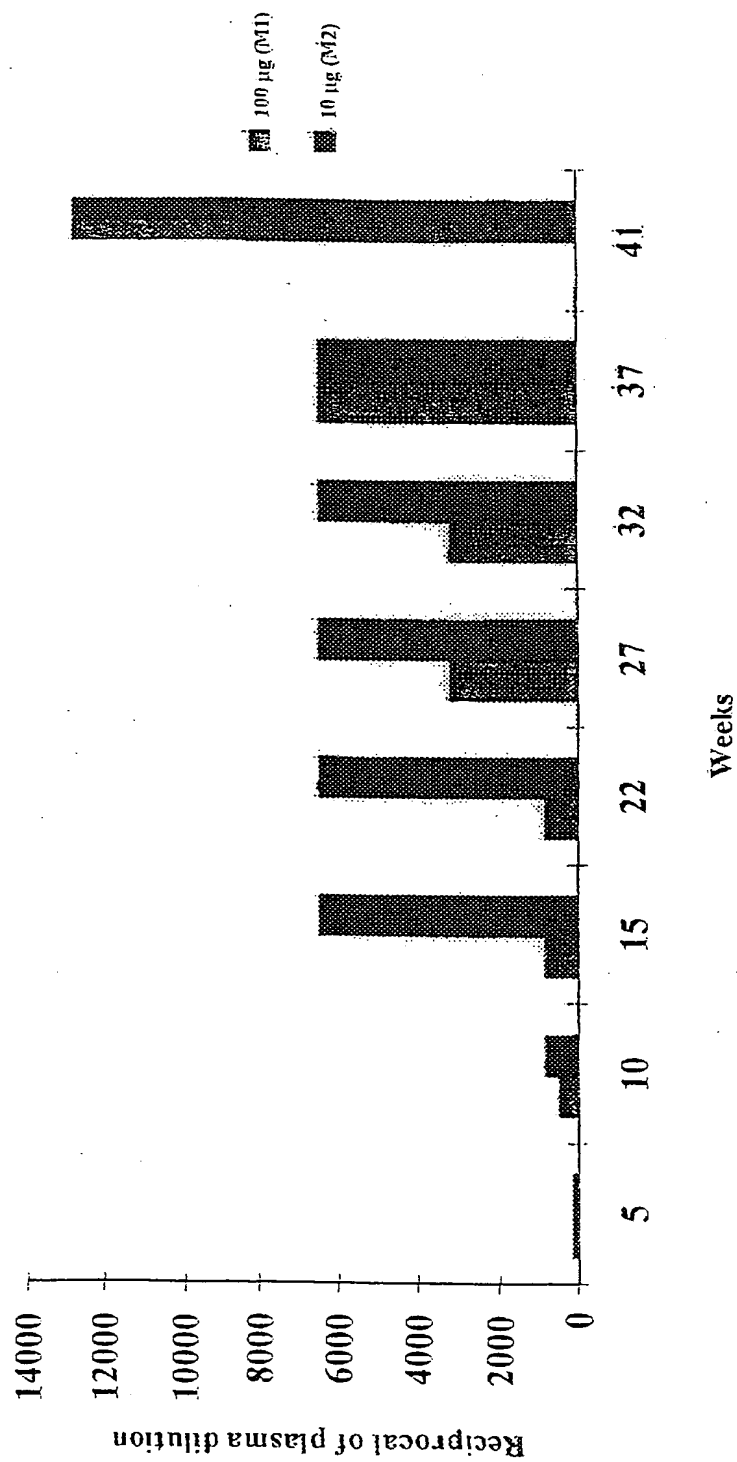


FIG. 3

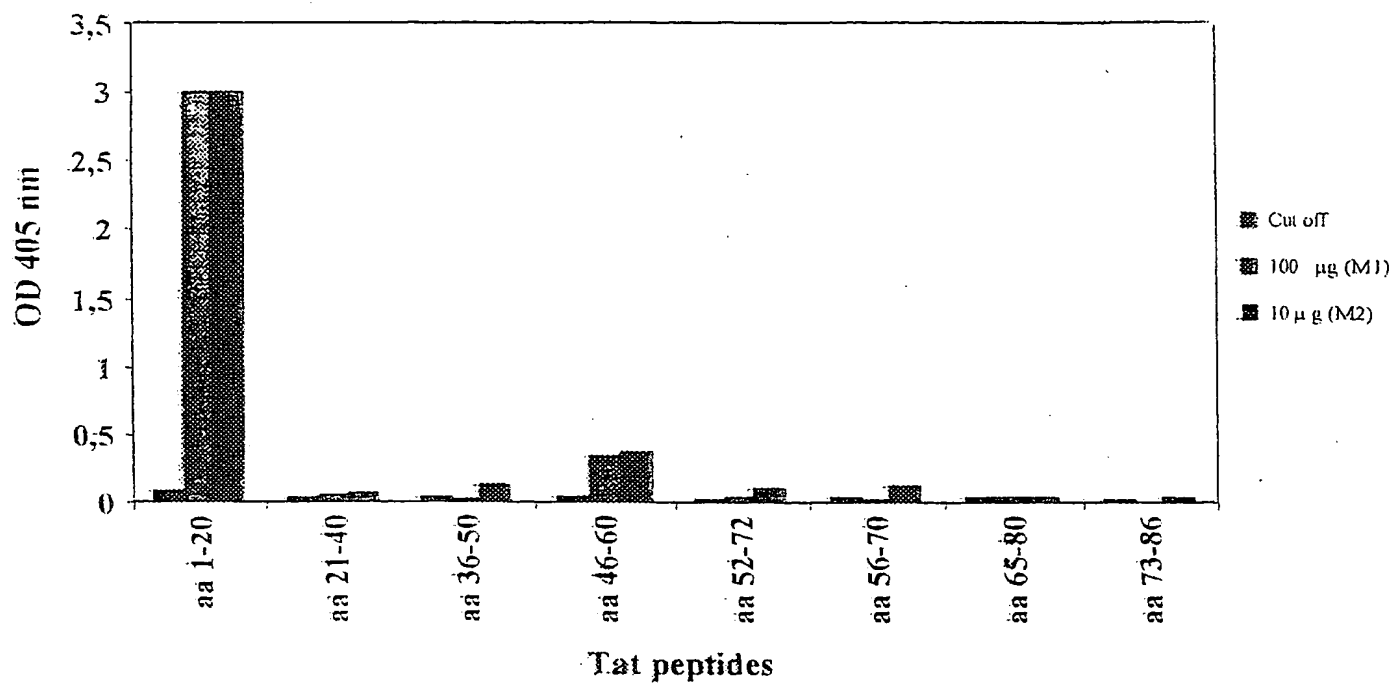


FIG. 4A

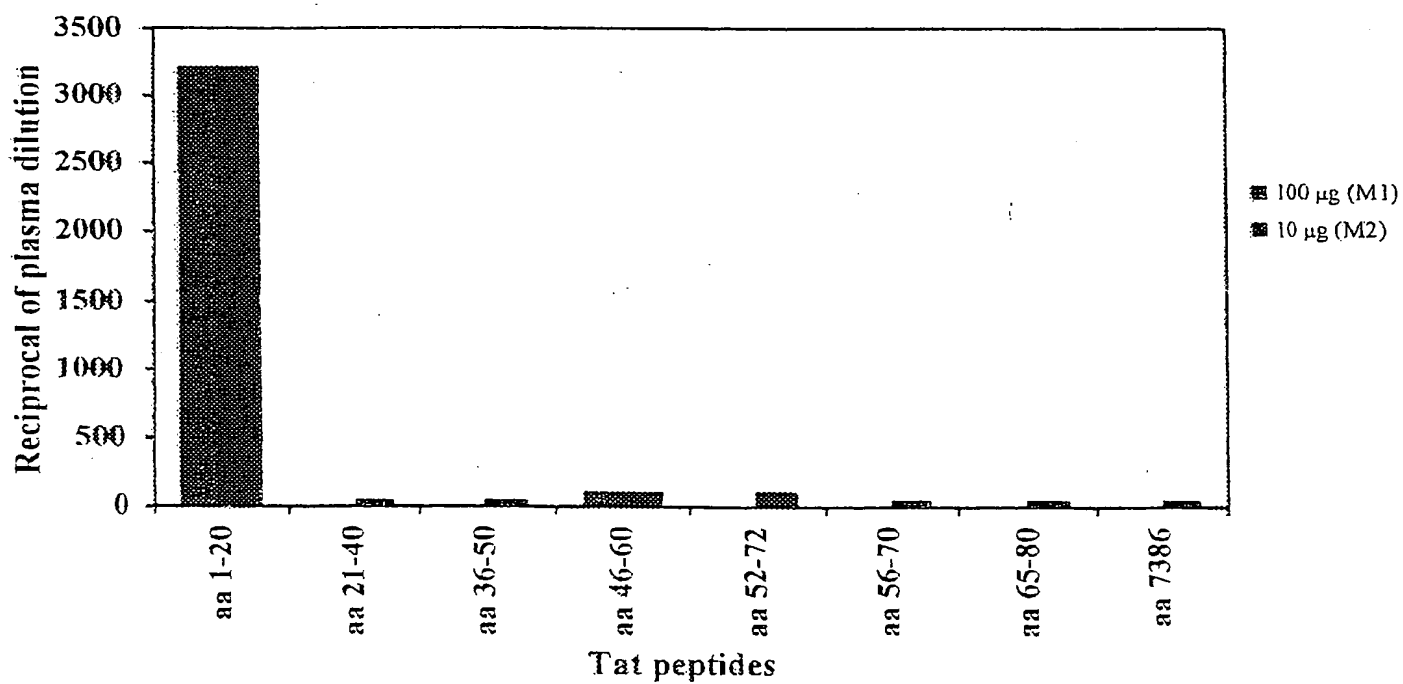


FIG. 4B

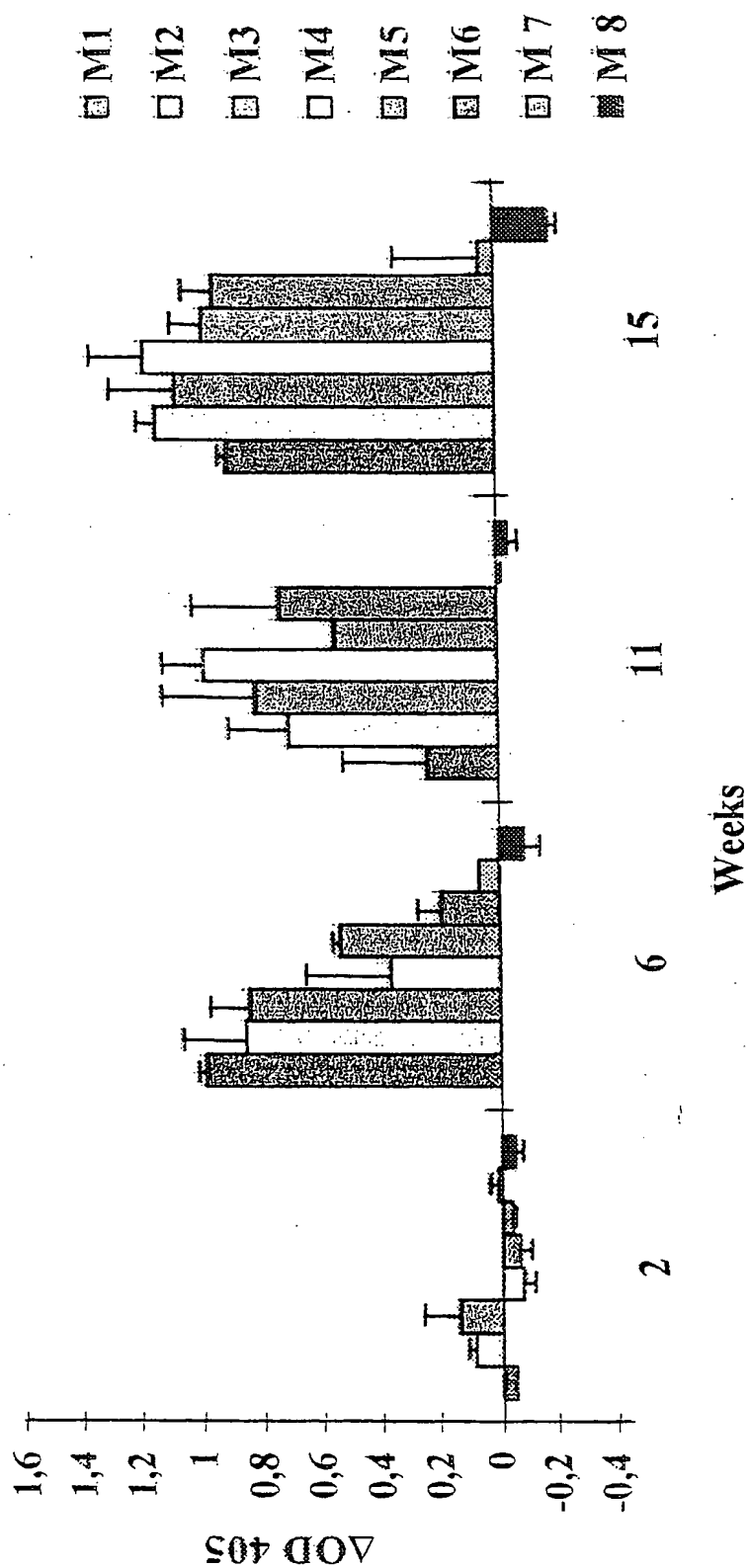


FIG. 5

7/17

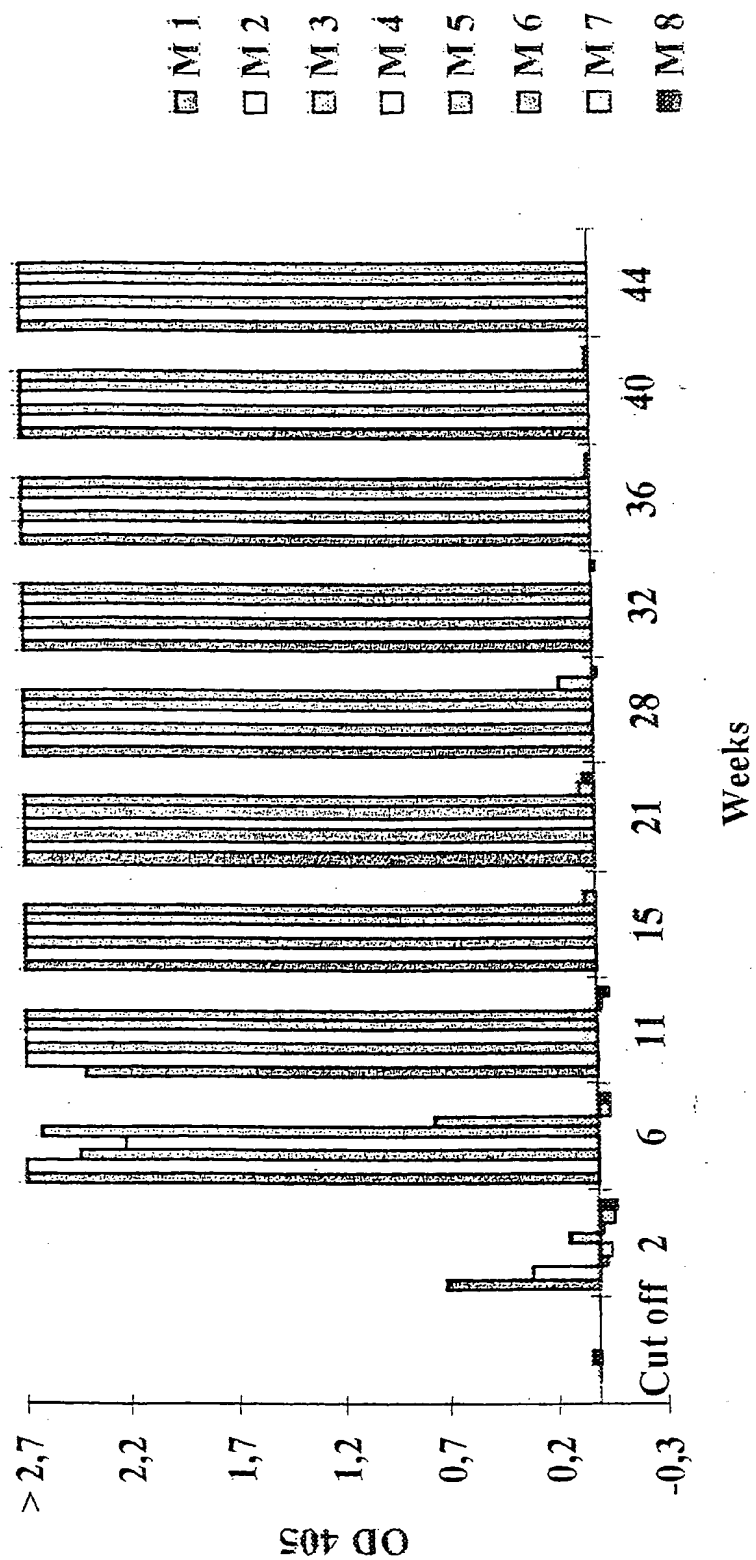


FIG. 6



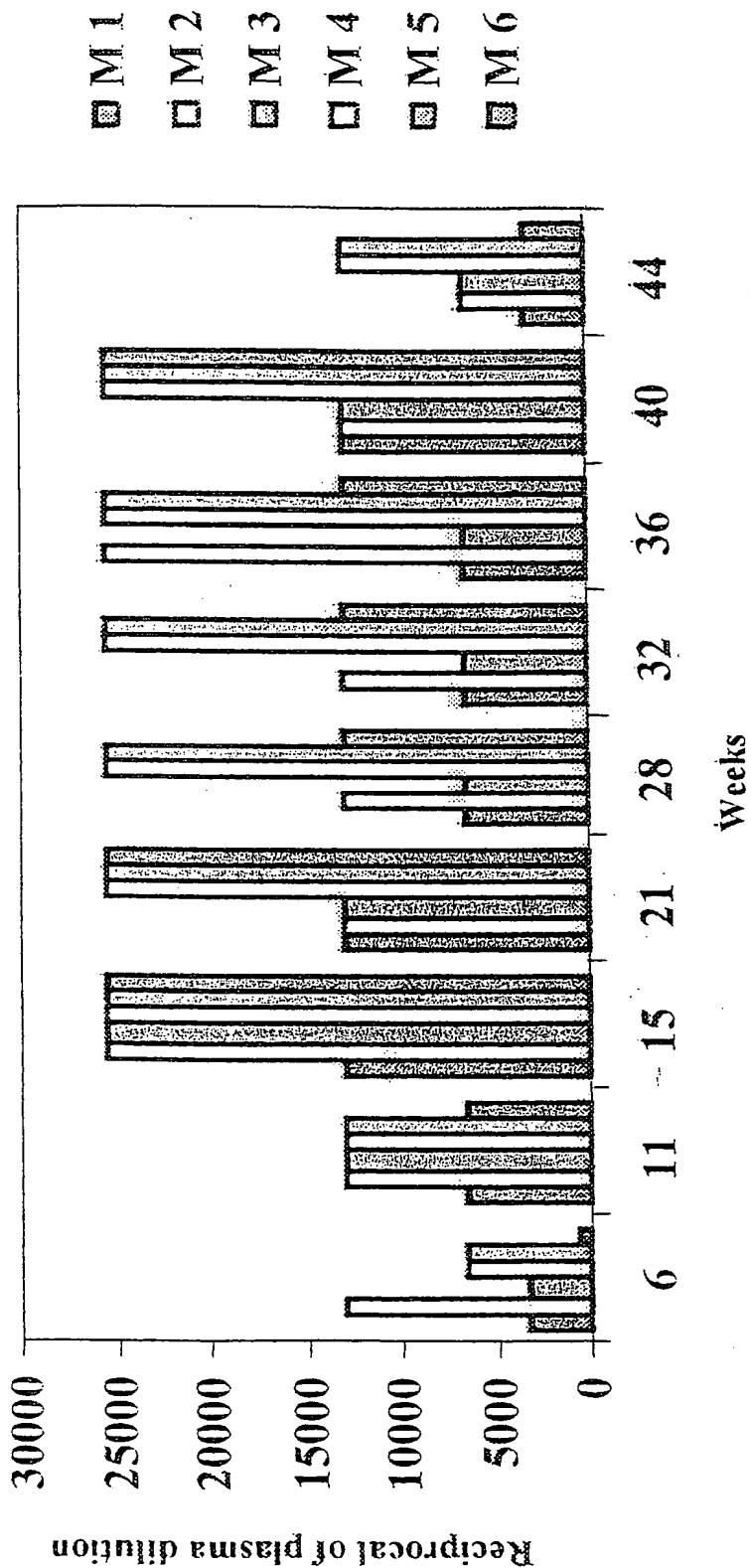


FIG. 7

9/17

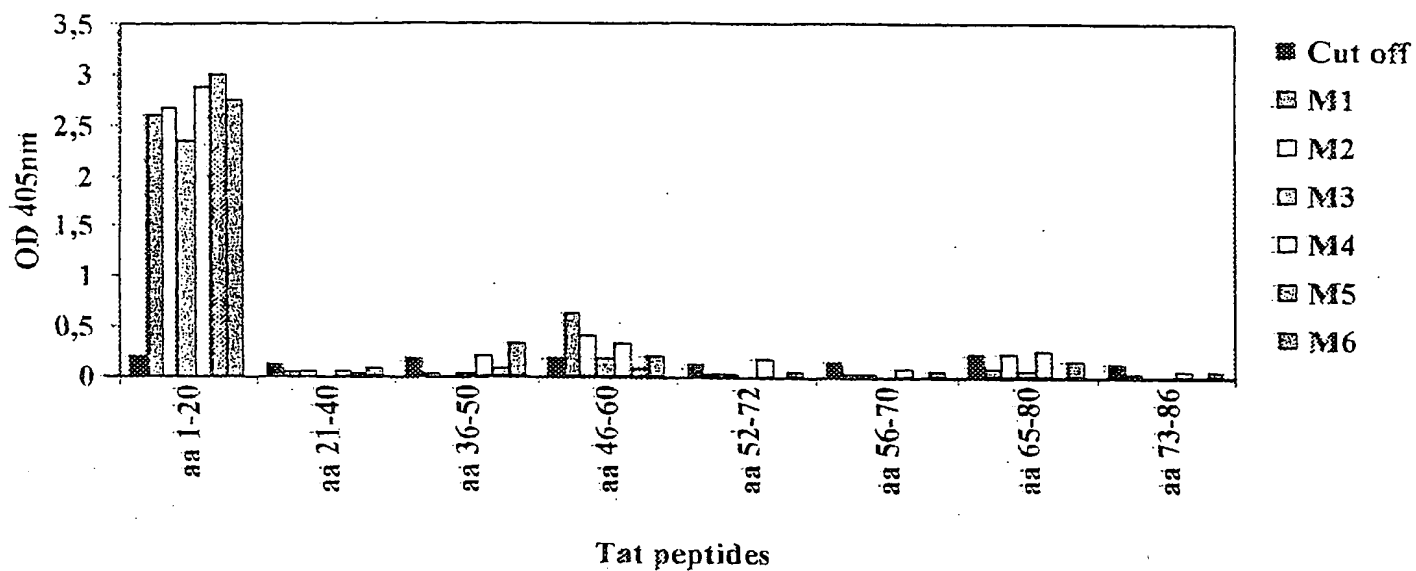


FIG.8A

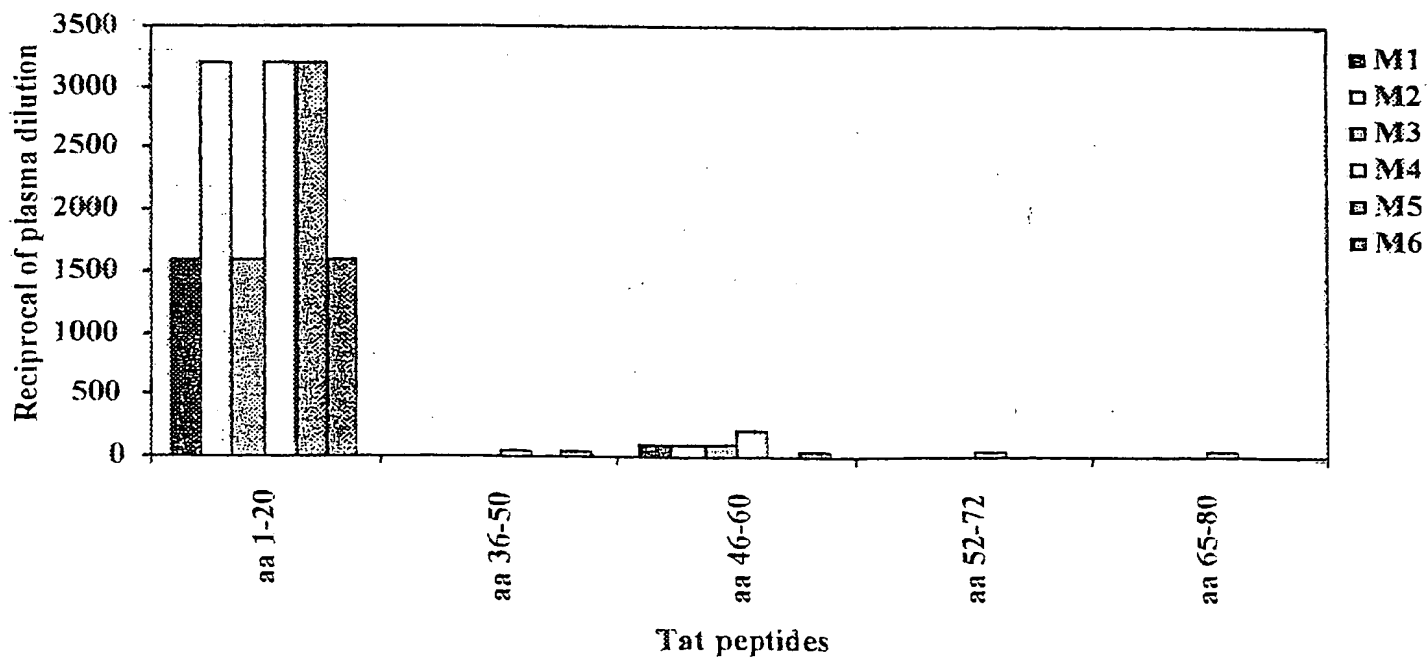


FIG.8B

10/17

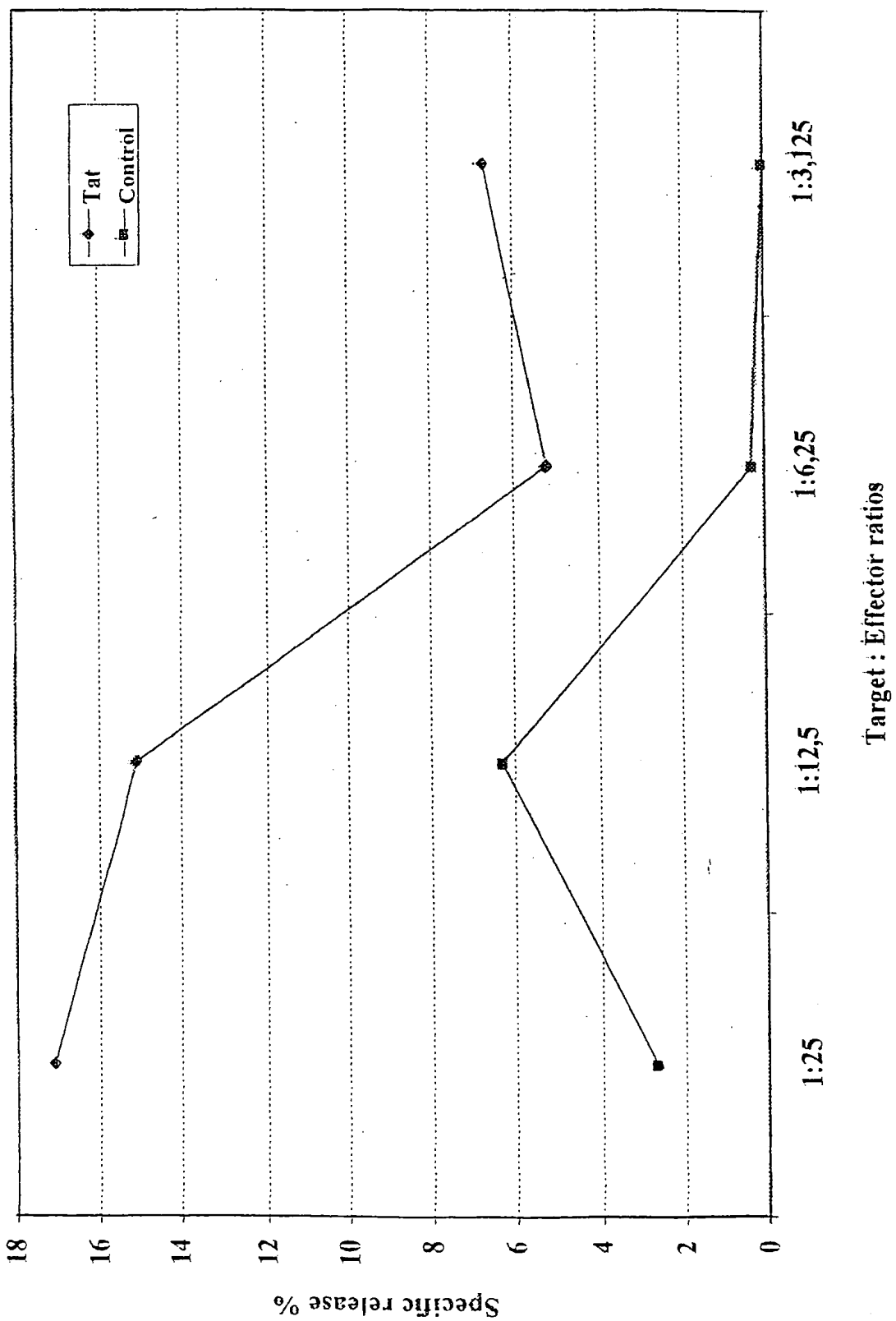


FIG. 9

11/17

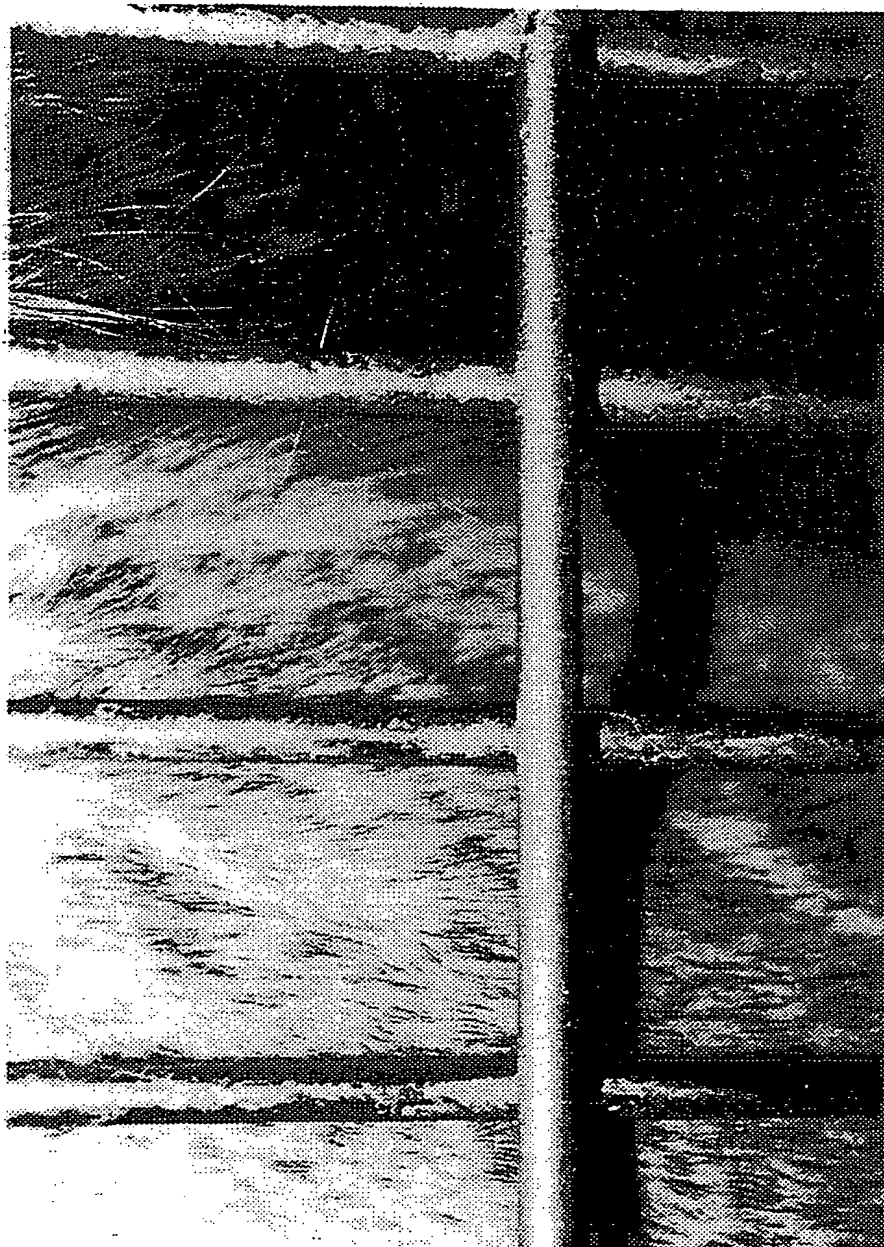


FIG. 10

12/17

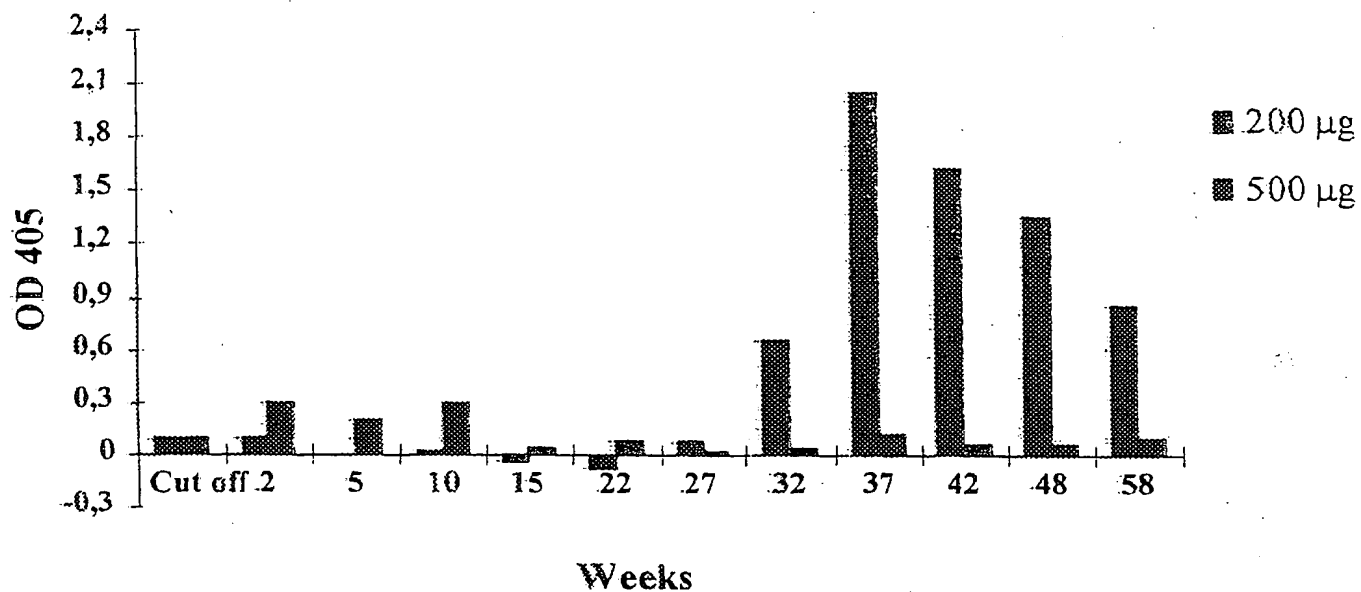


FIG. 11A

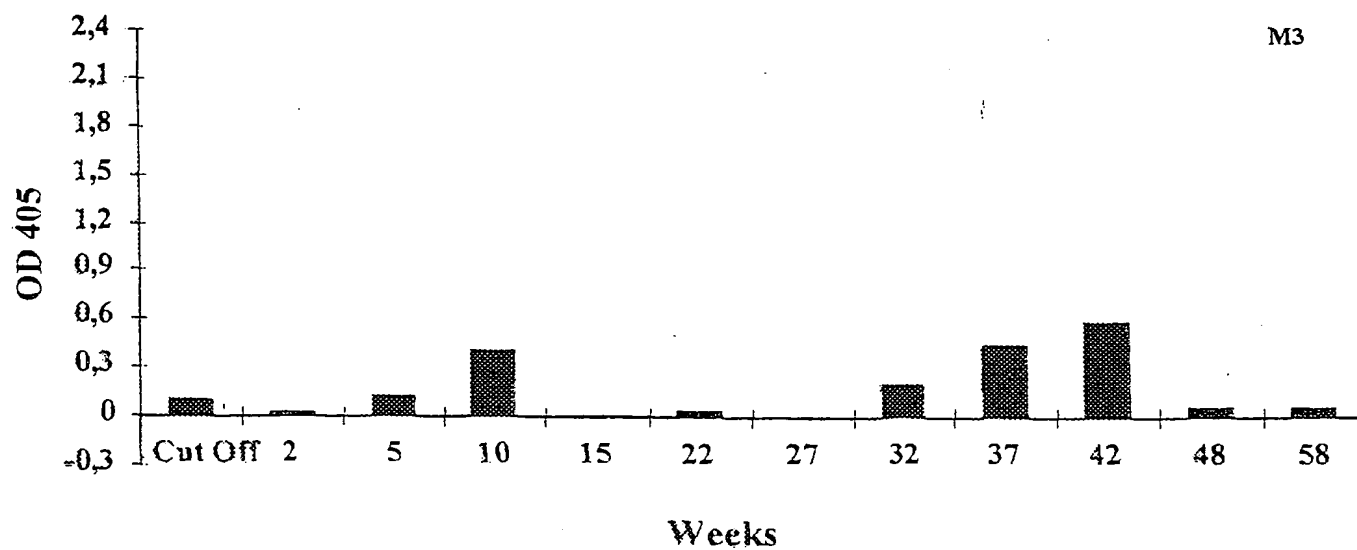


FIG. 11B

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

13/17

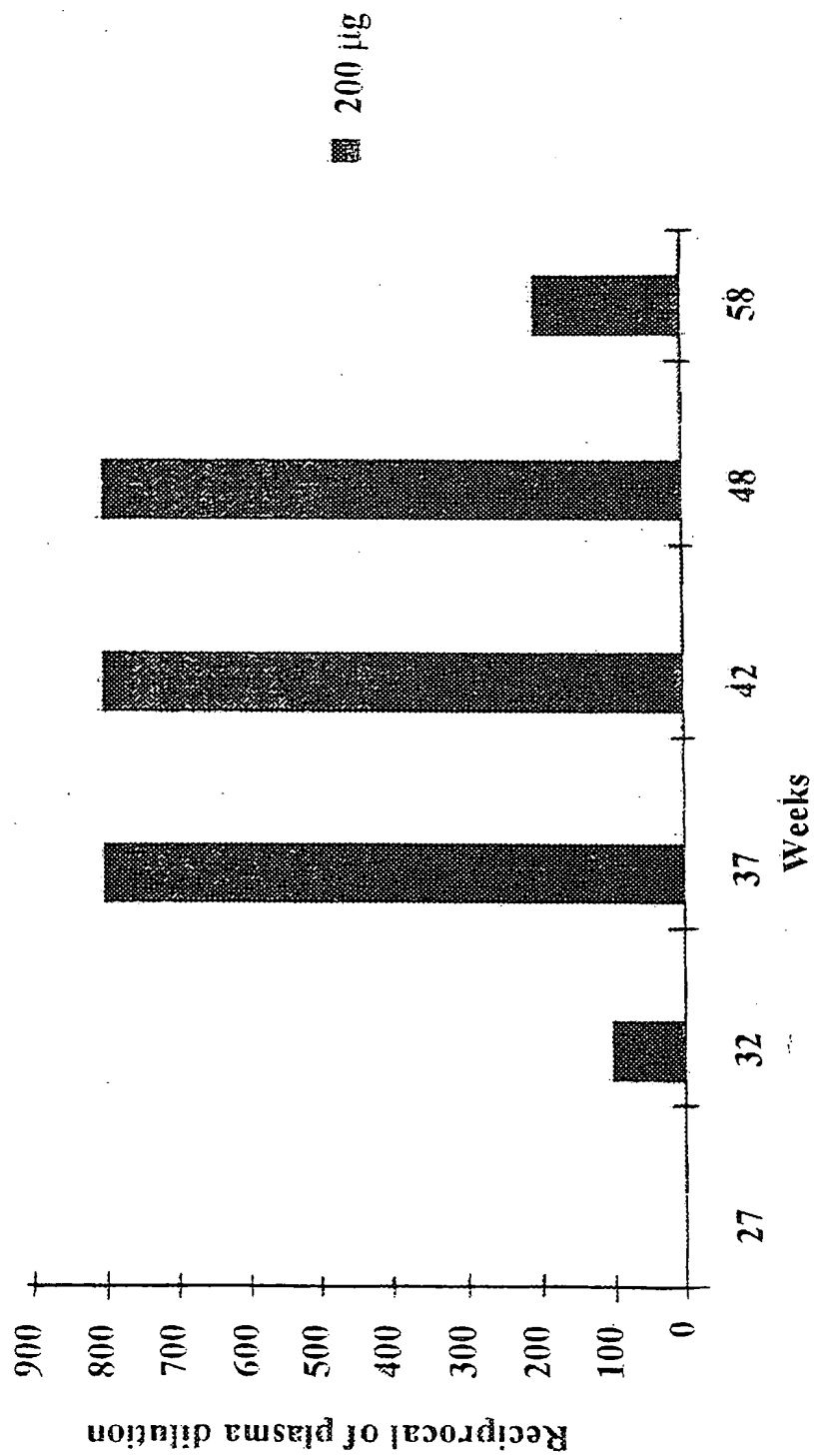


FIG. 12

14/17

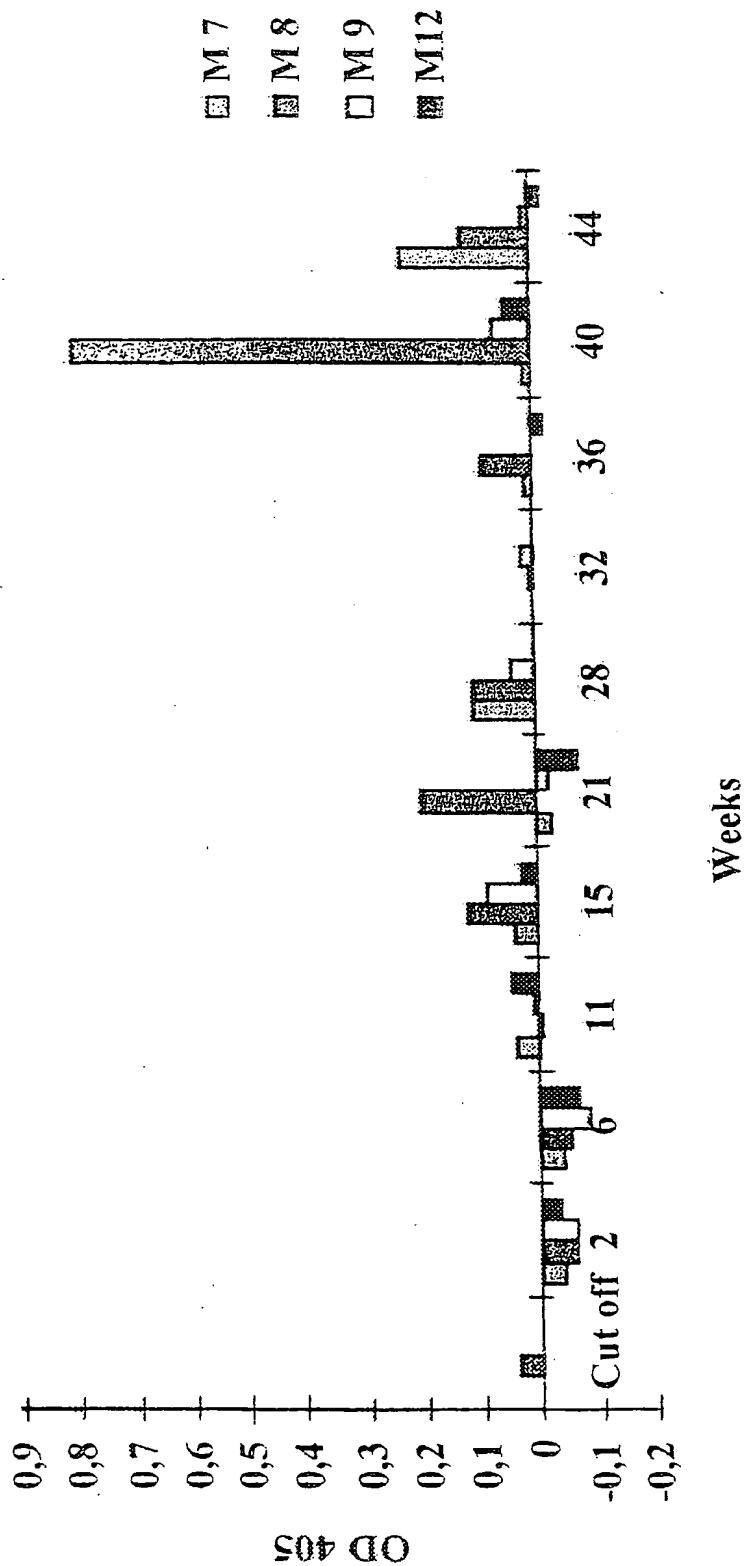


FIG. 13

15/17

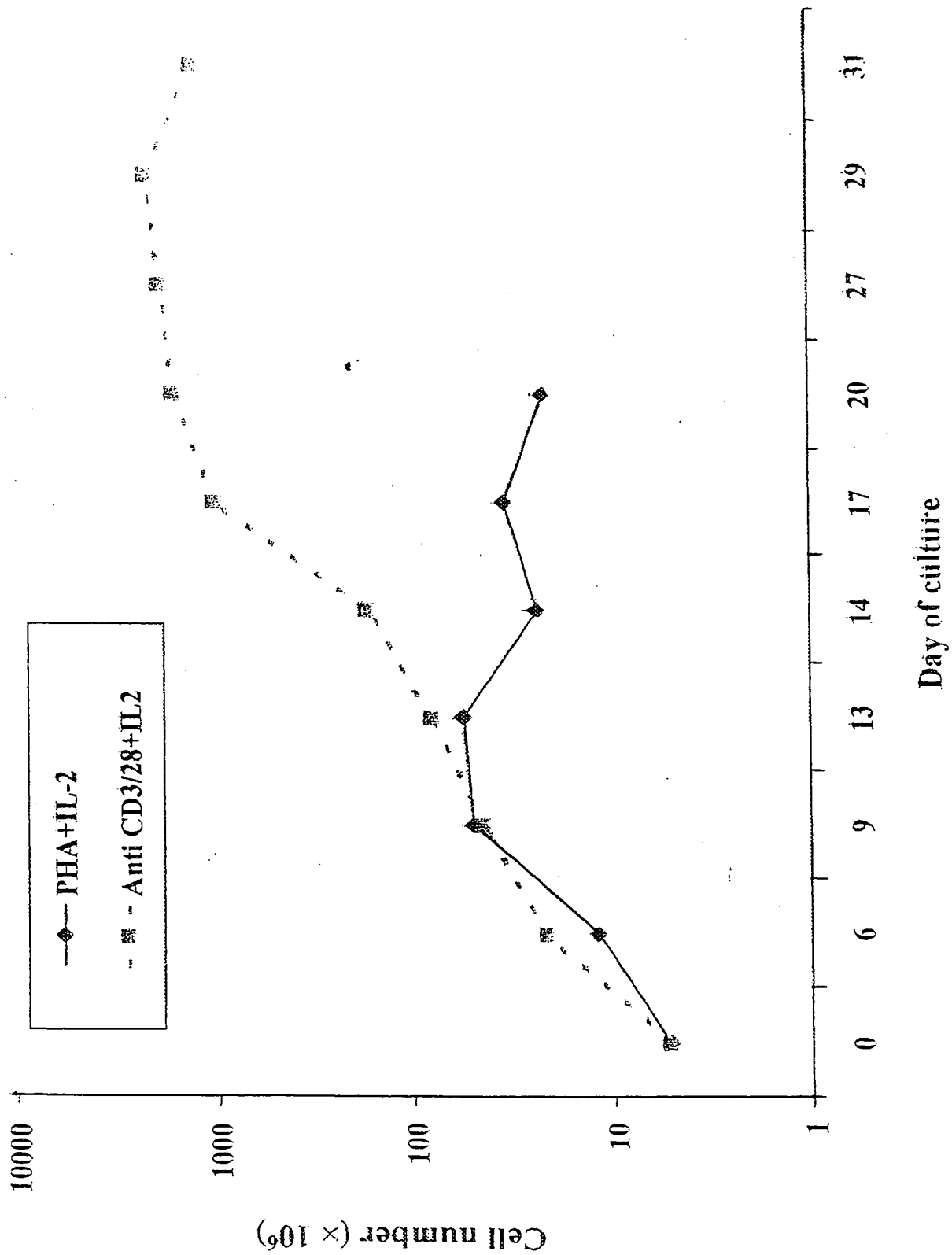


FIG. 14



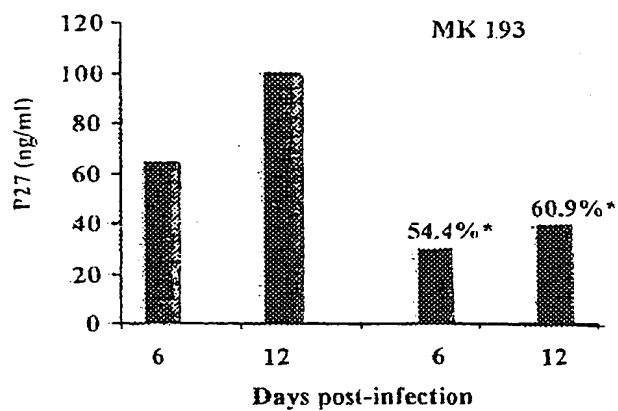


FIG. 15A

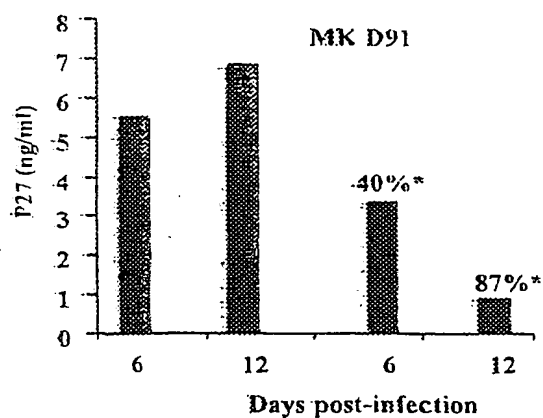


FIG. 15B

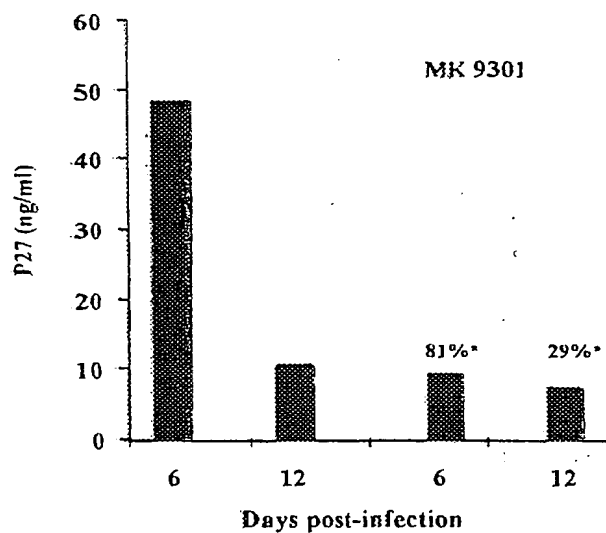


FIG. 15C

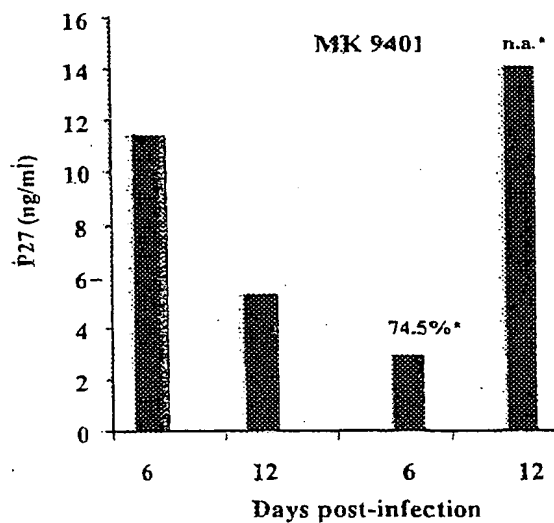


FIG. 15D

\*: Percentage of inhibition

17/17

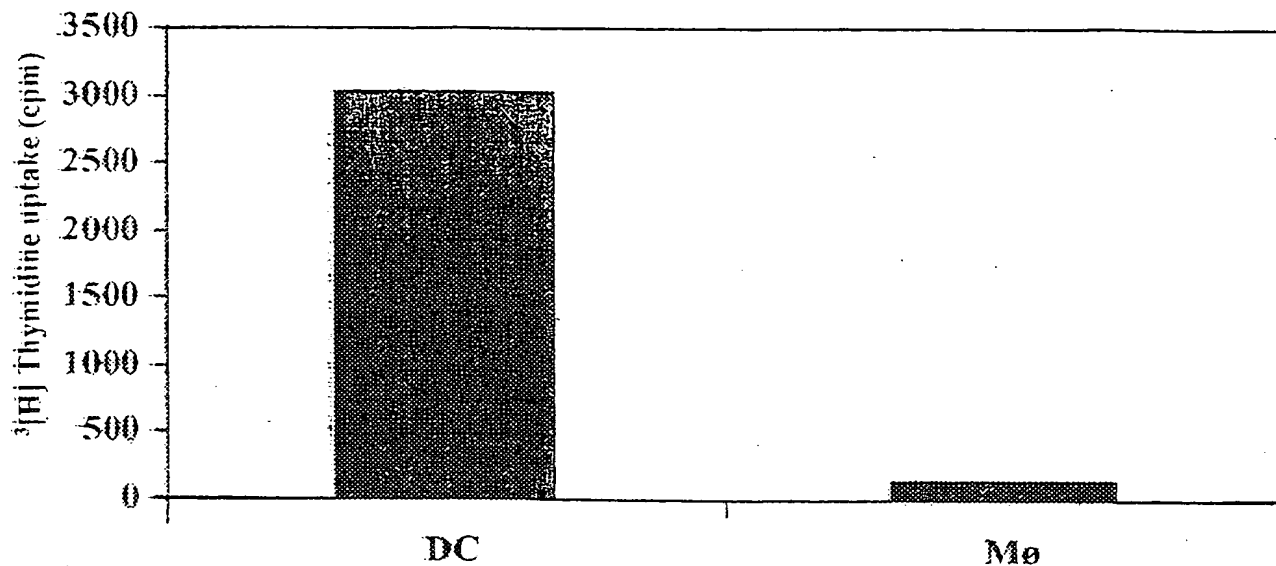


FIG. 16A

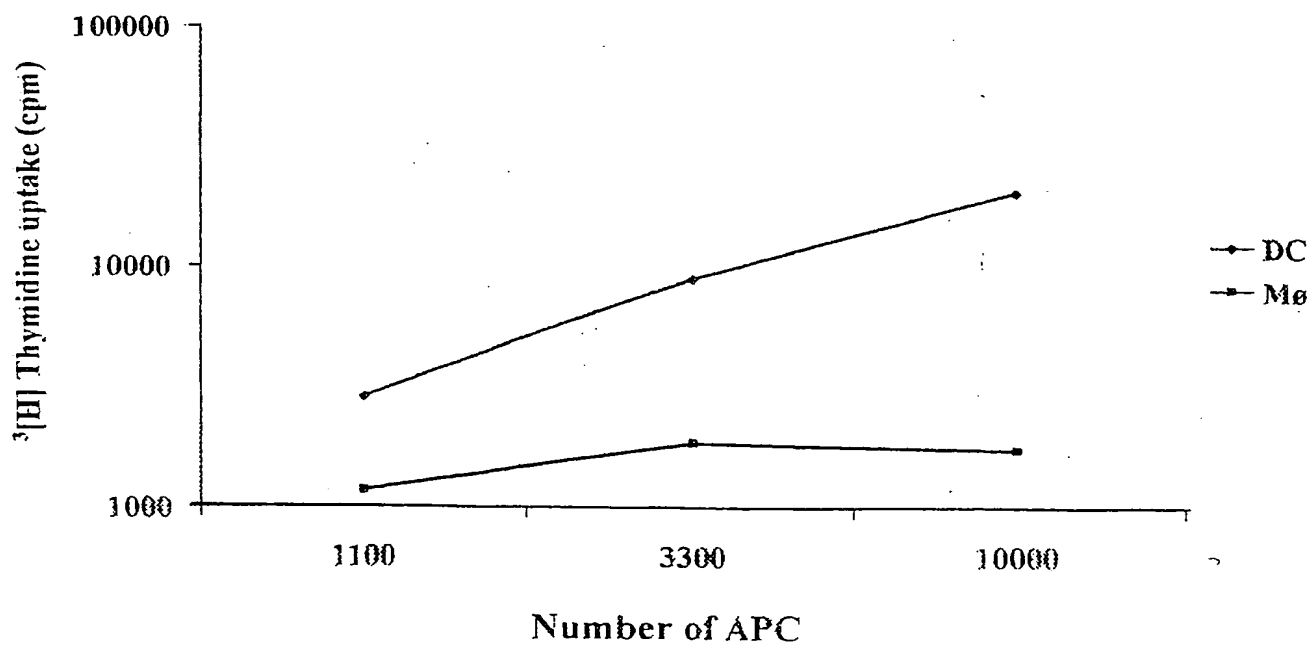


FIG. 16B

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> ISTITUTO SUPERIORE DI SANITA'

<120> HIV-1 Tat, or derivatives thereof, alone or in combination, for prophylactic and therapeutic vaccination against AIDS, tumors and related syndromes

<130> 1354PTWO

<140> RM97A000743

<141> 1997-12-01

<160> 34

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.0

<210> 1

<211> 261

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 1

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
gcttgatcca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttcataaca 120  
aaagccttag gcattccta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctctcaa 180  
ggcagtcaga ctcatcaagt ttcttatca aagcagccca cctccaatc ccgaggggac 240  
ccgacaggcc cgaaggaata g 261

<210> 2

<211> 83

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 2

Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser Gln  
1 5 10 15

Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe His  
20 25 30

Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Ile Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys  
35 40 45

Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr His Gln Val  
50 55 60

Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp Pro Thr Gly  
65 70 75 80

Pro Lys Glu

<210> 3

<211> 260

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 3

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
gcggtaccaa ttgctattgt aaaaagtgtt gcttcattg ccaagtttgt ttcataaca 120

aagccttagg catctcctat ggcaggaaga agcggagaca ggcacgaaga cctcctcaag 180  
 gcagtcagac tcatacagtt tctctatcaa agcagcccac ctccaatcc cgaggggacc 240  
 cgacaggccc gaaggaatag 260

<210> 4

<211> 261

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 4

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
 gcttgtacca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
 aacgccttag gcattcctta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctcctcaa 180  
 ggcaatcaga ctatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc ccgaggggac 240  
 ccgacaggcc cgaaggaata g 261

<210> 5

<211> 252

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 5

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
 gcttgtacca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
 aaagccttag gcattcctta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctcctcaa 180  
 ggcaatcaga ctatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc cccgacaggc 240  
 ccgaaggaat ag 252

<210> 6

<211> 252

<212> DNA

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 6

atggagccag tagatcctag actagagccc tggaagcatc caggaagtca gcctaaaact 60  
 gcttgtacca attgctattg taaaaagtgt tgcttcatt gccaaagttg ttccataaca 120  
 aacgccttag gcattcctta tggcaggaag aagcggagac agcgacgaag acctcctcaa 180  
 ggcaatcaga ctatcaagt ttctctatca aagcagccca cctccaatc cccgacaggc 240  
 ccgaaggaat ag 252

<210> 7

<211> 86

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 7

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
 1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Gly Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
 20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
 35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
 50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
 65 70 75 80

Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu

85

&lt;210&gt; 8

&lt;211&gt; 86

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 8

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Thr Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
65 70 75 80

Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu  
85

&lt;210&gt; 9

&lt;211&gt; 83

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 9

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Pro Thr Gly  
65 70 75 80

Pro Lys Glu

&lt;210&gt; 10

&lt;211&gt; 83

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 10

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe  
20 25 30

His Cys Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Thr Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly  
35 40 45

Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr  
50 55 60

His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Pro Thr Gly  
65 70 75 80

Pro Lys Glu

<210> 11

<211> 20

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 11

Met Glu Pro Val Asp Pro Arg Leu Glu Pro Trp Lys His Pro Gly Ser  
1 5 10 15

Gln Pro Lys Thr  
20

<210> 12

<211> 20

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 12

Ala Cys Thr Asn Cys Tyr Cys Lys Lys Cys Cys Phe His Cys Gln Val  
1 5 10 15

Cys Phe Ile Thr  
20

<210> 13

<211> 16

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 13

Gln Val Cys Phe Ile Thr Lys Ala Leu Gly Ile Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys  
1 5 10 15

<210> 14

<211> 15

<212> PRT

<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 14

Ser Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Pro Pro Gln  
1 5 10 15

<210> 15  
<211> 16  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 15  
Arg Pro Pro Gln Gly Ser Gln Thr His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln  
1 5 10 15

<210> 16  
<211> 16  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 16  
His Gln Val Ser Leu Ser Lys Gln Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp  
1 5 10 15

<210> 17  
<211> 14  
<212> PRT  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 17  
Pro Thr Ser Gln Ser Arg Gly Asp Pro Thr Gly Pro Lys Glu  
1 5 10

<210> 18  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 18  
atggcaggaa gaagc 15

<210> 19  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 19  
ctatcttta gtcc 15

<210> 20  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 20  
atgggtggca agtgg 15

<210> 21  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 21  
tcagcagtc ttga 15

<210> 22  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 22  
atgggtgcga gagcg 15

<210> 23  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 23  
ttattgtgac gaggg 15

<210> 24  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 24  
atgtggcccc ctggg 15

<210> 25  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 25  
ttaggaagca ttcag 15

<210> 26  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 26  
atgagaatt cgaaa 15

<210> 27  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 27  
tcaagaagtg ttgat 15

<210> 28  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 28  
atggagccag tagat 15

<210> 29  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Aids-associated retrovirus

<400> 29



ctattccttc gggcc

15

&lt;210&gt; 30

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 30

ggcccgaagg aaatggcagg aagaagc

27

&lt;210&gt; 31

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 31

ggcccgaagg aaatgggtgg caagtgg

27

&lt;210&gt; 32

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 32

ggcccgaagg aaatgggtgc gagagcg

27

&lt;210&gt; 33

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 33

ggcccgaagg aaatgtggcc ccctggg

27

&lt;210&gt; 34

&lt;211&gt; 27

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Aids-associated retrovirus

&lt;400&gt; 34

ggcccgaagg aaatgagaat ttgaaa

27

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.  
PCT/EP 07721

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 A61K39/21 C07K14/16 C12N15/49 C12N15/86 C12N5/10

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A61K C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X A	WO 95 31999 A (IMMUNOBIOLOGY RESEARCH INSTITUTE) 30 November 1995 see the whole document	1,42,43 2-41, 44-61
X A	KIM D T ET AL: "Introduction of soluble proteins into the MHC class I pathway by conjugation to an HIV tat peptide." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 AUG 15) 159 (4) 1666-8, XP002083064 see the whole document	1,42,43 2-41, 44-61

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

21 May 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

04/06/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Moreau, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/EP 07721

## C. (Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	HINKULA J ET AL: "Nucleic acid vaccination with HIV regulatory genes: a combination of HIV-1 genes in separate plasmids induces strong immune responses" VACCINE, vol. 15, no. 8, June 1997, page 874-878 XP004075674 see the whole document ---	1,42,43
X	HINKULA J ET AL: "Recognition of prominent viral epitopes induced by immunization with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 regulatory genes." JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY, (1997 JUL) 71 (7) 5528-39, XP002083065 cited in the application see the whole document ---	1,42,43
X	WO 94 15634 A (RATH M.) 21 July 1994 see the whole document ---	1,42,43
A	WO 94 03596 A (UNIVERSITY OF HAWAII) 17 February 1994 see the whole document ---	161
P, X	WO 98 17309 A (ERASMUS UNIVERSITY ROTTERDAM) 30 April 1998 see the whole document ---	1,42,43
A		2-41, 44-61
A	SAMANIEGO F ET AL: "Inflammatory cytokines induce endothelial cells to produce and release basic fibroblast growth factor and to promote Kaposi's sarcoma-like lesions in nude mice." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 FEB 15) 158 (4) 1887-94, XP002103367 see the whole document -----	1-61

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/EP 98/07721

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claim 61 is directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/EP 98/07721

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9531999	A	30-11-1995	AU 2638295 A CA 2190972 A EP 0767678 A	18-12-1995 30-11-1995 16-04-1997
WO 9415634	A	21-07-1994	NONE	
WO 9403596	A	17-02-1994	AU 4794593 A	03-03-1994
WO 9817309	A	30-04-1998	AU 4719597 A	15-05-1998

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☒ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**